Technical and Bibliographic Notes / Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- [x] Coloured covers/ Couverture de couleur
- [x] Covers damaged/ Couverture endommagée
- [ ] Covers restored and/or laminated/ Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- [ ] Cover title missing/ Le titre de couverture manque
- [ ] Coloured maps/ Cartes géographiques en couleur
- [ ] Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/ Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- [ ] Coloured plates and/or illustrations/ Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- [ ] Bound with other material/ Relié avec d'autres documents
- [ ] Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin/ La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distorsion le long de la marge intérieure
- [ ] Blank leaves added during restoration may appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming/ Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.

- [ ] Coloured pages/ Pages de couleur
- [ ] Pages damaged/ Pages endommagées
- [ ] Pages restored and/or laminated/ Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- [x] Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/ Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- [ ] Pages detached/ Pages détachées
- [x] Showthrough/ Transparence
- [x] Quality of print varies/ Qualité inégale de l'impression
- [ ] Continuous pagination/ Pagination continue
- [ ] Includes index(es)/ Comprend un (des) index

Title on header taken from:/ Le titre de l'en-tête provient:

- [ ] Title page of issue/ Page de titre de la livraison
- [ ] Caption of issue/ Titre de départ de la livraison
- [ ] Masthead/ Générique (périodiques) de la livraison

- [x] Additional comments:/ Commentaires supplémentaires: Part of front cover is water damaged.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/ Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X		14X		18X		22X		26X		30X	
	12X		16X		20X		24X		28X		32X

Brooks Nurses School July 1906

Arlene Young

COK

HANDBOOK

TO THE

VICTORIAN READERS

EDITED BY

JOHN C. SAUL, M.A.,

English Master, Collegiate Institute, Winnipeg

AND

W. A. McINTYRE, B.A.,

Principal Normal School, Winnipeg.

TORONTO:

THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED.

W. J. GAGE & COMPANY, LIMITED.

0 31115

PE1117
V53
1902
P***

Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand nine hundred and two, by THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED, and W. J. GAGE & COMPANY, LIMITED, Toronto, Ontario, in the Office of the Minister of Agriculture.

0 911912

PREFACE.

THIS book is not intended as a guide to teachers to tell them how to teach, nor to students to tell them how to learn. It is intended to supply such information as is necessary to the understanding of the selections contained in the *Victorian Readers*. The editors have kept in mind that many teachers, owing to the lack of library facilities, are unable to find this information for themselves. This book is intended to take the place, as far as possible, of a library where no library is. There are neither comments nor notes on a number of the selections, particularly in the Third Book; in such cases the editors did not consider comments or notes necessary. Every teacher is presumed to possess a good standard English dictionary.

The editors desire to acknowledge assistance received from sources too numerous to mention. They would, however, express their indebtedness to the annotated English texts, published by The Copp, Clark Co., Limited, and W. J. Gage & Co., Limited, especially to those edited by Professor Alexander and by Dr. Sykes.

In a work of this character it is almost impossible to prevent mistakes, both of fact and interpretation. The editors will welcome any suggestions as to changes or corrections.

WINNIPEG, October 18, 1901.

CONTENTS.

Book III.

	PAGE
An April Day	17
Androcles and the Lion	17
Bruce and the Spider	13
Bruin and the Cook	23
Bucephalus	20
Canada! Maple Land!	3
Christmas Eve	13
Christopher Columbus	21
Florence Nightingale	11
Hiawatha—Picture Writing	6
Hiawatha's Sailing	5
Hohenlinden	18
How the Mountain was Clad	17
John Gilpin	21
Little Daffydowndilly	22
Little Tom, the Chimney Sweep	10
Lord Ullin's Daughter	16
March of the Men of Harlech	10
Rab and His Friends	22
Roland, the Shield-Bearer	23
Santa Filomena	11
The Battle of Blenheim	14
The Blue Jay	16
The Brave Three Hundred	7
The British National Banner	4
The Capture of the Whale	5
The Conquest of Peru	15
The Crocus's Song	3
The Daffodils	13
The Dervish and the Camel	3
The Emperor's Watch	7
The Fairies of Caldon Low	10
The Flax	4
The Golden Touch	24
The Horatii	14
The Horses of Gravelotte	23
The Horse that Accused His Master	16
The Ivy Green	19
The Olive Tree	6
The Pine-Tree Shilling	19
The Sentinel's Pouch	6
The Singing Leaves	23
The Solitude of Alexander Selkirk	17
The Story of Joseph	9
The Voice of Spring	16
The Wreck of the Hesperus	10
Thor's Visit to Jotunheim	7
Tyrolese Evening Hymn	22
Ulrica	17
Under the Holly Bough	22
Vowel Table	3
What Came of Wondering	4
William Tell and His Son	20
Wynken, Blynken and Nod	3

Book IV.

A Forest Calm	98
Aladdin	53
Aladdin, or the Wonderful Lamp	98
Alice Brand	94
Canadian Streams	84
Charles and Oliver	39
Dickens in Camp	62
Faith, Hope and Love	77
From "Evangeline"	95
From the "Book of Psalms."	63
God Save the King	117
Home and Country and The Fatherland	60
Horatius	106
How I Killed a Bear	58
How Theseus Slew the Minotaur	81
How They Brought the Good News from Ghent to Aix	40
Hymn to the Night	97

PAGE
Indian Summer 77
Jacques Cartier 46
Lake Winnipeg 61
Locksley 25
Love of Country 60
Lucy Gray 83
Marmion and Douglas 71
Robinson Crusoe 54
Samuel Johnson's Repentance 94
Scots, Wha Hae Wi' Wallace Bled 116
Songs of the Night 97
The Argonauts 67
The Ballad of the "Clamperdown" 100
The Battle Hymn of the Republic 116
The Battle of Landen 101
The Battle of the Baltic 88
The Burial of Sir John Moore. 55
The Creation 54
The Daisy 66
The Death of the Flowers 93
The Destruction of Sennacherib 35
The Dominion Hymn 117
The Eagle and the Swan 78
The Escape of Queen Mary .. 99
The Famine 93
The Fiftieth Birthday of Agassiz 38
The Finding of the Lyre 64
The Football Match 65
The Forest Fire 26
The Forging of Balmung 41
The Forging of the Anchor .. 45
The Four-Leaved Shamrock .. 59
The Golden Apple 31
The Graves of a Household .. 77
The Great Stone Face 106
The Inchcape Rock 80
The Judgment of Paris 37
The Lark at the Diggings 62
The Last Leaf 78
The Laughing Sally 64
The Legend of "The White Horse Plains." 64
The Loss of the "Birkenhead" 73
The Maple 39
The Marseillaise 115
The Meeting of the Waters .. 70
The Pied Piper of Hamelin .. 56
The Plains of Abraham 88
The Private of the Buffs 49
The Pygmies 91
The Reaper and the Flowers. 77
The Saxon and the Gael 27
The Second Voyage of Sinbad 53
The Shepherd of King Admetus 74
The Ship Builders 52
The Slaying of Fafnir the Dragon 47
The Sleeping Valkyrie 50
The Snow Storm 75
The Song My Paddle Sings .. 24
The Stage Coach 39
The Taking of Quebec 78
The Tournament 59
The Valley of Humiliation .. 73
The Village Blacksmith 44
The Watch on the Rhine 114
The Winged Horse 86
Three Scenes in the Tyrol .. 75
To the Daisy 66
Tubal Cain 41
Ye Mariners of England 35
Young Lochinvar 61
Youth and Old Age 54
Yussouf 40

Book V.

A Canadian Boat Song 120
A Man's a Man for a' That 186
As Ships Becalmed at Eve 201
Beethoven's Moonlight Sonata 121
Blow, Blow, Thou Winter Wind 157
Brutus and Antony 216
Burns 150
Cromwell's Expulsion of the Long Parliament 145
Dream upon the Universe 215
Elegy Written in a Country Churchyard 164

PAGE
English Scenery 157
For the Strength of the Hills we Bless Thee..... 120
From Dawn to Dawn in the Alps..... 203
Hail to the Chief 157
Harold's Speech to His Army 214
Killiecrankie 161
Kubla Khan..... 219
Labor 172
Lead, Kindly Light..... 238
Marco Bozzaris 133
Ode to Autumn..... 178
Perseus 220
Psalm XLVI 237
Psalms XLII and XLIII..... 237
Raleigh and the Queen..... 139
Reward..... 195
Rip Van Winkle 148
Rosabelle 136
Scarlett's Three Hundred.... 130
Sedgemoor 153
Skipper Ireson's Ride 127
Speech against Warren Hastings 196
Thanatopsis 215
The Archery Contest..... 135
The Battle of Lake Regillus.. 228
The Battle of the Ants 126
The Bell of Atri 152
The Birds of Killingworth... 158
The Burial March of Dundee. 188
The Burial of Moses 153
The Burning of Moscow..... 131
The Captains at Plymouth... [illegible]
The Chambered Nautilus.... 197
The Cloud..... 175
The Cotter's Saturday Night 210
The Crusader and the Saracen 129
The Day is Done..... 124
The Deacon's Masterpiece ... 140
The Death of Nelson..... 186
The Demon of the Deep 124
The Dragon Fly 156
The Eruption of Vesuvius.... 199
The Execution of Sir Thomas More 174
The Fiery Furnace..... 185

PAGE
The Fight with the Dragon.. 198
The Great Carbuncle..... 209
The Happy Valley..... 179
The Impeachment of Warren Hastings..... 196
The Isles of Greece..... 168
The Lay of the Phœnix..... 161
The Mill on the Floss 168
The Minstrel Boy..... 126
The Ocean..... 173
The Panthers..... 156
The Pickwickians on Ice..... 120
The Pilgrim's Progress 119
The Plains of Abraham..... 176
The Poetry of Earth is Never Dead..... 202
The Prairies..... 147
The Raven..... 185
The Red River Voyageur.... 118
The Skylark..... 192
The Sleep..... 214
The Song of the Camp..... 123
The Story of Muhammad Din. 153
The Tempest..... 201
The Thin Red Line..... 155
The Trial of Warren Hastings 190
The Vision of Mirza..... 125
The Vision of Sir Launfal.... 179
The Voyage..... 144
The Water-Fowl 144
The Winter Lakes 140
The World is Too Much With Us 202
To a Skylark..... 194
To Night 201
To the Dandelion 143
To the Skylark 193
Trial Scene from "The Merchant of Venice." 204
Verres Denounced 213
Wapentake 203
Westminster Abbey..... 158
Westminster Abbey..... 160

THE POETICAL MEMORY GEMS.

Book III..... 239
Book IV 240
Book V 242

BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCHES

OF

AUTHORS REPRESENTED IN THE VICTORIAN READERS.

	PAGE
Addison, Joseph	246
Andersen, Hans Christian	247
Alexander, Cecil Frances	247
Argyll, John Douglas Campbell, Duke of	248
Audubon, John James	248
Aytoun, William Edmonstone	249
Bailey, Philip James	249
Barbauld, Anna Letitia	249
Bates, David	250
Benjamin, Park	250
Bjornson, Bjornstjerne	250
Brown, John, M.D.	250
Browning, Elizabeth Barrett	251
Browning, Robert	251
Bryant, William Cullen	252
Bunyan, John	252
Burke, Edmund	253
Burns, Robert	253
Butler, Sir William Francis	254
Byron, George Gordon Noel	254
Campbell, Thomas	255
Campbell, William Wilfrid	256
Carey, Henry	256
Carlyle, Thomas	256
Cicero, Marcus Tullius	257
Clark, S. H.	257
Clough, Arthur Hugh	257
Coleridge, Samuel Taylor	258
Cook, Eliza	258
Coolidge, Susan B.	258
Cooper, James Fenimore	258
Cornwall, Barry	259
Cowper, William	259
Craigmyle, Elizabeth	259
Crompton, Sarah	259
Darnell, Henry Faulkner	260
Dasent, George Webbe	260
De Foe, Daniel	260
De Lisle, Rouget	260
De Quincey, Thomas	261
Dickens, Charles	261
Doyle, Arthur Conan	261
Doyle, Sir Francis Hastings	262
Drummond, Lewis Henry	262
Edgar, Sir James David	262
Eliot, George	263
Emerson, Ralph Waldo	263
Ferguson, Sir Samuel	263
Field, Eugene	264
Fletcher, John	264
Froude, James Anthony	264
Gerok, Karl	265
Gladstone, William Ewart	265
Goethe, Johann Wolfgang von	265
Gould, Hannah Flagg	266
Gray, Thomas	266
Halleck, Fitz-Greene	266
Harte, Francis Bret	267
Hawthorne, Nathaniel	267
Headley, Joel Tyler	267
Hemans, Felicia Dorothea	267
Herbert, George	268
Herrick, Robert	268
Hill, Aaron	268
Hogg, James	269
Holland, Josiah Gilbert	269
Holmes, Oliver Wendell	269
Hood, Thomas	270
Houghton, George Washington Wright	270
Howe, Julia Ward	270
Howitt, Mary	270
Hughes, Thomas	271
Hugo, Victor Marie	271
Irving, Washington	272

PAGE
Jacobs, Joseph 272
Johnson, Pauline 272
Johnson, Samuel..... 273
Jonson, Ben..... 273
Keats, John..... 274
Keble, John..... 274
Kingsley, Charles..... 274
Kinney, Elizabeth Clementine 275
Kipling, Rudyard..... 275
Lamb, Charles..... 275
Lamb, Mary..... 276
Lang, Andrew..... 276
Lingard, John..... 276
Longfellow, Henry Wadsworth 277
Lover, Samuel..... 277
Lowell, James Russell 277
Lytton, Robert Bulwer..... 278
Macaulay, Thomas Babington 278
McGee, Thomas D'Arcy..... 279
MacKay, Charles 279
Massey, Gerald..... 279
Milnes, Richard Monckton .. 280
Montgomery, James 280
Moodie, Susannah 280
Moore, Clement Clark..... 280
Moore, Thomas..... 281
Morris, George Pope..... 281
Newman, John Henry..... 281
Niebuhr, Barthold Georg.... 282
Omar Khayyam 282
O'Reilly, John Boyle..... 282
Parkman, Horatio Gilbert..... 282
Parkman, Francis..... 283
Poe, Edgar Allan..... 283
Pope, Alexander..... 284
Prud'homme, Louis Arthur.. 284
Rand, Theodore Harding ... 284
Reade, Charles 284
Richter, Jean Paul Friedrich 285
Riley, James Whitcomb..... 285

PAGE
Roberts, Charles George Douglas 285
Ruskin, John..... 285
Russell, Sir William Howard 286
Sangster, Charles 286
Saxe, John Godfrey..... 287
Schneckenburger, Max..... 287
Schiller, Johnann Christoph Friedrich von 287
Scott, Sir Walter..... 287
Shakespeare, William..... 288
Shelley, Percy Bysshe..... 288
Sheridan, Richard Brinsley. 289
Sill, Edward Rowland 289
Smith, Goldwin 289
Socrates 290
Southey, Robert..... 290
Spurgeon, Charles Haddon .. 290
Taylor, Bayard..... 291
Taylor, Jane..... 291
Tennyson, Alfred..... 291
Thackeray, William Makepeace..... 292
Thaxter, Alice..... 292
Thaxter, Celia..... 292
Thoreau, Henry David 293
Trench, Richard Chenevix... 293
Twain, Mark..... 293
Uhland Johann Ludwig 294
Warner, Charles Dudley..... 294
White, Joseph Blanco..... 294
Whittier, John Greenleaf.... 294
Wolfe, Charles 295
Wordsworth, William..... 295

SUGGESTIONS AS TO METHOD OF STUDY..... 297
PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY OF PROPER NAMES... ... 305

HANDBOOK

TO THE

VICTORIAN READERS.

BOOK III.

The following are suggested as supplementary reading for pupils who are using Books III., IV. and V. :—

Children's Treasury of English Song, I. and II. Palgrave: The Macmillan Co.

The Listening Child. Lucy W. Thacher: The Macmillan Co.

Introduction to the Study of Literature. Lewis: The Macmillan Co.

A First Poetry Book. M. A. Woods: The Macmillan Co.

A Second Poetry Book. M. A. Woods: The Macmillan Co.

A Third Poetry Book. M. A. Woods: The Macmillan Co.

A Blue Poetry Book for Schools. Andrew Lang: Longmans, Green & Co.

English Poetry for Schools. Cookson: The Macmillan Co.

Twelve English Poets. Bellamy: Ginn & Co.

The School Poetry Book. Penniman: Heath & Co.

The "Heart of Oak" Series (Heath & Co.); Lights to Literature Series, (Rand, McNally & Co.); and Stepping Stones to Literature (Silver, Burdett & Co.) contain excellent selections, both in prose and poetry. For prose reading the teacher cannot do better than consult the catalogues of The American Book Co. (New York); Houghton, Mifflin & Co. (Boston); Ginn & Co. (Boston), and The Macmillan Co. (New York). In addition to the foregoing list many works have been suggested in the notes.

VOWEL TABLE.

Teachers should note the peculiar weaknesses of their pupils and give drill to suit individual cases. It will be found that, as a rule, pupils confuse sounds 5, 7 and 8, that sound 18 is pronounced either as 14 or as e-14, and that sound 15 is pronounced not 8-1 but 4-1. Consonant errors are very frequent. For an analysis of these see *The Victorian Speller* (The W. J. Gage Co.) and Burt's *Phonetics* (The Copp, Clark Co., Limited).

CANADA! MAPLE LAND!

In connection with this poem Kipling's *Recessional* should be read. Note that this poem is a prayer for guidance and support. In these days of military fervor and trust in brute force a prayer of this kind is peculiarly valuable and appropriate. Poems somewhat similar in sentiment, but differing in treatment, although perhaps slightly difficult for Third Book pupils, will be found in *Songs of the Great Dominion* (Walter Scott), pages 15-32.

WYNKEN, BLYNKEN AND NOD.

This is undoubtedly the most beautiful lullaby in the English language. Field was particularly fond of little children, and his love here found full expression. The thought in itself is pretty, while the expression is very beautiful.

THE DERVISH AND THE CAMEL.

P. 5, l. 1.—**Dervish.** The Dervishes are a religious order among Mohammedans.

P. 7, l. 6.—**Cadi.** The magistrate.

THE CROCUS'S SONG.

The crocus is a little English flower that appears early in spring. Its flowers are varied in color—red, white, yellow and pink. In form

it is much like our wind-flower, which is often called crocus. A talk on the growth of the wind-flower might serve as an introduction to this lesson. Blackboard work, such as the drawing of the bulb, the sketching of the roots and first leaves, the blooming of the flower, etc., will greatly assist pupils in getting a clear picture.

THE FLAX.

For an account of the making of flax see *Stories of Industry*, Vol. II., (Educational Publishing Co., Boston). A topical analysis of this selection by the pupils would be very helpful.

WHAT CAME OF WONDERING.

This is one of the oldest of folk-stories. The lesson implied in it is doubtless this, that in the hour of necessity the inquiring mind has resources that are lacking to one who trusts to accident, or who is too lazy to go to effort that carries him out of the beaten track of [redacted]

THE BRITISH NATIONAL BANNER.

P. 27, l. 1.—**Union Jack.** The name is derived from the *Jacque* or surcoat, charged with a red cross, worn in former times by the English soldiers.

P. 27, l. 2.—**James the First.** The first king of that name in England, but the sixth James in Scotland. He began to reign in England in 1603.

P. 27, l. 4.—**St. George.** A prince of Cappadocia, said to have been born in Palestine. He was a Christian and suffered martyrdom under Diocletian in 303, for having torn down at Nicomedia the edict of the Emperor against the Christians. The legend usually associated with him is the rescue of a king's daughter from a dragon. He was adopted in 1348 as the patron saint of England. See *The Birth of St. George* and *St. George and the Dragon*, in the ninth book of Percy's *Reliques of Ancient English Poetry*.

P. 27, l. 2.—**St. Andrew.** The patron saint of Scotland. After the death of Christ, Andrew is supposed to have preached the gospel in Greece and Scythia, and to have been put to death in Achaia. His day falls on November 30.

P. 27, l. 6.—**United Countries.** In 1603 the king of Scotland became king of England. The countries continued to be ruled by the same king or queen until 1707, when they were united under the one legislature. In the first edition of Book III., this date was wrongly printed, 1607 (line 15). The proclamation in regard to the flag was dated July 28, 1707.

P. 27, l. 16.—**Parliamentary Union.** January 1, 1801.

P. 27, l. 17.—**St. Patrick.** The patron saint of Ireland. There is much dispute in regard to the facts of his life. He is said to have been born near Glasgow, in Scotland, about 372, to have been a slave in Ireland from 388 to 395, to have gone to Gaul where he was ordained priest and bishop, to have returned to Ireland which he converted to Christianity, and to have died March 17, 465. His day is celebrated March 17.

P. 28, l. 14.—**King Richard.** Richard I., Cœur-de-Lion, the hero of the Third Crusade.

Wolseley. Lord Wolseley, who in 1870 commanded the expedition sent against the rebels at Fort Garry, and later commanded the British troops in the Egyptian war. In 1900 he laid down his office of Commander-in-Chief of the British forces, being succeeded by Earl Roberts.

THE CAPTURE OF THE WHALE.

This selection is made up from the 17th chapter of *The Pilot*. The description in the text has no necessary connection with the plot of the novel. It is a mere episode and may be treated without any reference to the context.

HIAWATHA'S SAILING.

This selection forms the 7th section of *Hiawatha*. See Book IV., page 265. The strong man, Kwasind, is described in Section VI., *Hiawatha's Friend*.

Dear too, unto Hiawatha,
Was the very strong man Kwasind,
He the strongest of all mortals,
He the mightiest among many;
For his very strength he loved him,
For his strength allied to goodness.

P. 32, l. 18.—**Moon of leaves.** Month of leaves, May.

THE OLIVE TREE.

This selection was written by the editors of the *Victorian Readers.*

P. 39, l. 1.—**Cecrops.** A native of Sais in Egypt, who led a colony of Egyptians into Greece about 1556 B.C. The Athenians looked up to him as the founder of their city.

P. 39, l. 3.—**He had made mild, etc.** See Tennyson's *Ulysses.*

P. 39, l. 26.—**Poseidon.** See Book IV., page 22.

P. 40, l. 2.—**Athena.** See Book IV., page 23.

HIAWATHA—PICTURE WRITING.

This selection forms Section XIV. of *Hiawatha.* See Book IV., Page 265.

P. 41, l. 22.—**Totem.** Family coat-of-arms.

THE SENTINEL'S POUCH.

P. 49, l. 3.—**Austrians, etc.** The incident here recorded took place during the Seven Years' War (1756-1763), in which Prussia was opposed by Russia and Austria.

P. 49, l. 9.—**Giant Mountains**—*Reissengebirge.* Mountains to the south and west of Silesia, in Germany.

P. 52, l. 3.—**Frederick.** The son of Frederick William of Prussia and Sophia Dorothea, the daughter of George I. of England. He ascended the Prussian throne 1740, and died 1786. His reign was one long succession of wars, in which, in the end, the victory always inclined to himself.

THE EMPEROR'S WATCH.

P. 54, l. 1.—**Alfred Krupp.** The Krupp steel works are the largest in the world. Krupp was born in 1812 and died in 1887.

P. 54, l. 12.—**William I.** The King of Prussia and the first Emperor of United Germany. He was born in 1797, began to reign in 1861, was crowned Emperor of Germany, at Versailles, during the Franco-Prussian war in 1871, and died in 1888.

THE BRAVE THREE HUNDRED.

This selection was written by the editors of the *Victorian Readers*. It describes the fight of the Greeks at Thermopylae, against the hosts of the Persians. Thermopylae is a small pass leading from Thessaly into Phocis. On one side of the pass is a mountain range, on the other is the sea, while the pass itself is very marshy, and at one point but 25 feet in breadth. On August 7, 480 B.C., the Greeks resisted the attempt of Xerxes to pass through the mountains. The Greeks, consisting in all of about 6,000 men, were under the command of Leonidas, King of Sparta. For two days they held the pass in spite of all the efforts of the Persians to dislodge them. On the third night a treacherous Greek betrayed to the Persian King a secret path over the mountains. When Leonidas realised that he would now be taken in the rear, he gave permission to his allies to depart, but he himself, and his 300 Spartans with 700 Thespians remained to uphold the honor of Greece. They were slain to a man. "The three hundred Spartans that formed the body-guard of Leonidas were picked men, somewhat advanced in years, and every one with a son left behind at Sparta, so that no Spartan family should become extinct through the possible accidents of battle."—*Myers.*

P. 56, l. 2.—**Mighty Army.** The exact number of fighting men in the Persian army is stated to have been 2,317,000. This is probably an exaggeration, but the host, on land and sea, numbered at least one million men.

THOR'S VISIT TO JOTUNHEIM.

This selection is an adaptation from various sources.

P. 62, l. 1.—**Thor.** See Book IV., Page 75.

P. 62, l. 2.—**Jotunheim.** The world of the Giants. It is situated beyond the ocean and is separated from Asaheim, the abode of the Gods, by the river Ifing, which never freezes over.

P. 62, l. 2.—**Giant.** In the beginning, while as yet there was no earth, nor sea, nor sky, there existed in the midst of space a yawning gulf, called Ginungagap. North of this was Niflheim, where was the spring Hvergelmer, and from which flowed the twelve ice-cold rivers Elivagar. When these rivers had flowed far southward from their sources, the venom in them hardened and became ice. Thus Ginungagap on its northern side was filled with ice and fog and gusts of vapor. But on the south side of the abyss was Muspelheim, the land of sparks and flakes of flame. When the frozen vapor from the north met the heated blasts from the south, it melted into drops, and by the might of the *Supreme God*, these drops were quickened into life and became Ymer or Rhimthurs, the first of the Frost-Giants. From the left arm-pit of Ymer, while he slept, sprang a man and a woman, and from his feet was produced a son, Thrudgelmer, who in turn bore a son, Bergelmer. Ymer was nourished by the cow Audhumbla, who had been born in a similar manner to the giant himself. One day when the cow was licking the salty rime stones, a man's hair appeared, the next day the head appeared, while on the third day the whole body was visible. The name of this man was Bure. His son Bor married Bistla, and their children were Odin, Vili and Ve. These three soon conspired against their hated enemy, Ymer, and slew him. From his wounds flowed such a torrent of blood that a great deluge was caused, in which the whole brood of the Frost-Giants was lost, with the exception of Bergelmer. This giant escaped with his wife to Jotunheim, where he became the ancestor of the new race of Giants, the inveterate enemies of Odin, Thor and the other gods.

P. 62, l. 5.—**Mjolnir.** This famous hammer, which when thrown, immediately returned to the hand, was made for Thor by the Dwarfs. When it was being forged, Loki who was standing by, turned himself into a hornet and stung the brow of the dwarf who was hammering the iron. The dwarf raised his hand to his head, a moment was lost, and the hammer was finished an inch short in the handle.

P. 62, l. 6.—**Thialfi.** When Thor went on his journeys he took his goats with him, who when meal-time came were killed and eaten, but on being required again, they immediately came to life, whole and

sound. On one occasion, Thor stayed during the night at a peasant's house, and as usual killed his goats. A shank bone was given to the son of the peasant, Thialfi, who being eager to get at the marrow, broke the bone. One of the goats, on being brought to life was lame. Thor was very angry and was appeased only by the peasant consenting to give Thialfi to him as his [illegible].

Loki. One of the great gods of the Norse mythology. There are so many conflicting accounts regarding Loki that it is impossible to give any clear connected story concerning him. He was at first regarded as a God, and was merely the personification of the spirit of Life. Afterwards he was regarded as the personification of fire and lightning and also of mischief. At last he came to be regarded as wholly evil and was cast out from among the circle of the gods. His last great act of treachery, the instigation of Hoder to throw the mistletoe at Baldur, an act which resulted in the death of the gentle Asa, so enraged the gods that they resolved on instant punishment. Loki was captured and chained to a rock; over him was placed a serpent, from whose mouth drops poison, which, however, is caught in a cup by Loki's faithful wife. But at intervals the cup fills, Sigyn is compelled to empty it, a drop falls upon Loki, and he writhes in awful anguish, thus causing earthquakes, which shake the world.

P. 63, l. 16.—**Serpent.** The Midgard Serpent, whose coils completely surround the earth. Thor was doomed to meet his death by the venom which flowed from this monster.

THE STORY OF JOSEPH.

This story forms part of the 37th Chapter of *Genesis*. The second selection forms the 45th Chapter. The names of the brethren are given in *Genesis* xlvi., 8-27.

P. 17, l. 15.—**Shechem.** The district around Shechem, about 20 miles north of Jerusalem.

P. 17, l. 21.—**Hebron.** The district around the town of Hebron, about 15 miles south of Jerusalem.

P. 17, l. 28.—**Dothan.** About 10 miles north of Shechem.

P. 68, l. 18.—**Ishmaelites.** Descendants of Ishmael. *Genesis* xvi., 15; xvii., 20; xxi., 17; xxv., 17, etc.

Gilead. A mountainous and wooded region east of the Jordan.

P. 68, l. 28.—**Pieces of Silver.** About $12.80.

THE FAIRIES OF CALDON LOW.

This poem is a very good illustration of a fairy-tale teaching a most important lesson. Although the lesson should not be insisted upon, yet it should not pass entirely unnoticed.

P. 69, l. 3.—**Caldon Low.** Caldon Hill.

MARCH OF THE MEN OF HARLECH.

The original of this song dates from 1468. Harlech Castle stands on a large rock on the sea shore of Merionethshire. It was built in the sixth century. The name means "above the boulders." Fitzgerald quotes from Nicholas as follows:—"By order of the King (Edward IV.), William Herbert, Earl of Pembroke, led a powerful army to Harlech, and demanded the surrender of the place; but Sir Richard Herbert, the Earl's brother, received from the stout defender this answer: 'I held a tower in France till all the old women in Wales heard of it, and now all the old women in France shall hear how I defend this castle.' Famine, however, at length succeeded, and the intrepid Welshman made an honorable capitulation."

P. 78, l. 1.—**Saxon.** English.

P. 78, l. 12.—**Cambria.** Wales.

LITTLE TOM, THE CHIMNEY SWEEP.

This selection is taken from Chapter I. of *The Water Babies, a Fairy Tale for a Land-Baby.* The book should be in the hands of every teacher and student. This selection, however, may be treated without any reference to the book from which it is taken. The whole story of the *Water Babies* has been described as an allegory, in which the Irishwoman, Do-as-you-would-be-done-by, Be-done-as-you-did, Mother Carey etc., are all one and the same, viz., the power working through the conscience and making for righteousness.

THE WRECK OF THE HESPERUS.

Longfellow says in his diary of December 30, 1839: "I wrote last evening a notice of Allston's poems; after which I sat till twelve

o'clock by my fire smoking, when suddenly it came to my mind to write the *Ballad of the Schooner Hesperus*, which I accordingly did. Then I went to bed, but could not sleep. New thoughts were running in my mind, and I got up to add them to the ballad. It was three by the clock. I then went to bed and fell asleep. I felt pleased with the ballad. It hardly cost me an effort. It did not come into my head by lines, but by stanzas." Again he says: "I have broken ground in a new field, namely, ballads; beginning with the *Wreck of the Schooner Hesperus* on the reef of Norman's Woe in the great storm of a fortnight ago." The ballad was printed in *The New World*, January 14, 1840.

P. 84, l. 2.—**Spanish Main.** The Spanish ocean, off the coast of Central America.

P. 87, l. 15.—**Stilled the wave.** *Luke* viii., 24.

P. 87, l. 20.—**Norman's Woe.** A very dangerous reef near the entrance to Gloucester harbor, Massachusetts.

FLORENCE NIGHTINGALE.

The heroine of this selection was born at Florence, May, 1820. She was brought up in a wealthy and refined home, and carefully educated. She early turned her attention to schemes for the relief of human suffering, and went to France and Germany for the purpose of studying the best methods of nursing. During the Crimean war the public were horrified at the condition of the wounded, and Lord Herbert, then Secretary of War, appealed to Miss Nightingale to organise a staff of nurses for service in the Crimea. His letter to her crossed one from her to him offering her services. The work she performed there can never be perfectly appreciated. The people of England subscribed for a testimonial of £50,000, which Miss Nightingale promptly devoted to founding a training school for nurses, called "The Nightingale Home." Her life since then has been spent in the service of humanity. She has been consulted frequently by various governments in regard to matters of field nursing. She resides at present (October, 1901) at London.

SANTA FILOMENA.

This poem was published in the first number of *The Atlantic Monthly*, November, 1857. The reference is, of course, to Florence Nightingale.

"At Pisa the Church of San Francisco contains a chapel dedicated lately to Santa Filomena; over the altar is a picture, by Sabatelli, representing the saint as a beautiful nymph attended by two angels, bearing the lily, palm, and javelin, and beneath, in the foreground, the sick and the maimed, who are healed by her intercession."—*Mrs. Jameson.*

Filomena was a martyr of the third century. Her father was the King of a small state in Greece, and had been converted to Christianity by the efforts of his physician. When their child was born, the parents called her Filomena, or "daughter of light," since she had been born in the faith. When Filomena was thirteen years old, Diocletian the Roman Emperor, threatened the state over which her father ruled. The parents, taking their daughter with them, hurried to Rome and implored the clemency of Diocletian. The Emperor agreed to spare their country, provided Filomena became his wife. Two years before the girl had vowed to become a nun, and as a consequence, refused to marry the Emperor, and persisted in her refusal in spite of the entreaties of her parents and the threats of Diocletian. She was subjected to the most cruel tortures, being lashed, thrown into the Tiber with an anchor tied to her neck, pierced with spears, shot at with arrows, but all to no avail; angels supported her and healed her wounds as soon as made. At length, in anger, the Emperor ordered her to be beheaded.

The lily is an emblem of innocence and purity, the palm of the martyrdom of Filomena and her triumph over the heathen Emperor, while the spear, or more properly the arrow, refers to the fact that the arrows shot at her by order of the Emperor, not only refused to pierce the virgin, but returned and slew six of the archers who shot them. The application of the first two is obvious; the spear probably refers to the fact that some most unjust attacks were made upon the motives of Miss Nightingale, attacks which recoiled upon those who uttered them. See *Florence Nightingale*, by Eliza F. Polland (The Fleming, Revell Co.).

A very sympathetic account of the work performed in the Crimea by Florence Nightingale is given in Fitchett's *Fights for the Flag*, in the last chapter, entitled "The Lady with the Lamp."

P. 96, l. 15.—**Trenches.** Before Sebastapool in 1854-55 during the Crimean War.

THE DAFFODILS.

This poem was composed in 1804, and published 1807. "When we were in the woods, below Gowbarrow Park, we saw a few daffodils close to the water side. As we went along, there were more, and yet more; and at last, under the boughs of the trees, we saw that there was a long belt of them along the shore, about the breadth of a country turnpike road. I never saw daffodils so beautiful. They grew among the mossy stones, about and above them; some rested their heads upon these stones, as on a pillow for weariness; and the rest tossed, and reeled, and danced, and seemed as if they verily laughed with the wind that blew upon them over the lake. They looked so gay, ever glancing, ever changing."—*Dorothy Wordsworth's Journal.*

Note the inevitable life-lesson of the poem.

P. 102, l. 8.—**Milky way.** The galaxy.

P. 102, l. 20.—**Vacant.** Idle.

P. 102, l. 21.—**They flash.** This line and the next were composed by Mrs. Wordsworth.

BRUCE AND THE SPIDER.

Bruce was crowned at Scone, in 1306, but was defeated shortly afterwards by an English army and obliged to flee to Ireland. The next year he returned and renewed the contest, winning almost at once a victory over the English. Edward I., of England, died about this time, but the war was kept up until 1314, when Edward II. made a determined effort to crush Bruce, but was defeated at Bannockburn. Even after this the war did not cease, but was waged with varying fortune until 1328, when peace was concluded. The precise time in the career of Bruce at which this incident is said to have taken place is unknown.

CHRISTMAS EVE.

This poem was written by the author for the entertainment of his children during the Christmas festivities of 1822. A young lady, from Troy, was visiting the home of the author and begged permission to copy the verses in order to show them to her friends at home. The next year, without securing the permission of Dr. Moore, she sent the

verses to *The Troy Sentinel*, in which they were printed December 23, 1823. Even the favor with which the poem was received did not mollify the author, who was justly angry at the deception practised upon him.

The author of this poem, Clement Clarke Moore, was born at New York, July 15, 1779. He graduated from Columbia College, of which his father was president, in 1798. He became Professor of Greek and Oriental Literature in the Episcopal Theological Seminary at New York. He was a very wealthy man, and in 1818, gave one-half his property to the Seminary, an endowment which it enjoys to-day. Dr. Moore died, July 10, 1863, at his summer residence, Newport, R.I.

P. 117, l. 4.—**St. Nicholas.** Nicholas was born at Palara in Syria. On the day of his birth he rose in his bath and mutely thanked God that he saw the light. He became a priest, rose to be an abbot, and was chosen Bishop of Myra, in Asia Minor. He worked very many miracles and was supposed to be in a special degree the protector of little children. He died, December 26, 326. The fiction rose that the saint would bestow presents upon the children upon the eve of his festival, December 6, and this idea was gradually transferred to Christmas eve.

THE HORATII.

This selection was written by the editors of the *Victorian Readers*. The story is one of the legends of early Rome, and is fully given in the text.

THE BATTLE OF BLENHEIM.

This poem was written at Witsbury in 1798.

At this time Louis XIV. was on the throne of France. Louis was a man of wonderful sagacity and tremendous energy, and had a facility for securing capable agents in the carrying out of his comprehensive schemes. He had resolved in 1704 to break up finally the Confederacy of England, Holland, Austria and the German States, which had for some time been making head against him. In this year Bavaria joined France as an ally, thus giving Louis a clear passage to the Danube. Louis' plan, if carried out, would have resulted in four large, fully equipped armies moving upon Vienna, the centre of the

Confederacy. Without doubt Vienna would have fallen an easy victim, had not the sagacity of Marlborough penetrated the designs of Louis. With incredible difficulty he managed to persuade the various nations concerned to agree to his plans. He marched straight for the Danube, and by the time that three of the French armies had concentrated, according to the plan of Louis, the army of Marlborough had already joined with those of Prince Eugene and the Margrave Louis. The two armies met at Blenheim, a little village on the banks of the Danube, on August 13, 1704. Marlborough had 56,000 men and 66 guns, the French had 60,000 men and 90 guns. The battle was a tremendous struggle, but the strategy of Marlborough triumphed and the French were defeated. 30,000 men were killed in the battle; 11,000 prisoners were taken.

Blenheim stands as one of the decisive battles of the world's history. Had Marlborough been defeated at Blenheim, it is altogether probable that the whole course of European history would have been changed. It hopelessly destroyed the dreams of universal empire cherished by Louis, shattered the power and prestige of France, and gave to the Teutonic nations in Europe those opportunities for development which they had been denied for so long.

For descriptions of the battle read Fitchett's *Fights for the Flag*, Creasy's *Decisive Battles of the World* (Harper's), and George's *The Battles of English History* (Dodd, Mead & Co.).

P. 123, l. 13.—**Marlborough.** The Duke was born in 1650 and died in 1722. Blenheim was the first really important battle in which he was engaged.

P. 123, l. 14.—**Eugene.** Prince Eugene, the great grandson of the Duke of Savoy, was born in 1663, and died in 1736. He was one of the greatest generals of modern times. He cooperated with Marlborough in most of his campaigns, and alone gained a number of victories over the Turks. Old Kaspar makes a mistake in speaking of "our good Prince." Eugene was Prince of Savoy, and in this battle the Bavarians were fighting on the side of the French.

P. 123, l. 21.—**What good.** See introduction.

THE CONQUEST OF PERU.

This selection was written especially for the *Victorian Readers* by a lady in Winnipeg.

P. 124, l. 10.—**Knotted cords.** The quipu. "A cord about two feet in length, tightly spun from variously colored threads, and having a number of smaller threads attached to it in the form of a fringe; used among the ancient Peruvians and elsewhere for recording events, etc. The fringe-like threads were also of different colors and were knotted. The colors denoted sensible objects, as white for silver and yellow for gold, and sometimes also abstract ideas, as white for peace and red for war. They constituted a rude register of certain important facts or events, as of births, deaths and marriages, the number of the population fit to bear arms, the quantity of stores in the government magazine, etc."—*The Century Dictionary.*

P. 124, l. 26.—**Pizzaro.** Born in Spain in 1475. He was employed as a swineherd when a boy and never learned to read or write. He soon emigrated to the new world, and took part in many dangerous and daring expeditions in Central America. Armed with the authority of the King of Spain, Pizzaro set out for Peru with 180 men and 30 horses. Atahualpa is said to have paid for his ransom about $15,000,000 in gold. Pizzaro was assassinated at Lima in 1541, nine years after his conquest of Peru.

LORD ULLIN'S DAUGHTER.

This ballad was written and published in 1809. There is no historical basis for the narrative.

THE BLUE JAY.

This story is adapted from Mark Twain. No knowledge of the context is necessary; the story is complete in itself.

THE VOICE OF SPRING.

P. 132, l. 16.—**Hesperian.** Western. See Book IV., page 253.

THE HORSE THAT ACCUSED HIS MASTER.

This story is a prose version of *The Bell of Atri.* See Book V., page 135.

THE SOLITUDE OF ALEXANDER SELKIRK.

Alexander Selkirk was born at Lardo, Scotland, about 1676. He was an experienced mariner and embarked as sailing master on a privateer called "The Cinque Ports Galley." He quarrelled with the Captain and was put ashore at his own request in September, 1704, on the island of Juan Fernandez. Here he remained, living chiefly on the flesh of wild goats, until February 12, 1709, when he was rescued by Captain Rogers of "The Duke." He acted as mate for Rogers, sailed with him round the world and arrived in England in 1711. He afterwards entered the navy, became a lieutenant, and died at sea in 1723. De Foe is said to have founded his story of *Robinson Crusoe* on the adventures of Alexander Selkirk.

AN APRIL DAY.

This poem is attributed to Chaucer. If by him at all it has been so modernized that it contains nothing either of the language or the spirit of Chaucer himself.

HOW THE MOUNTAIN WAS CLAD.

This selection is taken from *Arne*, a volume of sketches in prose and poetry published in 1858. The translation is that of Professor Rasmus B. Anderson, in the volume published by Houghton, Mifflin & Co.

ANDROCLES AND THE LION.

This story is taken from one of Lang's "color" fairy books. The story is a common one, and is not confined to any one nation or place. *Maldonata and the Puma* and other stories may be told to illustrate this point.

ULRICA.

In the first editions of the *Victorian Readers* this selection was wrongly attributed to Miss Machar. It is, in fact, an adaptation of

"The Cow Bells of Grand Pré," the fourth chapter of *Stories of the Land of Evangeline*, by Grace Deans McLeod (D. Lothrop Co.). The stories in this book are interesting and capitally told. The book should be in every school library. The author was born and educated at Berwick in Nova Scotia. Miss McLeod some years ago married a lawyer in Boston, where she now resides.

HOHENLINDEN.

After the overthrow of the Directory in 1799, Napoleon gave to Moreau the command of the French army operating in Germany, at the same time indicating to him the plan of campaign. Moreau refused to follow this plan and followed his own devices. After winning two important victories, he met the combined forces of Austria and Bavaria, under the Archduke John, at Hohenlinden, on December 3, 1800, and inflicted a crushing defeat. The action resulted in the Peace of Lunéville in 1801.

"The Austrian and Bavarian forces had crossed the Inn, which flows from the Tyrol into the Danube, had advanced into Bavaria, and had obtained some slight successes that threw the French army, under Moreau, back upon Hohenlinden, where a decisive battle was expected. When the Austrian army advanced unsuspectingly through the dangerous roads of the forest, Moreau prepared to attack them as they issued from the defiles, and also to fall upon them on the flank. The Imperial columns began their march two hours before dawn, in a blinding snow-storm that obliterated all road marks and prevented the intercommunication of the columns. The Austrian centre approached Hohenlinden about 9 o'clock, but they were met by Grouchy. The darkness of the storm hid the ranks from each other, only the flashing of the guns revealing the presence of the enemy. Driven back into the forest, the Austrians fought bravely, and the contending armies, broken in single file, fought man to man, with invincible resolution. Meanwhile the other divisions were crushed by Ney and Grenier, while Richepanse fell on the rear. 'No words can paint the confusion that ensued in the Austrian columns.' The artillery drivers cut their traces and galloped in all directions into the forest; the infantry disbanded and fled, the cavalry rushed in tumultuous squadrons to the rear, trampling under foot whatever opposed their passage.' The Imperialists, weakened by

the loss of above 100 pieces of cannon and 14,000 soldiers, took advantage of the night to withdraw their shattered forces across the Inn."—*Sykes.*

Campbell saw some of the battles of this campaign, but he was not present at Hohenlinden. This poem was written in 1802.

P. 168, l. 1.—**Linden.** The village of Hohenlinden is in Upper Bavaria, twenty miles east of Munich.

P. 169, l. 16.—**Iser.** A river which rises in the Tyrol, flows past Munich, and after a course of 190 miles, joins the Danube. The river, however, is several miles from Hohenlinden.

P. 169, l. 19.—**Frank-Hun.** *Frank* here stands for the French, while Hun by a stretch of the imagination is used for the Austrians.

P. 169, l. 23.—**Munich.** The capital of Bavaria, here used for the Bavarian army.

THE PINE-TREE SHILLING.

This selection is taken from Chapter VI. of *The Whole History of Grandfather's Chair*, by Nathaniel Hawthorne.

P. 174, l. 29.—**Bullion.** Uncoined silver.

P. 174, l. 30.—**Buccaneers.** See Book V., page 93.

P. 174, l. 15.—**His grandfather's chair.** The word "his" should not be inserted in the text, and "grandfather" should have a capital letter. Captain Hull was seated in the chair which gives its title to the book from which the story is taken. He had purchased the chair a short time before at an auction, had mended its broken leg, and given it the place of dignity in his household.

P. 176, l. 26.—**Endicott.** The Puritan governor of Massachusetts. He was governor from 1644 to 1665, with the exception of four years.

THE IVY GREEN.

This selection is taken from Chapter VI., Vol. I., of the *Posthumous Papers of the Pickwick Club.* It was recited by an elderly clergyman who was a guest at a celebration held at the house of Mr. Wardle.

BUCEPHALUS.

The famous horse belonging to Alexander had a head like a bull, whence his name. He would permit no one to mount him but his master. Being mortally wounded at the Jelum, he placed his master in a place of safety and then dropped dead. He was 30 years of age when he died.

P. 186, l. 2.—**Alexander** (356 B.C.-323 B.C.). One of the great generals and conquerors of the ancient world. He was but 32 when he died and had reigned but 12 years, yet in that time he had completely conquered the whole of the East.

P. 186, l. 4.—**Philip.** The cunning and sagacious conqueror of Greece. He was assassinated about 336 B.C.

P. 188, l. 12.—**Pliny.** The Roman historian.

P. 188, l. 15.—**Thebes.** A famous city of Boeotia, on the river Ismenus in Greece. It revolted against Alexander who ordered it to be completely destroyed. 6,000 people were killed and 30,000 sold as slaves.

P. 188, l. 18.—**Great King.** Darius, King of Persia, who was conquered by Alexander at Arbela, and slain by a treacherous governor as he escaped from the battle.

P. 188, l. 23.—**Five Rivers.** India.

P. 188, l. 24.—**Porus.** Alexander did not succeed in conquering Porus, even though he defeated his army at the Hydaspes. He gave his friendship to the man who defied him, and even added to his dominions.

WILLIAM TELL AND HIS SON.

The incident here recorded is said to have taken place in the year 1307. Gessler was, at this time, Vogt of the Emperor Albert of Habsburg. There is no historical basis for the story of Tell, nor is there any proof that such a man as Tell ever existed. A similar story is related in connection with some hero of almost all the northern nations. According to the legend Gessler broke his promise and ordered the instant arrest of Tell. While Gessler and his prisoner were crossing the lake in a boat, a violent storm arose, and Tell was released for the purpose of steering the vessel. Tell watched his

chance, sprang on shore and escaped. Gessler, landing soon after, was shot by the hero. Tell is said to have lost his life in 1350, while attempting to save a child. Schiller has founded his great drama, *Wilhelm Tell*, on these incidents. See *Curious Myths of the Middle Ages*, by Baring-Gould.

For a similar story see *Old Stories from British History*, by E. York Powell (Longmans, Green & Co.).

CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS.

Christopher Columbus was born at Genoa about 1435. His early history is very obscure, but it is known that he studied at the University of Pavia and that he became a sailor at the age of fourteen. He was employed in the Mediterranean, both in commercial and military enterprises, until 1470, when he removed to Lisbon. After this he made several voyages to the west coast of Africa. About this time he conceived his theory of the continent beyond the seas and solicited the patronage of the King of Portugal. Failing in this he turned to Spain, where at first his proposals were coldly received, but in the end he was furnished with money and ships by Queen Isabella. He set sail from Spain August 3, 1492, with the result related in the selection. After this he made several voyages to America, and died in neglect and poverty at Valladolid in 1506.

JOHN GILPIN.

This poem was published in November, 1782, in the *Public Advertiser*.

"One evening in the famous parlor, the three friends being seated, a droll tale that she had heard when a girl came into Lady Austen's mind, and she proposed to tell it. Mrs. Unwin readily assented, but Cowper was silent, for by this time he had got into that pitiable state in which nothing seemed to interest him. This was not very encouraging to Lady Austen, but she began her story. The poet, indifferent at first and apparently paying no attention to what was going on, gradually grew interested as the story proceeded, and Lady Austen, seeing his face brighten and delighted with her success, wound

up the story with all the skill at her command. Cowper could now no longer control himself, but burst out into a loud and hearty peal of laughter. The ladies joined in the mirth, and the merriment had scarcely subsided by supper time. The story made such an impression on his mind that at night he could not sleep; and his thoughts having taken the form of rhyme, he sprang from bed and committed them to paper, and in the morning brought down to Mrs. Unwin the crude outline of *John Gilpin*. All that day, and for several days he secluded himself in the greenhouse, and went on with the task of polishing and improving what he had written. As he filled his slips of paper he sent them across the market place to Mr. Wilson, to the great delight and merriment of that jocular barber, who on several other occasions had been favored with the first sight of some of Cowper's smaller poems."
—Wright's *The Life of William Cowper*.

LITTLE DAFFYDOWNDILLY.

This selection is taken from *The Snow Image and Other Twice-Told Tales*. The selection explains itself.

UNDER THE HOLLY BOUGH.

The title of this poem refers to the Christmas season, when for love of the Christ who was born on that day, all bitterness and strife are forgotten.

TYROLESE EVENING HYMN.

In this connection the poem on page 19, Book V. might be read. Note how all the verses lead up to the ninth, which contains the central idea of the poem.

RAB AND HIS FRIENDS.

This selection is very much abridged from the original, taken from the second volume of *Horæ Subsecivæ* (Spare Hours).

THE SINGING LEAVES.

This poem is an attempt to imitate the style and matter of the ancient ballads.

THE HORSES OF GRAVELOTTE.

The incident related in the poem actually took place after the Battle of Gravelotte, one of the bloodiest battles of the Franco-Prussian war, on August 18, 1870. The French, with 140,000 men, were engaged by 211,000 Germans. The former lost 12,500 officers and men, the latter lost 900 officers and 19,000 men. One saddle in every four was emptied. The French failed in their attempt to break through the German lines.

BRUIN AND THE COOK.

This selection is taken from Roberts' *Round the Camp-Fire.*

ROLAND, THE SHIELD-BEARER.

This ballad is taken from *German Ballads*, translated by Elizabeth Craigmyle (Walter Scott).

The story here related concerns Roland or Orlando, one of the Paladins of Charlemagne or Charles the Great of France. Milon, a noble knight, had secretly married Bertha, the king's sister. On the discovery of the marriage being made the couple were banished to Italy, where Roland was born. Many stories are told about the manner in which Charlemagne and Milon became reconciled, but this occurred shortly before Roland reached manhood. Roland distinguished himself as the bravest of the Paladins, and was killed at Roncesvalles, in the Pyrenees, with the whole rear-guard of the French army, who had been betrayed into the hands of the Spaniards by Ganelon or Gano, a traitorous Frenchman.

So many legends cluster around Charlemagne, Roland and the 12 Paladins or Peers, that it is impossible to tell any consistent story. The knights mentioned in the text—Richard the Fearless; Archbishop Turpin, the adviser of Charlemagne, who was killed with Roland at

Roncesvalles; Naims or Namo of Bavaria; Haimon; Milon, the brother-in-law of the king, and Count Garin—were all Paladins, and many stories are told of their exploits. See Bulfinch's *Legends of Charlemagne* (Tilton & Co., Boston), and *Legends of the Middle Ages*, by Guerber (American Book Co.), and *Orlando Furioso*, by Ariosto, 2 Vols. (Geo. Bell & Sons).

P. 246, l. 1.—**Kaiser Karl.** The Emperor Charles, or Charlemagne [742-814]. His exploits as they have come down to us are very largely mythical. He was crowned "Emperor of the West" by the Pope, under the title of Cæsar Augustus, in 800.

P. 246, l. 2.—**Aix.** Aix-la-Chapelle, the capital of Charlemagne, founded by him beside a deep lake, into which a favorite ring had been thrown.

P. 246, l. 9.—**Dule.** Dole, grief, sorrow.

P. 246, l. 14.—**Ardennes.** A forest on the frontier of France and Belgium.

THE GOLDEN TOUCH.

This selection is taken from Hawthorne's *Wonder Book*, published in 1851.

BOOK IV.

THE SONG MY PADDLE SINGS.

This selection is taken from *The White Wampum* (The Copp, Clark Co., 1896). In reading the poems of Pauline Johnson we always expect to be near nature's heart. In this poem she breathes out her love to the paddle that has so often helped her in calm and storm. It is impossible not to observe the susceptibility of the rhythm to the theme, the effort to make the sound harmonize with the sense, the wise use of personification, and the loving sympathy with nature in all her moods. In studying this poem the student should see a succession of beautiful pictures, he should feel in a measure the joy and exultation of the canoeist, and should appreciate the triumph of the paddle, which not only conquered the stream, but sang the wind to rest and caused the trees to join in its lullaby.

P. 1, l. 9.—**Lateen.** A triangular sail.

LOCKSLEY.

This selection is taken from the 13th chapter of *Ivanhoe*. The incident took place at the end of the second day's tournament. The sports in which the knights had taken part were just ended, when a messenger arrived from France with the information that King Richard had been liberated. This alarmed Prince John, who had been trying to take advantage of his power as Regent to undermine his brother and secure the crown, and indeed it was with this object in view that the tournament had been held. Waldemar Fitzurse urged that the sports be broken off, but De Bracy objected.

The interest of *Ivanhoe* centres around the Jewess, Rebecca, and her intense though silent love for Ivanhoe, the disinherited son of Cedric, the Saxon, and the lover of the Lady Rowena. Both this selection and *The Tournament* on page 133 are episodes in the narrative, which are perfectly clear without any reference to the context, although each plays an important part in the novel. The Locksley of this selection is the famous robber Robin Hood in disguise.

P. 3, l. 1.—**De Bracy.** The leader of a troop of Free Companions in the service of Prince John.

P. 3, l. 4.—**Waldemar.** Fitzurse, the confidential adviser of John.

P. 3. l. 7.—**Prince's promises.** The third day of the tournament was to have been devoted to "feats of archery, bull-baiting and other popular amusements."

P. 3, l. 8.—**Saxon serfs.** This expression well illustrates the contempt in which the Norman nobles held the Saxon peasants.

P. 3, l. 11.—**Insolent peasant.** Locksley, who on the previous day had incurred the anger of John by applauding the action of Cedric, the Saxon, in overthrowing Isaac of York, who, by command of the Prince, was endeavoring to take his seat in the gallery.

P. 3, l. 27.—**Baldric.** A belt passing over the shoulder and under the arm.

P. 4, l. 2.—**St. Hubert.** The cousin of Pepin, king of France. He was so fond of hunting that he neglected his religious duties therefor, until one day a stag bearing a crucifix appeared before him and threatened him with eternal ruin unless he mended his ways. He did so and entered a religious house, ultimately becoming Bishop of Liege. After death he was canonized and made the patron saint of huntsmen.

P. 4, l. 2.—**Sylvan sport.** Hunting.

P. 4, l. 4.—**Rangers.** Guardians of the forest, for the purpose of enforcing the game laws.

P. 4, l. 5.—**Royal forests.** Certain forests in England were set apart for the exclusive use of the king in hunting. To kill game within their limits, without permission, was punishable with death.

P. 4, l. 13.—**Newmarket.** A town about 60 miles from London, the chief seat of the training establishments for horse-races. It possesses the finest race course in the world.

P. 4, l. 25.—**Insolent babble.** Locksley, in reply to a question of the Prince, had quietly stated that he could use the bow.

P. 5, l. 7.—**Third prize.** The prize on both days of the tournament had been won by Ivanhoe, who, although in disguise, had incurred the enmity of John. See Book IV., page 133.

P. 5, l. 16.—**Noble.** A gold coin worth about $1.60.

P. 5, l. 17.—**Lincoln Green.** The distinguishing dress of the foresters at this time. The cloth was made at Lincoln

P. 5, l. 18.—**Lists.** The enclosed space, within which the sports were contested.

P. 6, l. 15.—**Rovers.** A long distance shot, usually at a stray or accidental mark.

P. 6, l. 30.—**Malvoisin.** A Norman baron in the service of John, and one of the competitors in the tournament.

P. 7, l. 14.—**Hastings.** The battle in which the Normans defeated the Saxons and conquered England in 1066.

P. 9, l. 30.—**Arthur's round table.** The famous table made by Merlin, and presented to Arthur on the occasion of his marriage with Guinevere. It seated 150 knights, and was made round in imitation of the shape of the world. Arthur ruled over Britain in the early part of the fifth century.

P. 10, l. 7.—**King Richard.** Richard, Cœur-de-Lion, who for some time had been held in captivity by the Duke of Austria.

P. 10, l. 16.—**Whittle.** Knife.

THE FOREST FIRE.

This poem was first printed in *The Independent*, and afterwards published in *The Book of the Native* (The Copp, Clark Co., 1897).

This is a beautifully pathetic story of heroism and self-sacrifice. The poet has given a succession of intensely vivid pictures, but has

wisely left it to the imagination to fill in the details of the father's death. A writer of less refined taste would have given all the ghastly particulars. It will be noted that the horror grows in intensity as the story proceeds, until it culminates in the resolve of the father to give himself for his child. And in giving his life, he adds, as a further proof of his love, these words of double meaning, which would ease the mind of the boy at the time, and would be to him a hope and inspiration in the days to be. In order that the student may see the pictures the poet has presented, and may appreciate the feelings of father and child, it need scarcely be said that the lesson must be approached with living sympathy. It is not for every-day use.

THE SAXON AND THE GAEL.

This selection is taken from Canto V. of *The Lady of the Lake.*

Owing to a quarrel with the king, Douglas and his daughter Ellen had been banished from Scotland, but had taken refuge with a relative, Roderick Dhu, the chief of Clan Alpine on the Highland border. One evening, when both Douglas and Roderick were absent, the one hunting, the other on a marauding expedition, a stranger knight who had lost his way, was picked up by Ellen and brought to their island home in Loch Katrine. Here he gave his name as James Fitz-James, was hospitably treated and kindly dismissed the next morning. Shortly after Douglas and Roderick arrived. The former was accompanied by Malcolm Graeme, the lover of Ellen, who, on that account, was personally offensive to Roderick. A messenger appeared at this instant with the information that the king was at Stirling with a large force prepared to attack the Highland stronghold. The chief proposed that Douglas and he should link their fortunes together and fight the king, and at the same time asked for the hand of Ellen as a pledge of the alliance A quarrel ensued, which resulted in Malcolm leaving the island. Douglas at once went to Stirling to give himself up, thinking that it was his presence among the clans that had provoked the king. In the meantime the fiery cross had been sent around to summon the clansmen to battle. The next day Fitz-James returned with the intention of inducing Ellen to accompany him to Stirling, but the young lady told him of her love for Malcolm Graeme, and advised

him to depart at once, before it was too late. Fitz-James did so, under the guidance of Red Murdoch, who was instructed by Roderick to lead the knight into an ambush, the chief having mistaken him for a spy. The knight discovered the treachery of his guide and killed him on the spot. Not having a guide Fitz-James soon became confused, but just as he was on the point of giving up for the night, he chanced upon the camp of a Highlander, who received him hospitably, and promised to guide him in the morning as far as Coilantogle Ford, the boundary of Roderick's dominions. On the way the conversation touched upon the chief, about whom Fitz-James said some very bitter things. The Highlander warmly disputed the opinion of the knight, and finally revealed himself as the maligned chieftain. He showed Fitz-James, by calling up his clan and making them disappear, how completely he had him in his power, then proceeded in silence to Coilantogle Ford. It was at this point that the combat took place. Roderick was taken to Stirling, where he died in prison. In the meantime a drawn battle had been fought between the king's army and the clansmen. Ellen Douglas came to the king to intercede for her father, and was surprised to find that James Fitz-James and the king were the same person.

From the dramatic nature of the story and the repeated shifting of the interest, this selection lends itself admirably to oral reading. The vigor of the narrative, and the skilful manner in which the metre assists the progress of the story should be noted.

P. 14, l. 1.—**In silence.** Roderick had not spoken to Fitz-James since the disappearance of the clansmen.

P. 14, l. 2.—**Torrent.** The south branch of the river Teith.

P. 14, l. 3.—**Three mighty lakes.** Vennachar, Katrine and Achary, all drained by the Teith.

P. 14, l. 6.—**On Bochastle.** "The torrent which discharges itself from Loch Vennachar, sweeps through a flat and extensive moor called Bochastle. Upon a small eminence, and indeed on the plain itself, are some entrenchments which have been thought Roman."—*Scott.*

P. 14, l. 8.—**Eagle Wings.** The Roman standard, symbolic of her empire.

P. 15, l. 1.—**Target.** A round shield of light wood, covered with strong leather and studded with brass or iron. In charging regular troops the Highlander received the thrust of the bayonet in this buckler, twisted the weapon aside, and used the broadsword against the encumbered soldier.

P. 15, l. 3.—**Saxon.** A term applied to all those who lived south of the Highland border.

Promise just. Roderick had promised to conduct Fitz-James as far as Coilantogle Ford.

P. 15, l. 4.—**Vich-Alpine.** Son of Clan Alpine.

P. 15, l. 5.—**Murderous—ruthless.** An allusion to the charges made against Roderick by Fitz-James. Canto IV., Stanza 30, and Canto V., Stanza 5.

P. 15, l. 10.—**Vengeance.** For the foul insults showered upon him by Fitz-James.

P. 15, l. 11.—**Vantageless.** Having no advantage over his opponent, each being armed with a sword.

P. 15, l. 17.—**Vowed thy death.** Standing beside the dead body of Blanche of Devan, who had been slain by Red Murdoch, Fitz-James had sworn vengeance:

> God in my need be my relief
> As I wreck this on yonder chief.

P. 15, l. 19.—**Faith—debt.** Roderick had faithfully kept his promise, had saved Fitz-James' life by giving him food and shelter, and had led him safely through foes who surrounded him on every side.

P. 15, l. 20.—**Meed.** Reward.

P. 15, l. 25.—**Prophet.** Brian the Hermit, a mysterious character who performs the superstitious Highland ceremonies in the poem. See Canto III., Stanzas 5 to 7, and Canto IV., Stanza 6.

P. 15, l. 32.—**Red Murdoch.** The clansman who had been sent to lead Fitz-James into an ambush, but who had been slain by the knight before he could effect his purpose.

P. 16, l. 2.—**Stirling.** The king was then at Stirling, the northern capital of his dominions.

P. 16, l. 5.—**Favor free.** Unconditional favor.

P. 16, l. 7.—**Strengths.** Strongholds. In the earlier editions of Book IV. this word was wrongly spelled "strength."

P. 16, l. 12. **Wretched kern.** Miserable peasant.

P. 16, l. 13.—**Homage.** "The vassal or tenant upon investiture did usually homage to his lord; openly and humbly kneeling, being ungirt, uncovered and holding up his hands together between those of the lord, who sat before him; and there professing that he did become his man from that day forth, of life and limb and earthly honor; and then he received a kiss from his lord."—*Blackstone.*

P. 16, l. 19.—**Carpet-knight.** A knight, whose deeds are done on the carpet in a lady's bower, instead of on the field of battle.

P. 16, l. 23.—**For the word.** Roderick had noticed on Fitz-James' bonnet the lock of hair.

> A lock from Blanche's tresses fair
> He blended with her bridegroom's hair;
> The mingled braid in blood he dyed
> And placed it on his bonnet side:
> "By Him, whose word is truth! I swear
> No other favor will I wear
> Till this sad token I imbrue
> In the best blood of Roderick Dhu."

P. 16, l. 29.—**Courtesy.**—See page 15, line 7.

P. 16, l. 31.—**Whistle.** A short time before this Roderick had by one whistle filled the glen with five hundred men.

P. 16, l. 33.—**Fearful odds.** Fitz-James' squires were waiting for him at this ford, and were within a short distance of the scene of conflict.

P. 17, l. 1.—**Fear not—doubt not.** A reference to Roderick's words to Fitz-James after the disappearance of the clansmen:

> Fear not—nay, that I need not say—
> But doubt not aught from mine array,
> Thou art my guest; I pledged my word
> As far as Coilantogle Ford. Canto IV., lines 232-265.

P. 17, l. 2.—**Hilt to hilt.** In single combat.

P. 17, l. 8.—**Dubious.** The issue of which was doubtful.

P. 17, l. 11.—**Brazen studs.** See page 15, line 1.

P. 17, l. 13.—**Abroad.** France, particularly Paris, was noted for its teaching of swordsmanship.

P. 17, l. 15-16.—**Pass—ward,** etc. These are fencing terms.

P. 17, l. 29. **At advantage ta'en.** Surprised.

P. 18, l. 3.—**Recreant.** Coward.

P. 18, l. 25.—**Turn the odds.** "Transfer the superiority from one side to the other."

P. 18, l. 32.—**Close.** A struggle at close quarters.

THE GOLDEN APPLE.

This selection is taken with some slight changes from Baldwin's *A Story of the Golden Age* (Chas. Scribner's Sons). The book is a very interesting and graphic account of Homeric times, the events being made to centre around Odysseus or Ulysses, the son of Laertes and the husband of Penelope. The youthful Odysseus had been sent on a visit to his grandfather, accompanied by the bard Phemius. While returning from Parnassus they took the opportunity to visit the famous Chiron in his cave. They were received very hospitably by the ancient teacher, who related to Odysseus the story here told and its continuation, "The Judgment of Paris" (Book IV., page 28). These two stories form an admirable introduction to the study of Church's *Stories from Homer* (The Macmillan Co.), in fact to the whole story of the Trojan war.

P. 19, l. 1.—**Chiron.** One of the race of Centaurs, half men and half horses, who inhabited Thessaly. The fable is supposed to have originated from the fact that the Thessalians were the first to capture and ride the wild horses. In this story the fact that Chiron was a Centaur is ignored. He was one of the most famous teachers of Greece, and had for his pupils many of its most noted heroes. Chiron was accidentally shot by Hercules in the war of the Lapithæ against the Centaurs. As he was immortal he could not die; but his wound pained him so much that he prayed to the gods for death. His request was granted, and he was placed among the stars as the constellation Saggitarius.

P. 19, l. 8.—**Five comely lads.** The pupils of Chiron, one of whom was Achilles, the hero of the Trojan war.

Odysseus.—The Greek name of Ulysses, the hero of Homer's *Odyssey*.

P. 19, l. 9.—**Phemius.** There is no warrant in classical story for this character. He is supposed to be the tutor of Odysseus, whom he is accompanying on his journey. Phemius is the name of the bard whose life was spared by Odysseus when he slaughtered the suitors of Penelope.

P. 19, l. 13.—**Mount Pelion.** A mountain in Thessaly. It was once piled on top of Mount Ossa, to enable the giants to scale the heavens.

P. 19, l. 15.—**Mortals.** In contradistinction to the Gods, "the immortals" or "ever-living ones."

P. 19, l. 20.—**Peleus.** One of the early kings of Thessaly. Having taken part in the murder of his brother Phocus, he was obliged to flee from his father's court. He took refuge with Eurytion, king of Phthia, who purified him from the murder and gave him his daughter in marriage. Peleus accompanied Eurytion to the hunt of the Calydonian Boar. In the excitement of the chase, an arrow aimed at the boar by Peleus glanced aside and instantly killed his father-in-law. Peleus again fled, and this time took refuge with Acastus, king of Iolchos. Here he remained for a short time, but an unjust charge being brought against him by the queen, he was seized and exposed, tied to a tree on Mount Pelion, to the fury of the wild beasts. Zeus, knowing his innocence, ordered Hephæstus to release him. It is at this point that the marriage with Thetis takes place. Shortly afterwards Peleus made war upon Acastus and put him to death. After the death of Achilles, Peleus, who was inconsolable, was made immortal by Thetis and translated to the Elysian Fields.

P. 20, l. 2.—**Iolcos.** One of the minor divisions of ancient Thessaly.

P. 20, l. 3.—**Phthia.** A town in Thessaly, celebrated as the birthplace of Achilles.

P. 20, l. 11.—**Sea-nymph.** The Nereides, the daughters of Nereus and Doris, fifty in number. Thetis was one of these sea-nymphs. There was strife among the gods as to who should be the husband of Thetis, and as no one of the gods would give up his claims, it was resolved to marry her to a mortal. Peleus was accordingly chosen and the marriage celebrated as here described.

P. 20, l. 15.—**Naiads.** Inferior deities who presided over rivers, streams and fountains. They were held in great reverence by the ancients, and were worshipped with various sacrifices and offerings.

P. 20, l. 21.—**Pallas Athena.** One day Zeus complained of a severe pain in his head, and ordered Hephæstus to cleave it open. Hephæstus did so, and immediately there sprang forth a woman, fully grown, clothed in armor and carrying a spear. This was Pallas Athene, the Roman Minerva, the goddess of War and Wisdom. Athene was one of the most powerful of the ancient divinities, as well as one of the most revered. The chief seat of her worship was Athens. Her emblem was the Olive tree. See Book III., page 39.

P. 20, l. 22.—**Luckless.** A reference to the misfortunes of Peleus, brought on by no fault of his own.

P. 20, l. 30.—**Silver-footed.** See line 17 above.

P. 21, l. 16.—**Star of morning.** The planet Venus.

P. 21, l. 24.—**Changed her form.** Compare Butcher and Lang's *Odyssey* (The Macmillan Co.), pages 60-62.

P. 22, l. 12.—**Mountain-nymphs.** The Oreades, daughters of Phoroneus and Hecate. They presided over the mountains and generally accompanied Artemis on her hunting expeditions.

P. 22, l. 17.—**Olympus.** A mountain in Thessaly and Macedonia, about a mile and a half high, the top being hidden in the clouds. It was held in great reverence as the dwelling place of the gods.

P. 22, l. 23.—**Hephæstus.** The god of fire and the mechanical arts, known to the Romans as Vulcan. He was the son of Zeus and Herè, but was thrown out of heaven by his father when he ventured to interfere in a domestic quarrel. For this reason he is always represented as lame of one foot. He was renowned as a great worker in metals, having made the arms of Achilles and the brazen bulls of Æetes.

P. 22, l. 24.—**Poseidon.** The son of Chronos and the brother of Zeus, known to the Romans as Neptune. He conspired with his brothers against Chronos and received as his share the empire of the sea. He is thus a sea-god, and is represented as riding in a chariot over the waves, holding his trident in his hand.

Deathless. Immortal.

P. 22, l. 25.—**Balios and Xanthos.** When Achilles departed for the Trojan war, Peleus presented him with these horses. Xanthos, after being chidden by Achilles, spoke and foretold the death of that hero.

P. 22, l. 27.—**Ashen spear.** This spear also accompanied Achilles through the Trojan war.

P. 22, l. 30—**Zeus.** The Roman Jupiter or Jove, the son of Chronos, and the brother of Poseidon and Pluto, was the king of the gods, and ruled over the heavens and the earth. The three brothers conspired against their father, dethroned him, and divided his kingdom among themselves. Zeus is usually represented sitting on a throne, holding his sceptre in one hand and his thunderbolts in the other. He exercised supreme power in the universe, and was only kept in check

by the Fates themselves. He married Heré, who shared with him his dominions.

P. 22, l. 31.—**White-armed.** The permanent epithet of Heré. Several of these epithets are used in the next few lines.

Here. The Roman Juno, was the daughter of Chronos and the wife of Zeus. She was recognised as one of the most powerful of the divinities, her worship being almost universal. Her power as queen of Heaven and as goddess of empire and of riches was extensive and recognized by the other gods. She is usually represented as sitting on a throne holding a sceptre, while near her stands her favorite bird, the peacock.

P. 23, l. 1.—**Aphrodite.** The goddess of love and beauty, known among the Romans as Venus. She is said to have sprung from the foam of the sea, and was soon after taken to heaven, where she was ranked as one of the gods. The dove was her emblem.

P. 23, l. 4.—**Muses.** Goddesses who presided over poetry, music and the liberal arts. They were the daughters of Zeus and Mnemosyne or Memory, and were nine in number. Calliope was the muse of epic poetry, Clio of history, Euterpe of lyric poetry, Melpomene of tragedy, Terpsichore of choral dance and song, Erato of love poetry, Polyhymnia of sacred poetry, Urania of astronomy, Thalia of comedy.

P. 23, l. 5.—**Apollo.** The son of Zeus and Leto, and the god of music, poetry and the fine arts. He is generally identified with the sun-god, and is then known as Phoebus, Helios or Sol. He is generally represented as carrying in his hand a silver bow. Apollo did not himself invent the lyre, but received it as a gift from Mercury. See Book IV., page 155.

P. 23, l. 6.—**The Fates.** The Parcae or Fates, were three powerful divinities, daughters of Zeus, who presided over the birth, life and death of mankind. Clotho presided over the moment of birth, and held in her hand a distaff, Lachesis spun out all the events and actions in the life of man, and Atropos, with a scissors, cut the thread of life. They were all-powerful, Zeus himself being obliged to submit to their decrees, while from their decisions there was no appeal.

P, 23, l. 11.—**Hebe.** The daughter of Zeus and Heré, the messenger of her mother and the cup-bearer of the gods. After the death of Hercules, Hebe was married to that hero in the Elysian Fields.

P. 23, l. 12.—**Nectar.** The drink of the gods, as ambrosia was their food.

P. 23, l. 14.—**Eris.** The goddess of discord. She was formerly an inhabitant of Olympus, but was driven from thence by Zeus, because she was always causing quarrels among the gods. She is represented as a woman with a ghastly look, gleaming eyes, torn garments, and a dagger in her hand.

P. 24, l. 31.—**Mount Ida.** One of the celebrated mountains of antiquity, more properly a range of mountains in Troas, near the city of Troy.

P. 25, l. 1. **Paris, Priam.** See Book IV., page 28.

P. 25, l. 4—**Hermes.** The messenger and interpreter of the gods, known to the Romans as Mercury. He was the son of Zeus, and was recognized as one of the supreme gods. His father gave him a winged cap, wings for his feet, and a short sword, and with these he is usually represented.

THE DESTRUCTION OF SENNACHERIB.

This poem is one of the *Hebrew Melodies*, written in December, 1814, by Byron at the request of a friend. The *Melodies* were written to be set to music. The poem should be compared with the verse in 2 Kings xix., 35, upon which it is founded.

P. 25, l. 2.—**Cohorts.** Army.

P. 25, l. 4.—**Galilee.** The sea of that name in Palestine.

P. 26, l. 9.—**Ashur.** The ancient name of Assyria.

P. 26, l. 10.—**Baal.** One of the chief gods of the Assyrians. 1 Kings xviii., 21-40.

YE MARINERS OF ENGLAND.

During the winter of 1799, while in Edinburgh, Campbell was in the habit of spending a part of his time at the house of one of his musical friends. At these gatherings his favorite song was "Ye Gentlemen of England," to which he determined to write new words. He is said to have composed the first draft of the poem after one of these social evenings. The poem, however, was not completed until after the formation of The Armed Neutrality League, in 1800. See Book IV., page 244. Campbell was on the continent in this year, and of course the outcome of the anticipated war was the sole topic of conversation. Campbell's patriotic spirit was fired, and it was under

these circumstances that he wrote the poem and published it in *The Morning Chronicle.*

Although this poem is particularly applicable to the troubled times during which it was written, yet it has not ceased to be a source of inspiration to Englishmen. The manly ring of the poem, its fire, its vigor and its spirit make it worthy of being remembered and repeated as long as the language lasts. The poem should be memorized.

P. 26, l. 3.—**Thousand Years.** England has existed as a nation for over a thousand years, although the flag has frequently changed. See Book III., page 27.

P. 26, l. 6.—**Another foe.** The Armed Neutrality League.

P. 27, l. 3.—**Blake.** One of the most celebrated of the British admirals. He was born in 1599, served in Parliament and afterwards in the army under the Puritan domination. He was created Admiral in 1649, and immediately inflicted a crushing defeat upon Prince Rupert. During the war with Holland he defeated the Dutch fleet in three engagements, in the last of which he captured eleven men-of-war and thirty merchantmen. His last engagement was with the Spaniards, whose plate fleet he destroyed. He died at sea in 1657. See Fitchett's *Fights for the Flag* (Bell & Sons).

Nelson. The hero of the battles of the Baltic, the Nile and Trafalgar. See Book V., page 250.

This line read originally,

"Where Blake, the boast of freedom, fell."

After the death of Nelson at Trafalgar, the change to the present reading was made.

P. 27, l. 10.—**Towers.** The work of erecting Martello towers as means of defense along the south coast of England, was then in progress.

P. 27, l. 17.—**Native oak.** Ships built from oak grown in England. This was before the day of ironclads and torpedo-boats.

P. 27, l. 19.—**Meteor flag.** "The word contains a fine image of swiftness and splendor."

P. 27, l. 21.—**Danger's troubled night.** Until the war with Napoleon should be over. The dread of Napoleon hung over England like a pall during the opening years of the nineteenth century. Campbell here voices the universal sentiment. See Conan Doyle's *The Great Shadow.*

THE JUDGMENT OF PARIS.

This selection is a continuation of *The Golden Apple* (Book IV., page 18). With this should be read Tennyson's *Œnone*, and *The Death of Œnone*.

P. 28, l. 1.—**A city.** The city of Troy.

P. 28, l. 2.—**Hellas.** Greece.

Priam. The son of Laomedon, and the last king of Troy. He had been placed on the throne by Hercules, when that hero had dethroned Laomedon. Priam occupied his time in making Troy more beautiful, until at last it became the most famous city in Asia. He married Hecuba and had fifty children. Priam was slain at the foot of the altar in his own palace by Neoptolemus, the son of Achilles, on the night that Troy was captured by the Greeks.

P. 28, l. 11.—**Hector.** The eldest son of Priam, and the bulwark of the Trojans during the ten years' siege of Troy. He fought bravely during the whole course of the war, engaging in hand-to-hand combats with most of the Greek leaders. He fought a drawn contest with Ajax, and slew Patroclus. He was finally killed by Achilles after a stubborn fight. His body was dragged three times around the walls of the city by the conqueror, but was finally restored to the tears and entreaties of Priam.

P. 28, l. 19.—**Soothsayer.** One who could foretell the future.

P. 29, l. 20.—**Dryads.** Nymphs who presided over the woods. They were worshipped as goddesses, but were not immortal, as their lives terminated with the tree over which they presided.

P. 30, l. 12.—**Paris.** After Paris had been acknowledged as the son of Priam and Hecuba, he was sent on an embassy to Greece. While there he met Helen, the wife of Menelaus, king of Sparta, the most beautiful woman in the world. Paris persuaded Helen to elope with him, and carried her away to Troy. Priam sided with his son and refused to give up Helen. The Greeks then raised an army and sailed to Troy, which they besieged. Paris did not distinguish himself greatly in the war, although after the death of Hector he slew Achilles by shooting him in the heel. He was mortally wounded by one of the arrows of Philoctetes. Feeling himself to be dying, he remembered Œnone and caused himself to be carried to her, but died before he came into her presence. Troy was soon afterwards captured, thus

fulfilling thepro phecy that Paris would prove the destruction of his country.

P. 30, l. 13.—**Œnone.** The daughter of the river god, Cebrenus. After her desertion by Paris, Œnone continued to live upon Mount Ida, waiting for the return of her faithless lover. When she saw the dead body of Paris she was so overcome with despair that she stabbed herself.

P. 30, l. 23.—**Ilios.** Troy.

P. 31, l. 1.—**Cicadas.** Small noisy insects.

P. 31, l. 15.—**Asphodels.** Immortals, of the lily family. These were the flowers that grew in the Elysian Fields.

P. 33, l. 14.—**Hades.** The land of shadows, the world after death.

P. 35, l. 8.—**Cassandra.** The daughter of Priam, who had received the gift of prophecy from Apollo. The god afterwards made his gift useless by decreeing that her words should never be believed. She foretold the destruction of Troy, but was laughed at for her pains. After the capture of the city she fell to the share of Agamemnon, and shared that monarch's fate when he was murdered by his wife, Clytemnestra.

THE FIFTIETH BIRTHDAY OF AGASSIZ.

The distinguished naturalist, Louis Agassiz, was born at Motier, Switzerland, in 1807. After studying at the principal universities of Europe, he was appointed professor of Natural History at Neufchatel. In 1847 he was induced to accept a similar chair at Harvard University, where he was intimately associated with Longfellow. Agassiz gave a great impetus to the study of natural history in the United States, and this, as well as his genial disposition, was recognized in a complimentary dinner given to him at Cambridge on his fiftieth birthday. Longfellow presided, and read this poem in honor of the guest of the evening. Agassiz died in 1873. Holmes' *A Farewell to Agassiz*, and Lowell's memorial poem, entitled *Agassiz*, may be read as throwing light upon the character of Agassiz, and the estimation in which he was held by his associates.

The imagery employed in the poem should be noted, as well as the great moral lesson which Longfellow seeks to teach by means of this imagery. The simplicity, child-like faith and reverent love of truth which characterised Agassiz are well brought out in the poem.

P. 35, l. 3.—**Pays de Vaud.** One of the Swiss cantons, lying to the north of Lake Geneva.

P. 36, l. 4. **Manuscripts of God.** The Book of Nature.

P. 36, l. 8.—**Rhymes of the universe.** Showed him the beautiful harmony that exists in the universe.

P. 36, l. 12.—**Marvellous tale.** Something more wonderful in nature than he had yet seen.

P. 36, l. 18.—**Ranz des Vaches.** "Tune of the cows"; the name given to the simple melodies of the Swiss herdsmen.

CHARLES AND OLIVER.

This sketch is taken from Chapter VI. of *Biographical Stories.* The title there is *Oliver Cromwell.*

The story here related rests on nothing more substantial than a mere tradition. The visit is said to have been made in 1604, at which time Oliver was five years of age and Charles was four. The incident, however, may have occurred. The story that Cromwell stood by the dead body of Charles has also no evidence to support it, except that the story is very old and was related in good faith at the time it is said to have occurred.

THE MAPLE.

The object of this poem is to show in what ways the Maple, the leaf of which is the national emblem of Canada, may be regarded as "a type of our young country." The poem is a good specimen of this class of poetry.

THE STAGE COACH.

This selection is made up from the 11th chapter of Vol. II. of *Martin Chuzzlewit.* The extract is complete in itself, and as here given has no connection with the progress of the story. Tom Pinch is one of the characters in the novel, who, on being dismissed from his employment, departs on the coach from Salisbury to London. His trip is here described. The inimitable sketches of character, the vividness of the description, the vivacity of the narrative, should be noted. As a picture of bygone scenes and incidents, the extract should be carefully studied.

P. 48, l. 2.—**Boot.** The luggage box in front of the coach.

P. 49, l. 16.—**Cathedral.** One of the finest specimens of cathedral architecture in England. The original building dates back to 1220 A.D.

YUSSOUF.

This selection is taken from *Under the Willows and Other Poems*, and is founded upon an Arabian story. Like a great many of Lowell's poems, it is intended to teach a specific lesson. The various steps leading up to the final declaration of Yussouf should be noted. Examine carefully the simile in lines 17 and 18.

P. 53, l. 3.—**Bow of power.** The symbol of authority.

P. 53, l. 22.—**Sheik.** The head of a tribe in Arabia.

P. 53, l. 27.—**One black thought.** Vengeance for his dead son.

HOW THEY BROUGHT THE GOOD NEWS FROM GHENT TO AIX.

This poem was first published in *Dramatic Romances* in 1845. Browning says, "I wrote it under the bulwark of a vessel, off the African coast, after I had been at sea long enough to appreciate even the fancy of a gallop on the back of a certain good horse 'York,' then in my stable at home." It was written in pencil on the fly-leaf of a favorite Italian book. Browning himself is authority for the statement that the poem has no foundation in fact. It is simply the glorification of riding, the delight of rapid motion. "The route followed is actual enough. They go north-easterly to Lokeren, then keep due east to Boom, and then more south-easterly to Aershot, about ten miles from Louvain. The poet does not say that they went to Hasselt, but 'by Hasselt,' and so with Loos and Tongres. They probably passed between Hasselt and the two latter places, riding straight across country to Aix-la-Chapelle. The ride can hardly have been less than 130 miles, and perhaps 20 or 30 more."—*Ryland.* The route is easily traced on a map of Belgium. The following names were incorrectly spelled in the first edition of Book IV.: Roland, Boom, Düffeld, Mecheln, Loos, Aershot, Dalhem and Lokeren.

P. 54, l. 3.—**Watch.** Those who guarded the gates. It must be remembered that these cities were walled and strongly fortified.

P. 54, l. 5.—**Postern.** A small gate in the wall of a city.

P. 54, l. 7.—**Great pace.** Refers not only to the tremendous speed, but to the length of the stride.

P. 54, l. 10.—**Pique.** The point or peak of the saddle.

P. 54, l. 24.—**Bluff.** Strongly-outlined.

P. 54, l. 28.—**Askance.** Sideways.

P. 55, l. 1.—**Spume-flakes.** Flakes of foam.

P. 55, l. 13.—**Dalhem.** "About thirty miles to the north of Aix and far out of sight. It is not so placed that any tower there could be seen lit up by the morning sun by anyone who was in sight of Aix. The town is now a Prussian frontier railway station."—*Ryland.*

P. 55, l. 22.—**Jack-boots.** Heavy riding boots.

P. 55, l. 31.—**Burgesses.** Citizens.

P. 55, l. 32.—**Good news.** There is no hint in the narrative as to what this good news is; that is left to the imagination of the reader. The time of the story is supposed to be during the seventeenth century.

TUBAL CAIN.

This poem is based on *Genesis* iv., 22: "And Zillah, she also bare Tubal Cain, an instructor of every artificer in brass and iron." The succession of feelings should be noted—pride and exulation, remorse, desire to right the wrong, the joy that followed the new invention.

THE FORGING OF BALMUNG.

This selection should be studied in connection with those on pages 72 and 78. All these are incidents in connection with the life of the great hero of the North, Siegfried, and are taken with slight changes from Baldwin's *The Story of Siegfried* (Charles Scribners' Sons). The version of the story followed in the notes is that adopted by Baldwin It has been thought best to follow one version consistently, rather than attempt to reconcile the many variations between the Norse and Germanic stories and between the different sagas themselves. Anderson's *Norse Mythology* (S. C. Griggs & Co., Chicago), Guerber's *Myths of Northern Lands* (American Book Co., New York), and Foster-Barham's *Nibelungen Lied* (Routledge, London), are the best books for purpose of reference. In the index to the first edition of Book IV. this selection was wrongly assigned to Charles Kingsley. Siegfried is the Sigurd of the Norse sagas.

The sword Balmung had its origin in the land of the Volsungs. The old king Volsung had a famous palace, the fairest ornament of which was a magnificent tree, growing in the midst of the banqueting hall, and thrusting its green leaves even through the lofty roof. One day, while the old King Volsung, his ten sons and their guests were seated around the banqueting table, celebrating the marriage of the Princess Signy and Siggeir, king of the Goths, the door opened and a mysterious figure came slowly into the room. Solemnly he marched up to the tree, drew forth a sword from under his cloak and thrust it into the tree up to the hilt. Then, turning to the awe-struck guests, he told them what a blade it was, and bade the one who could draw it forth keep it as a gift from Odin. When he said this he vanished. It was the All-father himself who had spoken. One by one the princes and their guests tried to draw forth the sword, but not one could succeed. When, however, it came to the turn of Sigmund, the youngest and fairest of the sons of Volsung, the blade came forth without difficulty, so that the guests shouted that Sigmund was the beloved of Odin. King Siggeir, consumed with envy, resolved to obtain at any cost possession of the sword. He invited the ten brothers to accompany him homeward, slew nine of them by treachery, and attempted to kill Sigmund, who managed to escape, leaving his sword behind. After wandering an outlaw for years, Sigmund accomplished his revenge, regained Balmung and returned to his native land as king. He ruled many years in peace and then went forth to encounter King Ligny, the mighty. In the midst of the battle an old man stood up before the king. Sigmund struck at him, but the sword was broken and he himself fell dead on the field. The figure picked up the fragments and vanished. It was Odin again. The sword was not again seen until Odin brought the broken pieces to Siegfried, the heir to the throne of the Volsungs.

P. 58, l. 1.—**Siegfried.** The son of Siegmund and Sigelind, the king and queen of the Volsungs. The early history of Siegfried is related in the three selections in the text. After the awakening of Brunhild, Siegfried lingered for six months in Isenland and then set out on his journey homeward. On his way there he stopped in Nibelungenland, where he again obtained possession of the treasure, which he had abandoned after the deaths of Fafnir and Mimer, and which had been found and removed by the king of the Nibelungs. This treasure carried with it the kingdom, and Siegfried was acknowledged king of the Nibelungs. Finally he reached his home, where he received

a royal welcome. Some time after this, hearing of the beauty of Kriemhild, he made a journey to Burgundyland. While there he assisted King Gunther to defeat two powerful enemies, and was further instrumental in obtaining Brunhild as wife for the king. For these services Siegfried was rewarded with the hand of Kriemhild. The wedding was celebrated with great pomp, after which Siegfried and his bride returned to their own kingdom. Ten years afterwards they were induced to again visit Burgundy, when a quarrel took place between the two queens over a question of precedence. Hagen, a fierce old warrior, swore to avenge the insult done to Brunhild. He induced Kriemhild to reveal the vulnerable spot on the body of her husband, under pretext of caring for his safety. While Siegfried was bending down to drink from a stream, Hagen crept up behind and plunged a spear in the spot between his shoulders. The wound was mortal, and the hero died. The revenge of Kriemhild for this treachery is one of the most bloody chapters in either history or legend.

P. 58, l. 3.—**Mimer.** The brother of Fafnir, known sometimes as Regin. When Mimer came back and saw the dead body of his father and found that Fafnir had fled with the treasure, he knew that the curse had fallen and was afraid. He fled to the land of the Volsungs, where he spent his time in gaining knowledge and imparting it to men. He became renowned as the most learned man and the greatest smith in the world. But a bitter longing for the stolen treasure ever filled his heart. By his great knowledge he knew that one of the race of Volsung was destined to help him to his own again, and further, that he should meet his death at the hands of a beardless boy of that race. After Siegfried had forged the sword, Mimer knew that the long expected hero had appeared. He told the boy the story of the treasure, armed him with Balmung and sent him forth to slay Fafnir. After the death of the Dragon, the treasure, and with it the curse, descended to Mimer. In his fear lest Siegfried should attempt to rob him, he tried to kill him, but in his haste slipped in the Dragon's blood and fell against the sword in Siegfried's hand, meeting instant death.

P. 58, l. 5.—**Dwarf-folk.** Small creatures who inhabited the centre of the earth, and were forbidden under the heaviest penalties to venture therefrom except at night. They sprang originally from the decayed flesh of the giant Ymir, and were endowed by the gods with extraordinary knowledge and power. In these respects they were far above mankind. See *Myths of Northern Lands* (Chapter XXIV.).

P. 58, l. 7.—**Flowing-Spring.** At the foot of one of the roots of the great tree of existence, Ygdrasil, was a fountain called after its guardian, Mimer. He who drank of this spring immediately became possessed of all knowledge, both of things past and things to come. Odin parted with one of his eyes for a drink from this fountain.

P. 59, l. 4.—**Amilias.** All that is known about Amilias is here told.

Burgundy-land. This kingdom plays an important part in German mythology. It was an exceedingly rich land, bordering on the Rhine. Siegfried here met his death.

P. 59, l. 19.—**Veliant.** After the forging of the sword Veliant and the other apprentices became very jealous of Siegfried and attempted to murder him, but the plot failed, and indirectly was the cause of starting the prince on his career of adventure.

P. 61, l. 9.—**One-eyed man.** Odin, the All-Father. See *The Sleeping Valkyrie.* Book IV., page 78.

P. 61, l. 16.—**Shards.** Broken pieces of any brittle substance.

P. 61, l. 28.—**Runes.** The earliest letters used by the Northern nations. They were at first used for divination, but were afterwards employed for inscriptions. Odin hung nine days and nights on Ygdrasil before he discovered them. He was accustomed to score runes upon any object particularly precious to him.

P. 62, l. 5.—**Thor.** The god of War and Thunder among the Norse. He is represented as of gigantic stature, with red hair and beard, riding through the clouds on his chariot, drawn by two he-goats. In his hand he carries his magic hammer, Miolnir, which has the marvellous property of always returning to his hand when thrown. On his right hand he wears an iron gauntlet to enable him to grasp the red-hot handle of Miolnir. Around his waist is his magic girdle, which when braced redoubles his already enormous strength. Many marvellous stories of his strength and endurance are told. See Longfellow's *The Saga of King Olaf*, and *Myths of Northern Lands* (Chapter IV.).

THE VILLAGE BLACKSMITH.

"In the autumn of 1839 Mr. Longfellow was writing psalms, and he notes in his diary, October 5th: 'Wrote a new Psalm of Life. It is The Village Blacksmith.' A year later he was thinking of ballads and he writes to his father, October 25th: 'My pen has not been very prolific of late; only a little poetry has trickled from it. There will be

a kind of ballad in the next *Knickerbocker* (November, 1840), which you may consider if you please as a song in praise of your ancestor at Newbury (the first Stephen Longfellow).' It is hardly to be supposed, however, that the form of the poem had been changed during the year. The suggestion of the poem came from the smithy which the poet passed daily, and which stood beneath a horse-chestnut tree, not far from his house in Cambridge. The tree was removed in 1876, against the protests of Mr. Longfellow and others, on the ground that it imperilled drivers of heavy loads who passed under it."—*Notes to Poems in Riverside edition.* On Longfellow's 72nd birthday an arm-chair made from the wood of this tree was presented to him by the school children of Cambridge. See *From My Arm-Chair.*

Three words of the poet in stanza seven indicate the movement of the poem—toiling, rejoicing, sorrowing. The skill employed in uniting these three pictures so that one naturally leads to the other is worthy of notice. This poem may be used to illustrate a very common practice among poets, that of reading a life-lesson from the observation of some common incident or experience. Frequently the lesson is not explicitly stated, but only implied. Many examples may be found in the Readers.

THE FORGING OF THE ANCHOR.

This poem lends itsely admirably to oral reading. The thought is vigorous and clearly expressed, the imaginative element is strong, while the swing of the metre is in admirable keeping with the characteristics just mentioned.

P. 67, l. 5.—**Panoply.** As if clad in complete armor.

P. 67, l. 9.—**Vulcan.** See Book IV., page 22.

P. 67, l. 12.—**Candent.** Glowing with white heat.

P. 67, l. 21.—**Swinking.** Toiling.

P. 68, l. 2.—**Bower.** The anchor carried at the bow of the ship.

P. 68, l. 24.—**Cat.** The tackle used in hoisting the anchor.

P. 69, l. 4.—**Sea-Unicorn.** The narwhal, so called because "his enormously long single incisor tooth projects like a horn."

P. 69, l. 8.—**Kraken.** A mythical sea monster of enormous size, said to appear frequently off the Norwegian coast.

P. 69, l. 13.—**Undine.** The heroine of Fouque's romance of that name. She was a water-sylph, who in early childhood was changed

for the child of a fisherman. Here the word means no more than "water-sylph."

P. 69, l. 14.—**Mermaiden.** A fabled sea creature, having the form of a maiden above the waist and that of a fish below.

P. 69, l. 15.—**Cerulean.** Sky-colored; blue.

JACQUES CARTIER.

This poem deals with an episode in the early history of Canada, and should be read, if possible, in its historic setting. Cartiér was born at St. Malo, in 1494. He made several expeditions to Canada, on one of which he penetrated the St. Lawrence as far as Montreal. After his return to France, he was treated with great respect by the king, who made him a seigneur. He was alive in 1552, but the date of his death is unknown. See *Stories of New France*, by Miss Machar (D. Lothrop & Co.), Chapter II.

P. 70, l. 1.—**St. Malo.** A seaport in Brittany, on the north-west coast of France.

Smiling morn. On May 19, 1534. This was his second voyage.

P. 70, l. 2.—**On their knees.** Before setting out Cartiér and his men repaired to the cathedral to offer up prayers for their safe return.

P. 70, l. 4.—**Undiscovered seas.** Cartiér had on his former voyage discovered the Gulf of St. Lawrence, but practically the whole of the New World was then unknown.

P. 70, l. 10.—**Vigils.** Night-watches.

P. 70, l. 16.—**Mount Royal.** Montreal, a contraction of Mount Royal.

Fleur-de-Lis and Cross. Claiming the new country for France, and for the Christian religion. The Fleur-de-lis or Lily of the Valley is the emblem of France, and was formerly a part of the royal arms.

P. 71, l. 2.—**Home again.** On July 6, 1536.

P. 71, l. 3.—**Iron-bound.** Surrounded by rocks.

P. 71, l. 4—**Pearl-gold.** The early expeditions were fitted out for the purpose of hunting for gold and precious stones.

P. 71, l. 5.—**Thule.** The northern part of the continent.

P. 71, l. 11.—**Causeway.** An allusion to the frozen rivers being used as roads in the winter.

P. 71, l. 13.—**Magic wand.** The change is so sudden that it seems to be wrought by magic.

P. 71, l. 15.—**Algonquin braves.** One of the great Indian tribes of Canada, occupying the valley of the St. Lawrence.

P. 71, l. 20.—**Gospel of St. John.** Cartier seems to have been looked upon by the Indians as a deity. They brought him their sick to be healed. He however assured them that they were mistaken, but read to them part of the Gospel of St. John, and prayed with them.

P. 71, l. 21.—**River.** The St. Lawrence.

P. 71, l. 23.—**Glorious scene.** On being led to the top of the mountain at Hochelaga, Cartier was so enchanted with the view that he named the mountain Mount Royal. Here he erected a cross, bearing the royal arms, as a sign that he claimed Canada for France. Hochelaga was the name of the Indian village of about 1,000 people on the Island.

P. 71, l. 25.—**Fortress cliff.** Cape Diamond, at Quebec.

THE SLAYING OF FAFNIR THE DRAGON.

After the successful contest with Amilias, Siegfried was in high favor with his master. This aroused the jealousy of the other apprentices, and they plotted to get rid of him. One day, during the absence of Mimer, they sent Siegfried into the woods to purchase charcoal from Regin, the charcoal burner, expecting that the boy would be killed on the way. Siegfried, however, reached the hut of Regin, whom he found to be his master in disguise. Mimer told the boy the story of his life, gave him his freedom, sent him to obtain the horse Greyfell, and despatched him against the dragon, Fafnir.

At one time Odin, accompanied by Hoenir and Loki, paid a visit to the earth. The two former scattered blessings wherever they went, but in the wake of Loki, there was nothing but terror and strife. As they wandered through the forest, they saw by the bank of a stream, an otter eating a salmon. Loki hurled a stone at the harmless animal, killing it instantly. He immediately seized both otter and fish and carried them with him as trophies of his prowess. The gods travelled on for some time and at nightfall found themselves at the door of a farmer's hut. This farmer, whose name was Hreidmar, had three sons, Oddar, Fafnir and Regin. The travellers were hospitably received, but there was no food in the house. Loki, proud of his success, threw down the body of the otter, and ordered that supper be prepared at once. The farmer gazed with horror at the animal on the

floor, recognizing his eldest son, who was accustomed to change himself into an otter in order to refresh himself in the cooling stream. He and his sons immediately attacked the gods, who, being in the guise of men were unable to make any effective resistance.

The gods then began to treat with Hreidmar for ransom. He, however, would consent to release them only on their promising to cover with gold and precious stones, the skin of the dead otter. This had in the meantime been stripped from the dead body, and had grown to such proportions that it covered an acre of ground. The gods were forced to consent to the hard bargain and Loki was released for the purpose of bringing the treasure. Loki at once donned his magic shoes and sped on his errand. He hastened to the abode of the elves and the cunning dwarf, Andvari. But he could find no living being there, except a salmon that floated lazily in the pool. The moment he saw this salmon, Loki sped onward to the abode of Ran, the Ocean Queen. From her he borrowed her magic net, from whose meshes nothing can escape, and returning captured the salmon which at once changed itself into the dwarf Andvari. Loki compelled the dwarf to give up all his treasures, and was about to depart when he noticed a golden ring on the finger of the dwarf. This ring had the peculiar power of reproducing itself and was in reality the treasure-house of the dwarfs. Loki seized the ring in spite of the protests of Andvari, who, finding his struggles unavailing cursed the ring and whoever should possess it, with the awful curse of untold ills, loss of friends and a violent death.

On the return of Loki, the treasure was carefully counted out, not forgetting the ring and the gods were allowed to depart. Before going, however, Loki, informed Hreidmar of the curse of the ring and wished him joy of his new possession. The curse soon began to operate. A quarrel ensued over the division of the treasure; the two sons were driven forth with blows, and Hreidmar sat down to guard and gloat over his treasure. He picked up the ring and looked at it carefully. As he gazed a terrible change came over him. Soon he had turned into a snake, the very image of the ring on which he had looked so long. When Fafnir returned in the evening, instead of his father, he saw only a snake coiled around the treasure. Thinking that the monster had devoured his father, he drew his sword and killed it. Then before the creature was cold, Fafnir seized the treasure and fled with it far from the haunts of men. Among the

treasures he found a wonderful breastplate of gold and the Helmet of Terror. These he put on and sat down to guard his gold. But one day he gazed on the fatal ring and he too became a monstrous dragon. How he was killed is told in the text.

P. 72, l. 4.—**Glittering Heath.** The English translation of the word *Gnitaheid* so called from the treasures there guarded by Fafnir.

P. 72, l. 5.—**Greyfell.** On the advice of Mimer, Siegfried, after receiving his freedom, went to consult the giant Gripir as to his future course and to ask from him a war-horse. The giant received the boy kindly and sent him to pick out a horse for himself from among the numerous herds feeding on the banks of the river. When Siegfried arrived at the pasture he was at a loss, as all the horses seemed equally desirable. While standing in doubt he was accosted by a stranger, who advised him to drive the herds into the river. Siegfried did so, and stood watching the struggling horses. Only one succeeded in reaching the other side, but no sooner had he done so then he plunged in again, swam over, and stood by the side of Siegfried. The boy noticed that the horse's mane glittered and flashed in the sun, and that his coat was white and clean. In the meantime the stranger had vanished: it was Odin again. The horse was named Greyfell. He had come from the green hill slopes of Asgard, from the pastures of Odin himself.

P. 73, l. 3.—**Helmet of Terror.** This helmet was part of the treasure of Fafnir. Siegfried took possession of the Helmet, and wore it on his subsequent adventures. He had it on his head when he passed the moat to awaken Brunhild, and it was by means of the Helmet that he conquered that maiden for his friend, Gunther. When the body of the hero was burned on the funeral pyre, the Helmet was burned with him.

P. 74, l. 25.—**Odin.** See Book IV., page 79.

P. 76, l. 31.—**Nature had awakened.** The death of Fafnir is but another type of the icy bands of winter being broken by the power of the sun, here typified by Siegfried.

THE PRIVATE OF THE BUFFS.

During the Chinese war of 1860, the correspondent of the London *Times* reported the following incident of the expedition:—"Some Seiks and a private of the Buffs, having remained behind with the

grog carts, fell into the hands of the Chinese. On the next morning, they were brought before the authorities, and commanded to perform the *koton*. The Seiks obeyed; but Moyse the English soldier declaring that he would not prostrate himself before any Chinaman alive, was immediately knocked upon the head, and his body thrown on a dung hill." The "Buffs" is the East Kent regiment, having been originally raised in Kent in the 17th century.

P. 77, l. 4.—**Never look'd before.** Took no thought of the future.

P. 77, l. 6.—**Elgin.** Lord Elgin, at one time Governor of Canada, was the British Ambassador to China.

P. 77, l. 17.—**Kentish.** As Moyse belonged to the East Kent regiment, it is presumed that he was a Kentishman. Kent is noted for its hops.

P. 77, l. 24.—**Doom'd by himself.** Had he prostrated himself as commanded, his life would have been spared.

P. 77, l. 27.—**Dusky Indians.** The Seiks, members of a native Indian regiment in the service of Great Britain.

P. 78, l. 11.—**Sparta's King.** Leonidas, who died at the head of the Spartan three hundred defending the Pass of Thermopylæ against the Persians. See Book III., page 56.

THE SLEEPING VALKYRIE.

After the death of Fafnir and of Mimer, Siegfried hastened away from the cursed spot, mounted Greyfell and rode until he reached the sea-coast. While he was standing there, a boat appeared in sight, coming quickly towards the shore. A harper stood in the boat and invited Siegfried to sail with him over the unknown seas. When the hero knew that it was Bragi who called, he gladly embarked with Greyfell, and the boat sailed away. See *Siegfried, the Hero of the North*, by Ragozin. (G. P. Putnam's Sons).

Siegfried is, of course, a personification of the Sun, and this fact is referred to in the text. The awakening of Brunhild represents the returning of life and beauty to earth in the spring, after the sun has scattered the ice and snow of winter. For a full discussion of this subject see Guerber's *Myths of Greece and Rome*, Chapter XXX., *Myths of Northern Lands*, Chapter XXVIII. (American Book Co.), and especially *An Introduction to the Science of Comparative Mythology*

and Folklore, by Cox. (Henry Holt & Co.). Tennyson's *The Day Dream* is a versification of this legend.

P. 78, l. 10.—**Bragi.** The God of Poetry, Eloquence and Music, was the son of Odin and Gunlad. As soon as Bragi was born in the darkness of the lower world, the dwarfs presented him with a magic golden harp, and seating him in one of their own vessels, sent him forth into the world of light. As soon as he had come out of the subterranean darkness, Bragi sprang into life, and began to sing. Immediately all nature became alive. Bragi now proceeded to Asgard, where he was kindly received by Odin, who, when he had traced runes on his tongue, gave him his rank among the gods.

P. 79, l. 7.—**Odin.** The great god or All-Father of the Norse. He is represented as a tall, vigorous man, with a long grey beard and a bald head. He is clad in gray, but wearing a blue hood. He sits on his great throne, holding in one hand his spear, and having on his finger his precious ring, the emblem of fruitfulness. At his feet crouch his two faithful wolves, while over his head fly the two ravens, Hugin (Thought), and Munin (Memory). See *Myths of Northern Lands*, Chapter II.

Gladsheim. There is a confusion of names here. Gladsheim should be Asgard, the name given to the space devoted to the habitations of the gods or Asas. Gladsheim is one of the great halls in Asgard. It is the council-chamber of the gods, and contains twelve seats in addition to the throne of Odin. It is the largest hall ever erected, and the most magnificent, being adorned all over with the finest gold. The word means "the abode of gladness."

P. 79, l. 9.—**Valhal.** The great hall of Odin, in which he feasts his chosen warriors. It is fully described in the text.

P. 79, l. 22.—**Food.** The flesh from the boar Sæhrimner, who is slain before each meal, but comes to life again before the next meal, when he is again devoured.

P. 79, l. 24.—**Mead.** Liquor from the she-goat Heidrun, the supply of which is inexhaustible.

Valkyries. The messengers of Odin. Their duties are described in the text.

P. 80, l. 3.—**War-host.** Some time in the future, known as Ragnarock, or the Twilight of the Gods, Odin will have to fight not only for his supremacy, but even for his life, against the giants and the powers of darkness. For this great fight he is constantly making pre-

parations, and so calls to himself the bravest heroes from among men. These, in Valhalla, he trains and feasts, so that they may be ready to meet the enemy in the last great battle. See *The Heroes of Asgard*, A. E. Keary, (The Macmillan Co.).

P. 80, l. 12.—**Isenland.** Iceland.

P. 80, l. 17.—**Brunhild.** The adventures of Brunhild up to her awakening are fully told in the text. After the departure of Siegfried, who left the castle without even saying farewell to its mistress, Brunhild was inconsolable, and sought the world over for the absent hero, but none could tell her where he had gone. At last, as a final resort, she sent a challenge to every king in the land to match his skill with hers in three games of strength,—in casting the spear, in hurling the heavy stone, and in leaping. In the event of success, Brunhild was to wed the victor, but death was the penalty of failure. Many tried and lost their lives in the vain attempt. At last Siegfried arrived, accompanying his friend, Gunther, king of Burgundy. Brunhild was glad to see him, but disappointed that he did not come as a wooer. She concealed her feelings, and prepared to enter the contest with the Burgundian king. Siegfried, however, by magic power, took the place of his friend, and Brunhild was conquered. The maiden was forced to submit, married Gunther and accompanied him to Burgundy. Many years afterwards, during a quarrel with the wife of Siegfried, her sister-in-law, she learned how she had been deceived. A desire for revenge filled her soul. A fitting instrument was found in Hagen, and Siegfried was slain. Brunhild, when she saw the body of the dead hero, forgot her resentment in the remembrance of her early love, and withdrawing into her own apartment, stabbed herself. Her body was burned on the same funeral pyre as that of Siegfried, amid the lamentations of the Burgundians and the Nibelungs. See *National Epics*, by Kate M. Rabb, (McClung & Co.). *Echoes from Mistland*, by Forestier, (S. C. Griggs & Co.), and *Popular Romances of the Middle Ages*, by Cox & Jones, (Henry Holt & Co.). Pages 276-315.

THE SHIP BUILDERS.

This poem is taken from "*Songs of Labor and other Poems.*" Five other occupations are celebrated in this volume.

P. 86, l. 12.—**Island barges.** Rafts, so large that they look like islands.

P. 86, l. 15.—**Century-circled.** A cross-section of a tree shows rings, each ring denoting a year's growth.

P. 87, l. 21.—**Mart.** Market **Main.** Ocean.

P. 87, l. 26.—**Merchandise of Sin.** Cargo of slaves. This poem was written before the abolition of slavery in the United States. Whittier was one of the leaders in the abolition movement.

P. 87, l. 29.—**Lethean-drug.** Opium, from which morphine, laudanum and other opiates are manufactured. *Lethean* means "causing forgetfulness," from Lethe, the River of Oblivion, one of the rivers of Hades. Into this river the souls of the dead were plunged, thereby causing forgetfulness of all deeds done in the flesh.

P. 87, l, 30.—**Poison-draught.** Alcoholic beverages.

P. 88, l. 4.—**Morning-land.** The East Indies.

THE SECOND VOYAGE OF SINBAD.

This story is that related on the seventy-third and seventy-fourth nights of *The Arabian Nights Entertainment.* This is a good specimen of the Eastern tale, which generally deals with the impossible and the improbable, but treats it with such realism and such attention to detail as almost to convince the reader of its truth. Tennyson's *Recollections of the Arabian Nights* may be read to show the impression produced on the poet by these tales. This story should be compared with the characteristic tales from the Greek and from the Norse mythology in Book IV.

Sinbad was a merchant who acquired great wealth. He went seven voyages, and related the story of his adventures to a poor discontented porter, Hinbad, to show him that wealth must be obtained by enterprise and personal exertion.

P. 90, l. 12.—**Roc.** This bird is frequently referred to by the early European travellers. Marco Polo mentions that it was able to carry an elephant or a rhinoceros.

ALADDIN.

This poem is taken from *Under the Willows, and Other Poems.* It should be read along with the lesson in Book IV., page 287. The poem insists on the advantage of cultivating the imagination, lays stress on

the value of this faculty in enabling one to rise above even the most adverse circumstances, and points out the danger of stifling this God-given gift in the hurry and struggle of the world. If possible, "My Chateaux," from *Prue and I*, by Geo. W. Curtis (Harper & Bros.), and Longfellow's *Castles in Spain* should be read in connection with this poem.

P. 95, l. 8.—**Castles in Spain.** Castles which have no existence except in the imagination. *Chateaux en Espagne.*

ROBINSON CRUSOE.

This selection is taken from *Robinson Crusoe*, written in 1719. The story is said to have been based on the adventures of Alexander Selkirk. See Book III., page 142. The story describes the adventures of Robinson Crusoe, who was wrecked on the island of Tobago, in the Carribean Sea, and remained on the island for twenty-eight years. The main characteristic of the story is its detailed description; this point is very well brought out in the selection in the text. Every teacher and student should read *Robinson Crusoe.*

P. 99, l. 16.—**Cordial Waters.** A sweet, aromatic liquor.

P. 99, l. 17.—**Rack.** A strong liquor made from the fermented juice of the date.

THE CREATION.

This extract consists of the first chapter of *Genesis*, and the first three verses of the second chapter.

YOUTH AND OLD AGE.

This selection, printed from the Revised Version of the Old Testament, forms verses 9 and 10 of the 11th Chapter of *Ecclesiastes*, and verses 1 to 8 of the 12th Chapter. The marvellous poetic beauty of this passage should be studied in detail, more especially the figures employed. Probably in no single passage in literature is symbolism carried to such an extent. Some of the figures may seem far-fetched, some lose a great deal of their significance because not thoroughly understood except by those familiar with Eastern life, while some have lost at least a part of their meaning, but on the whole all are capable of

interpretation, although perhaps no two commentators will agree on all the points interpreted. The notes here given are based on *Ecclesiastes* in Moulton's *Modern Reader's Bible* (The Macmillan Co.). For a very full treatment of the symbolism, see *Ecclesiastes*, edited by Plumptre in the *Cambridge Bible for Schools and Colleges.*

P. 109, l. 3.—**Ways of thine heart.** Do as you please.

P. 109, l. 11-12.—**Sun . . . darkened.** "The gradual failing of the joy of living."

Clouds return. The power to rally is gone; one fit of sickness is followed by another.

P. 109, l. 13.—**Keepers of the house.** The hands and arms.

P. 109, l. 14.—**Strong men shall bow.** The frame is stooped and bent.

P. 109, l. 15.—**Grinders.** The teeth.

P. 109, l. 16.—**Those that look—windows.** The eyes become dim.

P. 109, l. 17.—**Doors.** The jaws are clenched.

P. 109, l. 18.—**Grinding.** See line 15. The appetite fails.

P. 109, l. 19.—**Voice of a bird.** The old rise early.

P. 109, l. 20.—**Daughters of music.** The tones of the voice.

P. 109, l. 20-21.—**Afraid, terror.** The old, through physical weakness, tremble when walking.

P. 109, l. 22.—**Almond-tree.** The white hair of old age. The almond-tree blooms early and its blossoms are almost white in color.

P. 109, l. 23.—**Grasshopper.** Even the smallest weight is a burden to old age.

Caper-Berry. The Caper-berry shall burst—the last stage of decay.

P. 109, l. 26.—**Silver cord; Golden bowl.** "A symbol from the house-lamp of gold, suspended by a silver cord, suddenly slipping its cord, and breaking, its light becoming extinguished."—*Moulton.*

THE BURIAL OF SIR JOHN MOORE.

This poem was written while the author was a student at Trinity College, Dublin, and was first published in the *Newry Telegraph* in 1817. Various attempts have been made to steal the authorship of this poem, but the claims of Wolfe have been fully established. The poem created a tremendous sensation when it was first published.

Sir John Moore, with about 20,000 soldiers, was in command of the British forces in Spain, when Napoleon invaded that country with the object of crushing it, capturing Lisbon, and driving the British from the Peninsula. The French army numbered 330,000 men, with 60,000 horses and 400 guns. Napoleon had already defeated the Spanish forces in three battles, and was beginning to march on Lisbon, when Moore, in order to divert his attention, made a daring attack on his line of communication with France. It was an act of splendid strategy. The Emperor immediately diverted his troops, and marched against Moore, with the object of cutting off his retreat to Corunna. The march back to the sea-coast, over 500 miles, was one of the most masterly operations in the history of war. Napoleon was forced to return to France, but left Marshall Soult in his place. The armies joined battle at Corunna on January 16, 1809. The British were victorious, but Moore was killed at the moment of victory. That same night his body was placed in a hastily-dug grave on the citadel of Corunna. The next day the army embarked for England.

A graphic description of the battle of Corunna, with a map and a portrait of Moore is given in *Fights for the Flag*, by W. H. Fitchett, (Geo. Bell & Sons).

Sir John Moore was a Scotchman, born at Glasgow, 1761. His whole life was spent in connection with the army. In every expedition in which he took part he was successful, and was justly regarded as one of the most brilliant of the British generals. Fitchett quotes Borrow's *Bible in Spain*: "In the Spanish imagination strange legends gather around that lonely tomb. The peasants speak of it with awe. A great soldier of foreign speech and blood lies there. Great treasures, they whisper, were buried in it. Strange demons keep watch over it."

THE PIED PIPER OF HAMELIN.

This poem was written in May, 1842, to amuse William, the little son of Macready, the famous actor. The boy was fond of drawing and asked Browning to give him something to illustrate. The verses were not intended in the first instance for publication, and were inserted in *Dramatic Lyrics*, 1842, for the purpose of filling a vacant space.

The legend of the Pied Piper extends back to 1376. July 22 is fixed as the date on which the children disappeared, and from this date, until quite recently, the town dated its public documents. The legend,

however, is not confined to Hamelin, but is related as having taken place in many other places. See Book II., page 8.

P. 111, l. 1.—**Hamelin.** The town is not in Brunswick, but in the extreme south-western corner of Hanover, at the junction of the Hamel and the Weser. It was at one time one of the most important towns in Germany.

P. 112, l. 3.—**Sharps and flats.** Fifty different keys.

P. 112, l. 8.—**Lined with ermine.** The members of the civic corporations wore robes of office, sometimes, as is the case here, lined with costly fur.

P. 112, l. 11.—**Obese.** Fat. The peculiarity of the rhyme here and in other places in the poem should be noted. Is there any reason for this extravagant rhyme?

P. 112, l. 20.—**Guilder.** A coin of the period. The modern guilder is worth about 40 cents.

P. 113, l. 1.—**Plate of Turtle.** Ryland notes that the Mayor and Corporation here are obviously modelled on the similar functionaries in London.

P. 113, l. 14.—**Kith and kin.** Nationality.

P. 113, l. 16.—**Admire.** Wonder at.

P. 113, l. 18.—**Trump of Doom's tone.** *Revelations*, Chapters viii., ix., x.

P. 114, l. 5.—**Old-fangled.** Old fashioned.

P. 114. l. 7.—**Cham.** The old name in common use for the Khan or ruler of Tartary.

P. 114, l. 9.—**Nizam.** The title of the princes who ruled over the Deccan, one of the Provinces of India. The word means "regulator," or "ruler."

P. 114, l. 10.—**Vampire-bats.** Blood-sucking bats.

P. 115, l. 8.—**Julius Cæsar.** It is said that Julius Cæsar, the famous Roman general and statesman, when besieged by the Egyptians in Alexandria, B.C. 48, escaped by swimming across the harbor. He used only one hand, as in the other he held his *Commentaries*, which contain an account of his various wars. The story has no foundation in fact.

P. 115, l. 18.—**Train-oil.** Oil made from whale's blubber.

P. 115, l. 21.—**Psaltery.** A stringed instrument used by the Hebrews.

P. 115, l. 23.—**Drysaltery.** Cold-storage warehouses.

P. 115, l. 24.—**Nuncheon.** The noon meal.

P. 116, l. 5.—**Perked.** "Looking smartly and rather impudently."—*Ryland.*

P. 116, l. 10.—**Claret, etc.** These are all names of well-known wines.

P. 116, l. 21.—**Poke.** Pouch, or pocket.

P. 116, l. 29.—**Prime.** Best.

P. 116, l. 31.—**Caliph.** The title given to the successor of Mohammed as the head of the Moslem state and defender of the faith.

P. 117, l. 2.—**Stiver.** A small coin worth about a penny.

P. 117, l. 7.—**Ribald.** A low fellow, ruffian.

P. 118, l. 8.—**Koppelberg Hill.** The hill cannot now be identified.

P. 119, l. 12.—**A text.** *Matthew* xix., 24.

P. 119, l. 28.—**Made a decree.** "In memory whereof it was then ordained that from henceforth no drum, pipe or other instrument should be sounded in the street leading to the gate through which they passed. And it was also established that from that time forwards in all public writings that should be made in the town, after the date therein set down of the year of our Lord, the date of the year of the going forth of the children should be added, the which they have accordingly ever since continued."—*Verstegan.*

P. 120, l. 11.—**Transylvania.** An annual custom at the village of Nadesch, in Transylvania, is supposed to commemorate the arrival of the children.

P. 120, l. 17.—**Trepanned.** Ensnared.

P. 120, l. 21.—**Willy.** Willy Macready. See Introduction.

HOW I KILLED A BEAR.

This selection is taken from the Adirondack sketches in *In the Wilderness.* There is a distinct vein of humor running through this sketch, all the more effective because there is an entire absence of boisterousness or exaggeration. The selection should be read as a whole rather than studied paragraph by paragraph.

P. 123, l. 21.—**Well-known lion.** See Book III., page 150.

P. 125, l. 18.—**Military base.** Where he had left his rifle.

P. 127, l. 13.—**Creedmoor.** A village on Long Island, where is the rifle-range of the National Rifle Association of the United States.

THE FOUR-LEAVED SHAMROCK.

According to the fable the possessor of a four-leaved shamrock had the powers of a magician. There is a parallel superstition in regard to the four-leaved clover.

THE TOURNAMENT.

This selection is taken from the 8th Chapter of *Ivanhoe*. The five challengers mentioned in the text had all day long held the lists against all comers. Each knight had vowed to break five lances, and on this being accomplished the Prince was to declare the victor of the day. The first, second and third parties of knights who ventured against the challengers had been overthrown. The fourth entry brought out but three knights, who contended with the three weakest of the challengers, but even these were overthrown. Then ensued the pause with which this selection opens. See Book IV., page 3.

P. 133, l. 2.—**Heralds.** The officers who superintended the ceremonies.

P. 133, l. 6.—**Banquet.** The tournament of the first day was announced to close with a grand banquet.

P. 133, l. 7.—**Brian de Bois-Guilbert.** A Knight Templar who plays a very prominent part in *Ivanhoe*. After the capture of Front-de-Boeuf's castle, he escapes with Rebecca, the Jewess, carries her to the preceptory of his order, where he is killed in combat with Ivanhoe, the champion of the Jewess.

P. 133, l. 19.—**The new adventurer.** Ivanhoe, a Saxon, and the personal friend and follower of King Richard. He had, against the command of his father, joined the standard of the Norman King, and as a consequence had been disinherited.

P. 134, l. 7—**Hospitaller.** De Vipont belonged to the knightly order of St. John of Jerusalem. In addition to the ordinary vows of poverty, chastity and obedience, the knights of this order took the hospital vow, that is to found hospitals and to serve the poor and sick therein. They were thus known as Hospitallers. The order originated in Jerusalem in the eleventh century, and still has a n minal existence.

P. 134, l. 13.—**Sharp end of his spear.** A challenge to mortal combat with sharpened lances. This was one of the rules of the tour-

P. 134, l. 30.—**Gramercy.** Many thanks.

P. 135, l. 26.—**Templars.** The order of Knights Templar, or Poor Soldiers of the Temple of Solomon, originated at Jerusalem in 1118. The knights bound themselves by the strictest vows to spend their lives in the defence of the cross. They nobly upheld their reputation during the Crusades and subsequent wars against the Saracens, but their power continued to increase so rapidly that they began to neglect their vows of poverty and religious obedience. They became such a menace to the peace of Europe, that the Pope combined with the King of France to suppress them. This was accomplished in 1312.

P. 135, l. 30.—**Gare le Corbeau.** Make way for the raven.

P. 138, l. 28.—**Front-de-Boeuf.** A Norman Baron in the service of Prince John. His castle was besieged by Robin Hood and his followers in an effort to rescue some prisoners captured by the Baron and his friends. Front-de-Boeuf perished in the ruins of his castle.

P. 139, l. 1.—**Cave, adsum.** Beware, I am here.

P. 139, l. 7.—**Malvoisin.** The three remaining challengers do not play any important part in *Ivanhoe*.

LOVE OF COUNTRY.

This selection is the opening section of the sixth Canto of *The Lay of the Last Minstrel*. At the close of the fifth Canto, the ladies who were listening to the minstrel, praised his playing, and asked him why he remained in Scotland, where his skill was so poorly rewarded, when he might win wealth and fame in England. The old minstrel, loving Scotland as he did with a passionate intensity, could not bear to hear his native land thus slighted, and gives voice to the genuine outburst of feeling in the text.

HOME AND COUNTRY AND THE FATHERLAND.

These poems are not contradictory, but supplementary. It is probably true that only those who are true to their own home and land can rise to the world-wide conception of Lowell. Each individual should recognise the essential equality and freedom of all men, and should sympathise with them in their joys and in their sorrows, but he must at the same time be a member of some particular household and some particular nation.

LAKE WINNIPEG.

This selection is made up from Chapter IX. of Butler's *The Great Lone Land*. The book itself is an interesting account of the author's experiences in a journey through Manitoba and the North-West Territories in 1870.

P. 144, l. 2.—**Vast inland sea.** Known as Lake Agassiz. See Book IV., page 35.

P. 144, l. 12.—**Saskatchewan.** This is hardly correct. Guyot gives the length of the Danube as 1800 miles, while the length of the Saskatchewan is 1515 miles.

YOUNG LOCHINVAR.

This selection is the song sung by Lady Heron to the King of Scotland in Section 12 of the fifth Canto of *Marmion*. A knowledge of the whole poem is not necessary to the study of this song; it is complete in itself.

P. 145, l. 1.—**Lochinvar.** The name of a castle, belonging to the Gordons, which stood on the shore of Loch Lochinvar, in Kircudbright, Scotland.

P. 145, l. 2.—**Border.** The borderland between England and Scotland, frequently the scene of bloody combats between the families residing there. See Scott's *Lay of the Last Minstrel*.

P. 145, l. 7.—**Brake.** A thicket.

P. 145, l. 8.—**Esk.** A river flowing through Dumfriesshire into the Solway Firth.

P. 145, l. 9.—**Netherby.** A castle near Carlisle, in Cumberland, England, the seat of the Grahams.

P. 146, l. 2.—**Bridesmen.** Groomsmen.

P. 146, l. 8.—**Like the Solway.** The tide ebbs and flows in the Solway Firth with great rapidity.

P. 146, l. 10.—**Measure.** Dance.

P. 146, l. 13.—**Kissed the cup.** It was formerly the custom for the lady to kiss the cup before the health was drunk.

P. 146, l. 20.—**Galliard.** A lively, jolly young fellow. Some editors give the meaning of the word here as "A lively dance."

P. 146, l. 27.—**Croup.** The place behind the saddle.

P. 146, l. 29.—**Scaur.** A precipitous bank.

P. 147, l. 2.—**Forsters, etc.** Names of families on the English border.

P. 147, l. 3.—**Cannobie Lea.** A plain on the banks of the Esk, near the border.

THE LARK AT THE DIGGINGS.

This selection is taken from Chapters LXIII. and LXIV. of *It is Never too Late to Mend.*

George Fielding, a young farmer, was compelled to emigrate to Australia. Before going, he became engaged to Susan Merton, who was also loved by Mr. Meadows, a prosperous and respected, but unscrupulous money-lender. In the absence of George, Mr. Meadows endeavored to undermine Susan's love for him, and finally, by stopping her mail, and spreading a false report of marriage of her lover, secured the promise of her hand. On the day that George left for Australia, a man named Robinson, who had been lodging with him, was arrested as a thief and sent to a model prison, presided over by a model governor, a brute in human form, named Hawes. Robinson underwent awful tortures in the jail, but at last Hawes was dismissed through the efforts of the chaplain, Mr. Eden, and Robinson was sent to Australia by the kind-hearted chaplain to hunt up George Fielding. Farming had proved a failure, and when Robinson reached him, George was in the last stages of a severe illness. They discovered gold, and soon made their fortunes as miners. It was while digging for gold, surrounded by hundreds of rough miners, and far from home and loved ones, that the excursion related in the text took place. Meadows, however, was still at work. He despatched a tool of his to Australia, who did everything in his power to thwart George, and almost succeeded in his purpose. By the assistance of Mr. Levi, an enemy of Meadows, George finally triumphed and married Susan.

DICKENS IN CAMP.

This poem was written in memory of Charles Dickens, who died on June 9, 1870. The poem was published in July of the same year. The scene is laid in a mining camp in the Rocky mountains. A concrete case of the influence of Dickens is given as a tribute to his

memory. It would be well to read with this poem Lowell's *An Incident in a Railroad Car*. The theme of both poems is the softening and humanizing influence of the great masters of literature.

P. 151, l. 16.—**Little Nell.** The central figure of *The Old Curiosity Shop*.

P. 151, l. 17.—**The reader.** Probably Bret Harte himself.

P. 152, l. 10.—**One tale.** "Dickens is dead."

P. 152, l. 17.—**Hop-vines.** See Book IV. page 77, line 17.

P. 152, l. 14.—**Kentish hills.** Dickens died at his home at Gadshill, in Kentshire.

P. 152, l. 18.—**Spray of Western pine.** A tribute from the far West.

FROM THE "BOOK OF PSALMS."

The Psalms here selected are printed from the King James version of the Bible, without the division into verses. For poetical arrangement and revised text, see Moulton's *Modern Reader's Bible, The Psalms*, Vols. I. and II., (The Macmillan Co.).

Psalm XXIII.

"In this most popular of sacred lyrics, the thought of Jehovah's protection is developed, first by the single image of the shepherd and his flock, expanded in detail; then by a rapid succession of images: the plentiful supply of food in spite of a blockading enemy; the hospitable feast, with its wine and its anointing, and (perhaps) the stream of goodness following the singer through the desert of life."—*Moulton.*

Psalm CIII.

In this psalm, God is celebrated as "the God of the personal, individual life, or the World Within."—*Moulton.*

Psalm CXLVIII.

This psalm forms part of a grand chorus of praise, which begins with the 145th and ends with the 150th Psalm. Here everything, animate and inanimate, is called upon to praise the Lord.

THE FINDING OF THE LYRE.

This selection is taken from *Under the Willows, and Other Poems.* As is usual with Lowell, the poem ends with a lesson, which the first part is intended to illustrate.

P. 156, l. 7.—**Estray.** Without an owner.

P. 156, l. 10.—**New sonnet.** A sly hit at the popular poetry of the time.

P. 156, l. 11.—**Mercury.** See "Hermes," Book IV., page 26.

THE LEGEND OF "THE WHITE HORSE PLAINE."

This selection is one of a series of legends relating to Manitoba, contributed to various French-Canadian Magazines by Judge Prud'homme, of St. Boniface. It is interesting as a specimen of hundreds of similar stories which cluster around the early life of the West. The White Horse Plain is about 20 miles from Winnipeg.

THE LAUGHING SALLY.

This poem appeared first in the *Century Magazine*, and then in *The Book of the Native*, 1897. Mr. Roberts says: "In the case of *The Laughing Sally* there is a strong basis of actual fact, and a fight with a similar result actually took place; but being unable to verify all the names of combatants or the exact site of the battle, I changed the names, and laid the scene in a totally different part of the world, to avoid the confusion which arises from half truth."

P. 160, l. 1.—**Pernambuco.** The most easterly sea-port of Brazil. The scene of the fight is laid somewhere among the West India Islands.

P. 160, l. 8.—**The black flag.** With the addition of a skull and cross-bones, the usual emblem of a piratical craft.

P. 160, l. 9.—**Took toll.** Preyed upon weaker vessels.

P. 160, l. 12.—**King's black ship.** Warship of the English King.

P. 160, l. 18.—**Port bow.**—Left-hand side, facing the bow of the ship.

P. 161, l. 3.—**Liana'd.** Covered with climbing and twining plants.

P. 161, l. 4.—**Bayou.** A sheltered bay; generally one of the several outlets of a river through the delta.

P. 161, l. 25.—**Man of Devon.** Devon has always been noted for its excellent seamen and loyal men. Francis Drake is a typical Devonshire man. Kingsley lays the scene of his *Westward Ho!* a glorification of Elizabethan seamen, in Devon.

THE FOOTBALL MATCH.

This selection is taken from the 5th Chapter of *Tom Brown's School Days.* Tom Brown, the hero of the book, is a typical English school-boy. The story, after giving an account of Tom's home and early training, takes him to Rugby, and traces his career there from the time he enters, a lower School-house fag, until he leaves his school, ready to proceed to Oxford. The endeavor is made to portray all the more important features of English school-boy life. Descriptions are given of life, both indoors and out of doors,—bullyings, fights, boat-races, football and cricket matches, scrapes with masters, and with farmers, whose hen-roosts have been disturbed. The immense influence for good exercised by Arnold, the famous head-master, is fully recognized, while a similar influence exercised by Arthur (Dean Stanley) is dwelt upon. The book is a thoroughly wholesome, manly story. The football match is Tom's introduction to Rugby.

P. 163, l. 1.—**Punt-about.** The practice ball.

P. 163, l. 21.—**White trousers.** The distinguishing mark of the school-house side.

P. 163, l. 25.—**Old Brooke.** "The cook of the school, and head of the School-house side, and the best kick and charger in Rugby."

P. 164, l. 25.—**He of Russia.** The Czar.

P. 165, l. 27.—**The Consulship of Planeus.** "When I was young," or "In the old days." The reference is to the closing lines of the 14th Ode in the Third Book of Horace's *Odes.* "I would not have put up with this, in the heat of youth, when Plancus was consul." Horace was about 23 years old when Plancus was consul, B.C. 42.

P. 169, l. 16.—**Toco.** Punishment.

P. 169, l. 17.—**Lombard Street.**—The street in which the great banking houses are located.

P. 171, l. 10.—**Lumber.** Useless players.

P. 172, l. 4.—**Job's War-horse.** *Job* xxxix. 19-25.

P. 173, l. 6.—**The Old Guard.** The veteran troops of Napoleon, who had been held in reserve during the day. They made their des-

parate, brilliant charge between seven and eight o'clock in the evening. They were driven back, and fled in disorder.

P. 173, l. 25.—**Praeposter.** A monitor; a student appointed to oversee other students.

P. 174, l. 19.—**No side.** The match was for the best of three goals; in order to win, two goals must be kicked.

THE DAISY.

This poem should be contrasted with *To the Daisy*, on the next page. The thought in this poem is simply that the daisy grows everywhere and at all seasons, and all the details are given to bring out these two points. Wordsworth's second poem, *To the Daisy*, treats the flower very much in the way it is treated here. Compare Stanza 4 of this poem with Wordsworth's second stanza.

> Thee Winter in the garland wears
> That thinly decks his few grey hairs;
> Spring parts the clouds with softest airs,
> That she may sun thee;
> Whole Summer fields are thine by right,
> And Autumn, melancholy wight!
> Doth in thy crimson head delight
> When rains are on thee.

P. 175, l. 27.—**Consecrated Ground.** The grave-yard.

P. 176, l. 3.—**Pensile.** Hanging.

P. 176, l. 4.—**Flora.** The goddess of flowers and gardens among the Romans.

TO THE DAISY.

This poem was composed at Town-end, Grasmere, and published in 1807.

This poem consists principally of similes, suggested to the poet, when lying on the grass, gazing idly at the flower. Note the spirit in which these comparisons are made; "Which *love* makes for thee." Of course none of these similes can be pushed too far; "I sit and *play* with similes."

P. 176, l. 1.—**Here.** At his home, Grasmere.

P. 176, l. 5.—**Common-place.** See *The Daisy*, Book IV., page 175.

P. 176, l. 7.—**And yet.** The daisy is beautiful to those that love it.

P. 176, l. 9.—**Dappled.** Spotted with daisies.

P. 176, l. 11.—**All degrees.** From the highest to the lowest—from queen to starveling.

P. 176, l, 13.—**Fond and idle.** Foolish and useless.

P. 177, l. 1.—**Nun demure.**—The modest retiring appearance of the daisy probably suggested this comparison.

Lowly Port. Humble demeanor.

P. 177, l. 2.—**Sprightly maiden.** Innocence and purity are the essential points in this simile.

P. 177, l. 5.—**Crown of Rubies.** The petals of the daisy are tipped with crimson. See Burns' *To a Mountain Daisy.*

P. 177, l. 9.—**Cyclops.** The Cyclopes were famous giants of antiquity who were provided with but one eye, and that in the middle of the forehead.

P. 177, l. 14.—**Boss of gold.** Referring to the yellow centre of the flower, the boss of the shield being the protuberance in the centre.

P. 177, l. 22.—**Self-poised.** From where the poet is sitting the stalk of the flower cannot be seen.

P. 177, l. 30.—**Repair.** Heal or refresh.

THE ARGONAUTS.

The story of the Argonauts is one of the oldest in the Greek mythology. The account here given is taken from "*The Heart of Oak*" series of Readers (Ginn & Co.). The story is translated from a collection of tales told by the historian to his son Marcus, a boy of about four years of age. A much fuller account of the expedition is found in Kingsley's *The Greek Heroes* (The Macmillan Co.).

P. 178, l. 2.—**Athemas.** King of Thebes in Boeotia. He married Nephele, but repudiated her on the ground that she was subject to fits of madness, and married Ino, the daughter of Cadmus. Ino was jealous of the children of Nephele, as they were heirs to the throne. She herself endeavored to destroy all the corn in the country, and then sent sooth-sayers to Athemas to tell him that the destruction of the corn was a divine judgment and that the anger of the Gods could be appeased only by the sacrifice of Phrixus. Hermes saved the lad and transported him to Colchis.

P. 178, l. 2.—**Nephele.** Her story is told in the text. She was turned into a cloud after death.

P. 178, l. 5.—**Phrixus.** Phrixus arrived safely at Colchis where he was kindly received by the King, who gave him his daughter in marriage. Shortly afterwards Æetes became jealous of his son-in-law, and put him to death.

P. 178, l. 6.—**Helle.** Phrixus buried his sister on the sea-shore, and named in her honor the narrow strait in which she was drowned, the Hellespont, now the Bosphorus.

P. 178, l. 8.—**Ino.** In punishment for the wickness of Ino, Herè sent one of the furies to Athamas. The King taking Ino to be a lioness and her children whelps pursued them and killed one of the children. To escape the fury of her husband Ino threw herself into the sea, with her remaining child in her arms.

P. 178, l. 17.—**Hermes,** See Book IV., page 25.

P. 178, l. 21.—**Colchis.** A country of Asia, east of the Black Sea.

P. 179, l. 4.—**Pelias.** The Son of Tyro and the god Poseidon. Tyro afterwards married Cretheus, King of Iolchos, and became the mother of three children among whom was Æson. Pelias visited Iolchos, and was kindly received into the family of Cretheus. On the death of the King, Pelias dispossessed Æson, the rightful heir, and seized the kingdom. Although Pelias was now firmly established on the throne he was very jealous of Jason the son of Æson, and tried by various means to get rid of him. All his efforts proving unsuccessful he finally sent him to revenge the murder of Phrixus, and to obtain the Golden Fleece, promising him the crown in the event of his success. He failed to keep his promise, and was finally killed by the magic of Medea.

P. 179, l. 5.—**Æson.** The son of Cretheus, who was unjustly deprived of the throne of Iolchos by Pelias. After the return of Jason from the Argonautic expedition, Æson who was very old, was restored to his youth again by Medea. She drew the blood from his veins, and refilled them with a preparation of herbs, which immediately gave back to the old man his youth and vigor.

P. 179, l. 6.—**Jason.** The son of Æson and the hero of the expedition. He lived happily with Medea for about ten years after the return from Colchis, but at the end of that time a separation took place. Jason was killed by a beam from the "Argo" falling upon his head, and crushing him as he rested beside the vessel.

P. 179, l. 27.—**Athene.** See Book IV., page 20.

P. 179, l. 28. **Magic tree.** According to the poets, this was a beam which had been cut in the forests of Dodona by Pallas herself, and placed in the prow of the boat.

P. 179, l. 30.—**Argo.** This is said to have been the first ship. It had 50 oars and accommodated the 55 heroes who went on the expedition. After the return the ship was drawn up on the shore and consecrated to Poseidon. It was afterwards placed in the heavens among the constellations. See *The Stars in Song and Legend* by J. C. Porter (Ginn & Co.).

P. 180, l. 1.—**Hercules.** See Book IV., page 250.

P. 180, l. 2.—**Two Brothers.** Zethes and Cailas, the sons of Boreas. They are represented as having wings. They were both killed during the expedition by Hercules, and were changed into winds.

P. 180, l. 4.—**Pollux.** The son of Zeus and Leda and twin-brother to Castor. Pollux was the god of boxing and wrestling among the Greeks. See Book V., page 422, line 11.

P. 180, l. 8.—**Amycus.** The son of Poseidon, and king of the Bebryces, famous for his skill in boxing. He challenged Pollux, and attempted to overcome him by fraud, but was killed in the attempt.

P. 180, l. 13.—**Phineus.** King of Bithynia, who on a false charge, put out the eyes of both his children. This was punished by the gods, who struck Phineus blind and sent the Harpies to torment him. He was delivered from these monsters by the Argonauts, and afterwards received his sight.

P. 180, l. 14.—**Zeus.** See Book IV., page 22.

P. 180, l. 17.—**Harpies.** Three winged monsters, having the face of a woman, and the body of a vulture, and their feet and fingers armed with claws. They were sent by the gods to punish unnatural or atrocious crimes committed by mortals.

P. 180, l. 29.—**Boreas.** Among the ancients the winds were personified. The north wind was Boreas, the son of Aurora or Eos, the goddess of the dawn. He is represented as a god, with white hair and wings.

P. 181, l. 9.—**Two great rocks.** The Cyaneæ or Symplegades were two small rugged islands at the entrance to the Euxine or Black Sea, and not far from the Bosphorus. There is a space of about 120 feet between them, and the passage is rough and difficult. The tradition that they clashed together was firmly believed by the ancients.

P. 182, l. 7.—**Phasis.** A river in Colchis. On its banks were certain birds which Jason brought home, and these birds have since been known as pheasants.

P. 182, l. 11.—**Æetes.** The son of Apollo, and king of Colchis. He killed Phrixus to obtain the Golden Fleece. All that is known about him is stated in the text.

P. 182, l. 12.—**Medea.** One of the most celebrated figures in ancient story. After the escape from Colchis, which Medea effected by murdering her brother, she lived quietly with Jason in Greece. Some time later, owing to a frightful crime, the murder of her own children, she was compelled to flee, and took refuge in Athens. Here she attempted to murder Theseus and was again forced to flee. She sought refuge in Colchis, became reconciled to her family and died there. After death, she was married to Achilles in the Elysian Fields.

P. 182, l. 20.—**Hephaistos.** See Book IV., page 22. The name is very often spelled Hephæstus.

P. 183, l. 4.—**Chariot.** This famous chariot accompanied Medea to Greece. By its means she made her escape on several occasions when her life was in danger.

P. 184, l. 2.—**Medea was helping.** Incited thereto by Heré, who was favorable to the Argonauts.

P. 186, l. 19.—**Ocean.** According to the Greeks the earth was round like a plate. The land was entirely surrounded by the Ocean stream, which flowed ceaselessly round and round.

P. 186, l. 22.—**Put to death.** After the return of the Argonauts Medea, to please Jason, restored old Æson to his youth again. This so astonished the daughters of Pelias, that they begged Medea to do the same with their father. Medea still further excited their desire, by killing an old ram, boiling it, and bringing it to life again as a lamb. The daughters of Pelias surprised their father, drew the blood from his veins, cut his body in pieces, and boiled it. Medea then refused to aid them further, and so Pelias perished miserably by the hands of his own daughters.

THE MEETING OF THE WATERS.

This poem first appeared in the volume of "Irish Melodies," published in 1813-14.

"'The meeting of the waters' forms a part of that beautiful scenery which lies between Rathdrum and Arklow, in the county of Wicklow,

and these lines were suggested by a visit to this romantic spot in the summer of the year 1807."—*Moore.*

The waters are the rivers Avon and Avoca

MARMION AND DOUGLAS

This selection forms the 13th, 14th and 15th sections of Canto VI. of *Marmion.*

Marmion, a noble English knight, had been accompanied for some years by a page, who was in reality a young nun, named Constance de Beverley, who, for love of him, had broken her convent vows. Marmion, however, for worldly purposes, was anxious to marry the Lady Clare, but a rival, De Wilton, stood in his way. By means of a forged letter written by Constance, Marmion threw discredit on his rival, fought with him in the lists, overthrew him, and caused his banishment as a disgraced and perjured knight. Constance, shortly afterwards, was captured and punished for her defection, by death. Before dying she handed to the Abbess of St. Hilda a packet containing the proof of Marmion's guilt. This packet the Abbess gave to De Wilton, who in the disguise of a palmer, had followed Marmion to Scotland, where he had gone on an embassy from the King of England. Clare with the Abbess reached Edinburgh at the same time as Marmion, having been captured by a Scottish band. Marmion being bound to remain in Scotland, while there was any hope of peace, was sent to Tantallon Castle as a guest of the Douglas, and in his company went the Abbess and Clare. De Wilton also accompanied them, and while at the castle laid the whole matter before Douglas, who in consequence treated Marmion with marked coldness. The knight, finding war to be inevitable and wishing to take part in the coming battle, ordered his equipage to be made ready. Then occurred the incident in the text: Marmion hastened forward, joined Surrey, fought bravely at Flodden, but was killed on the battle-field. De Wilton, who had also distinguished himself during the battle, soon established his innocence, was restored to his lands, and married Clare.

P. 187, l. 2.—**Troop.** Two squires, four men-at-arms and twenty yeomen, whom he had taken with him as a suitable escort, when he set out on his embassy to the Scottish court.

P. 187, l. 3.—**Surrey.** Thomas Howard, Earl of Surrey, the English commander at Flodden.

P. 187, l. 4.—**Safe-conduct.** A written guarantee of safety.

P. 187, l. 6.—**Douglas.** Archibald Douglas, Earl of Angus, surnamed Bell-the-Cat. Marmion had been quartered with the Douglas at Tantallon castle, during the remainder of his stay in Scotland.

P. 187, l. 10.—**Let the hawk stoop.** Let Marmion do what he will, De Wilton has escaped.

P. 187, l. 14.—**Cold respect.** Douglas had been made fully aware of Marmion's treachery to De Wilton and his persecution of Clare. Knowing this, he had found it difficult to keep up even the outward show of respect to his guest, who was there at his king's command.

P. 187, l. 16.—**Tantallon.** A very strong fortress on the coast of East Lothian, the home of the Earls of Angus.

P. 188, l. 8.—**Unmeet.** Unfit.

P. 188, l. 25.—**Pitch of pride.** The height of your pride.

P. 188, l. 27.—**Never look.** Addressed to the followers of Douglas, who were standing around.

P. 189, l. 7.—**Saint Bride.** Saint Bridget of Ireland, "a favorite saint of the house of Douglas and of the Earl of Angus in particular." There was a shrine of St. Bride at Bothwell on the Clyde.

P. 189, l. 8.—**Drawbridge.** The movable bridge across the moat, or ditch which usually surrounded a feudal castle.

P. 189, l. 9.—**Portcullis.** An iron grating, with sharpened spikes at the bottom, which hung suspended by chains from the top of the gate, and could be let down almost instantly.

P. 189, l. 23.—**A letter forged.** It was by means of a forged letter that Marmion had convicted De Wilton of treason.

P. 189, l. 23.—**Saint Jude.** Probably Jude is invoked as in the Epistle of St. Jude, faithlessness is severely condemned.

P. 189, l. 28.—**To speed.** Protect me.

P. 189, l. 31.—**Clerkly skill.** Ability to read and write. It was not, however, Marmion who forged the letter, but Constance, although it was done under instructions from him.

P. 189, l. 32.—**Saint Bothan.** The cousin of St. Columba and his successor at Iona. There was a convent of Saint Bothan in Berwickshire.

P. 189, l. 33.—**Gawain.** The third son of Douglas. He was one of the best known of the earlier Scottish poets, and was made Bishop of Dunkeld.

P. 190, l. 2.—**Boy-bishop.** This is hardly correct. Gawain Douglas

was at this time, 1512, 36 years old, and was not made a bishop until two years later, 1515.

P. 190, l. 3.—**Saint Mary.** The Virgin Mary.

THE LOSS OF THE BIRKENHEAD.

"In February, 1852, the troopship 'Birkenhead' took out to the Cape about 500 soldiers to join regiments then in the Colony. In the night she struck on a hidden rock near Cape Town, and became a total wreck in a few minutes. Very few of the boats could be used, so that there was no escape for the large majority. Colonel Seton of the 74th Highlanders, who was in command, mustered the men on deck, and they stood in their ranks till the ship sank under them, rather than risk the lives of the women and children by trying to get into the boats. Some escaped by swimming or clinging to the wreck, but over 350 perished. Probably never has discipline achieved such a triumph."—*George and Sidgwick.*

This poem should be read side by side with *The Battle of the Baltic.* Each illustrates the heroic side of the British sailor and soldier.

P. 190, l. 2.—**Dark repose** The vessel struck at 2 o'clock in the morning. The sea was perfectly calm at the time, except for a slight swell.

P. 190, l. 8.—**Shock.** A comparison with the effect produced upon the nervous system by an electric shock.

P. 190, l. 15.—**Fierce fish.** Many of those who attempted to swim ashore were devoured by the sharks. See Stanza 11.

P. 191, l. 12.—**Base appeal.** The captain, just as the ship was about to sink, called on all to jump overboard, and attempt to reach the boats. This would have endangered the safety of the women and children in the boats. The soldiers prefered to die rather than do this.

P. 191, l. 23.—**Like stars.** A reference to the decorations given as a reward for bravery in battle.

P. 191, l. 29.—**Joint-heirs.** *Romans* viii., 17.

THE VALLEY OF HUMILIATION.

This extract has been put together from the second part of *Pilgrim's Progress.* Christiana has set out to find her husband, and has been guided thus far by Piety and Prudence.

It would be well to read the description of the Valley of Humiliation and the fight there between Christian and Apollyon. The incident is very graphically described and throws much light on the extract in the text.

P. 193, l. 8.—**Beautiful with lilies.** *The Song of Solomon* ii., 1.
P. 193, l. 12.—**God resisteth.** *James* iv., 6, and I. *Peter* v., 5.

THE SHEPHERD OF KING ADMETUS.

This is one of Lowell's earlier poems, published in 1843. The theme of the poem is the divine origin of poetry, and by inference, the sacredness of the poet's calling. It also explains the saying: "I care not who writes the laws of a nation, if I may make its songs." Read in this connection Tennyson's *The Poet.*

The poem is based upon an episode in the history of Apollo the God of poetry and the fine arts. The son of Apollo, Æsculapius, the famous physician, had been killed by Zeus, because he had raised the dead to life. Apollo, in resentment, killed the Cyclops, who had forged the thunderbolt, with which Zeus had killed Æsculapius. For this act Apollo was banished from Heaven for nine years. He wandered about and finally arrived in Thessaly, where he was kindly received by King Admetus. He became one of the king's shepherds and served him for the full term of his exile.

P. 194, l. 5.—**Tortoise shell.** See Book IV., page 155.
P. 194, l. 7.—**Men's bosom swell.**

> And here the singer for his Art
> Not all in vain may plead
> "The Song that nerves a nation's heart
> Is in itself a deed."
>
> —*Tennyson.*

P. 194, l. 9.—**Admetus.** The king of Pheræ, in Thessaly. He was a famous hunter in youth and joined in the chase of the Calydonian boar; and also was one of the Argonauts. He obtained his wife Alceste by bringing to her father, Pelias, a chariot drawn by a lion and a boar. This he did by the aid of Apollo, who was grateful for the kindness shown him by the king in the days of his exile.

P. 194, l. 16.—**Viceroy o'er his sheep.** His shepherd.
P. 195, l. 10.—**Common flower.**

Thanks to the human heart by which we live,
Thanks to its tenderness, its joys and fears,
To me the meanest flower that blows can give
Thoughts that do often lie too deep for tears.

—*Wordsworth.*

P. 195, l. 12.—**Stones.**

And this our life exempt from public haunt
Find tongues in trees, books in the running brooks,
Sermons in stones and good in everything.

—*Shakespeare.*

THE SNOW STORM.

The purpose of this poem is not to describe the storm, but to draw attention to the "frolic architecture of the snow." Compare this poem with the prelude to the second part of *Sir Launfal*, Book V., page 228, and with Lowell's *The First Snowfall.*

P. 196, l. 18.—**Parian.** The marble of Paros, an island in the Ægean sea, was much used by the ancients for purposes of sculpture, owing to its beautiful whiteness.

P. 196. l. 21.—**Maugre.** In spite of.

THREE SCENES IN THE TYROL.

This selection was taken from the old *Canadian Readers.* The Tyrol is a Province of the Austrian Empire, lying between Bavaria and Italy, and bounded on the west by Switzerland.

The Rescue.

P. 197, l. 3.—**Inn.** The Inn flows through the Tyrol into the Danube.

P. 198, l. 9.—**Maximillian.** (1459-1519.) Emperor of Germany. He succeeded his father on the Imperial throne in March, 1493. On the death of his cousin, the Archbishop Sigismund, he inherited the Tyrol.

P. 198, l. 10.—**Wiltau.** A small village in the Tyrol, containing a monastery.

P. 198, l. 24.—**Kaiser.** Emperor.

P. 199, l. 3.—**Hapsburg.** The Imperial house of Austria.

THE RUE.

About the middle of the 16th century, Germany was distracted by the feuds between the Protestant and Catholic princes. Charles V., the Emperor of Germany, openly supported the latter, and was assisted during the struggle by Maurice, Duke and Elector of Saxony. Maurice was accordingly detested by the Protestant princes, who looked upon him as a renegade. But Maurice began to suspect the designs of Charles, and began the formation of a secret league against him. He united the Protestant princes, entered into a league with the King of France, and so quickly and so secretly did he move, that Maurice was almost in his camp, before Charles realized that the struggle had begun. The Emperor managed to save himself by an ignominious flight and shortly afterwards was compelled to sign the treaty of Passau. The flight is here described.

P. 199, l. 19.—**Innsbruck.** The capital of the Tyrol, situated on the River Inn.

Carinthia. One of the divisions of the Austrian Empire, directly east of the Tyrol.

P. 200, l. 14.—**Charles V.** (1500-1558). The eldest son of the Archduke Philip of Austria, and the grandson of the Maximilian referred to in *The Rescue*. From his father he inherited Austria and the Netherlands, while by the death of his grandfather Ferdinand, he inherited Spain, Naples, Lombardy and the Continent of America. In 1519 he was elected Emperor of Germany. His reign was distinguished by numerous wars, principally with Francis I. of France, in which Charles was successful. He abdicated in favor of his son Philip in 1556.

P. 200, l. 27.—**Maurice of Saxony.** (1521-1553). The Duke and elector of Saxony, who succeeded his father in 1541. After the peace of Passau was signed, Maurice fought against the Turks, and then took part again in the religious wars of Germany. He met his death in one of these battles.

P. 201, l. 1.—**Star of Austria.** His lucky star. Charles was Archduke of Austria.

THE RUIN.

By the treaty of Presburg in 1805 the Tyrol was transferred to Bavaria, but was never quiet under the Bavarian yoke. In 1809 the Tyrolese rose in arms under Andreas Hofer, and badly defeated the

Bavarians. Following the battle of Wagram, a peace was concluded between Austria and Napoleon, and the Tyrol was left to its fate. A large force of French and Bavarians was sent to root out the Tyrolese, but they were met by Hofer and his men at Berg Isel, August 13, 1809, and completely routed. This is the conflict described here.

P. 201, l. 4.—**Bonaparte.**—Napoleon, Emperor of the French.

P. 201, l. 9.—**Innthal.** The valley of the Upper Inn.

THE GRAVES OF A HOUSEHOLD.

It is said that this poem has brought great comfort to many sad hearts. The words of solace are to be found in the last two lines, and this furnishes a suggestion as to the method of studying. Sympathy is of the essence of the poem.

THE REAPER AND THE FLOWERS.

"In his diary under date of December 6, 1838, Longfellow writes: 'A beautiful holy morning within me. I was softly excited, I knew not why, and wrote with peace in my heart, and not without tears in my eyes *The Reaper and the Flowers, a Psalm of Death.* I have had an idea of this kind in my mind for a long time, without finding any expression for it in words. This morning it seemed to crystallize at once without any effort of my own.' This psalm was printed in *The Knickerbocker* for January, 1839." *Note to Riverside edition.*

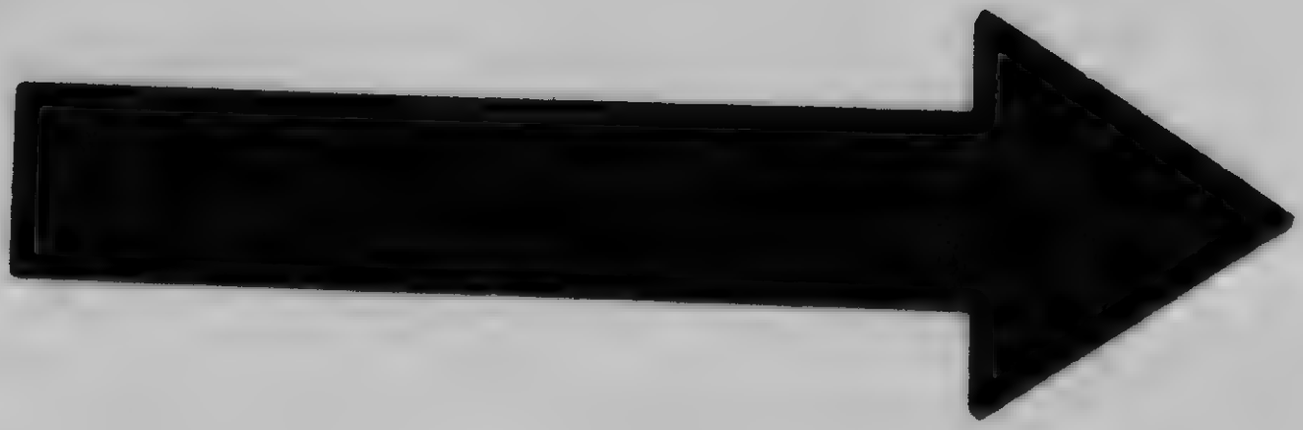
This poem belongs to the same class as *The Graves of a Household*, and may profitably be compared with it.

FAITH, HOPE AND LOVE.

This selection is the 13th Chapter of 1st *Corinthians*, printed from the revised version of the New Testament. See Henry Drummond's *The Greatest Thing in the World.*

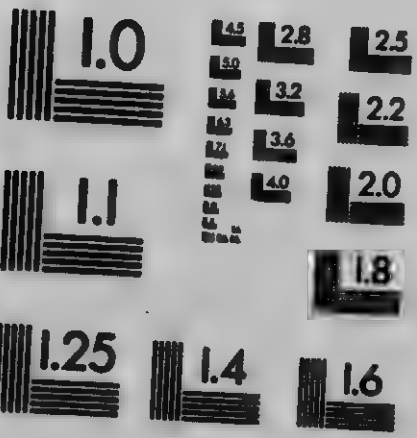
INDIAN SUMMER.

The two poems under this heading give opportunity for comparative study. The hopeful tone of one contrasts with the melancholy reflec-



MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc
1653 East Main Street
Rochester, New York 14609 USA
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

tion of the other. Note how the description in each naturally leads to the reflection that is made.

THE EAGLE AND THE SWAN.

This selection is intended to bring out the cruel and savage nature of the eagle. Audubon for this very reason was always opposed to the eagle being considered the national bird of the United States.

THE LAST LEAF.

"This poem was suggested by the sight of a figure well-known to Bostonians, in 1831 or 1832, that of Major Thomas Melville, 'the last of the cocked hats', as he was sometimes called. He was often pointed out as one of the Indians of the famous 'Boston Tea Party' of 1774. His aspect among the crowds of a later generation reminded me of a withered leaf which has held to its stem through the storms of autumn and winter, and finds itself still clinging to its bough, while the new growths of spring are bursting their buds, and spreading their foliage all around it."—*Holmes.*

Writing in 1894, Holmes says: "I have lasted long enough to serve as an illustration of my own poem. I am one of the very last of the leaves which still cling to the bough of life that budded in the spring of the nineteenth century."

P. 211, l. 11.—**Crier.** An officer whose duty it was to make public proclamations.

THE TAKING OF QUEBEC.

This selection is taken from the 4th Chapter of the *Conspiracy of Pontiac.* Other accounts of the battle may be found in Parkman's *Montcalm and Wolfe*, Chapter XXVII., in Miss Machar's *Stories of New France*, (D. Lothrop & Co.), Chapter VII., and in Fitchett's *Deeds that Won the Empire*, (Geo. Bell & Sons). The story is also excellently told in verse in *The Death of Wolfe*, by Duncan Anderson, in Rand's *Treasury of Canadian Verse*, (Briggs). Compare with this account Book V., page 216.

Wolfe, with his army of 9,000 men, had been besieging the great

natural fortress of Quebec, defended by Montcalm, with 16,000 men, since June 26, but had not succeeded in making any impression. The approach of winter alarmed the captains of the ships, who insisted on immediate withdrawal. Wolfe resolved on one more desperate attempt. Every means was taken to conceal his real intentions from the enemy. The troops were all embarked, as if for immediate departure, the ships were kept moving up and down the river to confuse the French until at last Wolfe's plans were matured and final orders issued. The result is given in the text. A good map of the military operations before Quebec, is given in Parker's *Seats of the Mighty*, (The Copp, Clark Co.).

Wolfe was one of the greatest military geniuses of his age. He entered the army early, was an adjutant at 16, and was but 33 when he fell at Quebec. His personal appearance was against him as a commander. "His forehead and chin retreated; his nose up-tilted heavenward, formed with his other features, the point of an obtuse triangle. His hair was fiery red, his shoulders narrow, his legs a pair of attenuated spindle shanks." In addition, he was a chronic invalid, never well, and frequently prevented from attending to his duties by illness. But in spite of this there was in Wolfe that which commanded, not only the respect, but also the love and reverence of his men. It says much for Pitt's knowledge of men that he should choose this unprepossessing, sickly colonel, to command the forces against Quebec; the result proved he was not mistaken in his estimate of the man. See *Wolfe*, by A. G. Bradley, in *English Men of Action* Series, (The Macmillan Co.).

P. 213, l. 1.—**Twelfth.** The 12th of September, 1759.

P. 213, l. 7.—**Malady.** Wolfe was the victim of a painful chronic disease. A short time before this, for a week, hope had been given up that his life would be spared.

P. 213, l. 9.—**Disaster.** On July 31, Wolfe made a daring attack on the French forces on the Montmorenci. The attack, owing to a too reckless charge of some of the British regiments, and a tremendous rain storm which came on in the midst of the struggle, proved a failure, the British loosing 500 officers and men.

P. 213, l. 22.—**Gray's Elegy.** See Book V., page 193. The Elegy was first published in 1751.

P. 214, l. 10.—**Qui Vive.** "Who goes there?" The usual challenge of the sentry.

P. 214, l. 12.—**La France.** France. Probably the countersign.

P. 214, l. 16.—**Bougainville.** One of the French generals, serving

under Montcalm. At this time he was stationed above Quebec with a force of 3,000 men.

P. 215, l. 27.—**Plains of Abraham.** The plain took its name from Abraham Martin, a pilot, known as Maître Abraham, who had owned the land in the early days of the Colony.

P. 215, l. 30.—**Montcalm.** The Marquis de Montcalm was born in 1712. He entered the army at the age of 12, and made rapid advances in his profession. After serving with signal success in the continental wars of France, he was in 1756, placed in command of the French forces in North America. He greatly distinguished himself in his efforts to hold the colony and obtained many victories over the troops sent against him. Had he been properly supported by the civil power, he might have succeeded in holding out longer. He died the morning after the battle.

P. 216, l. 3.—**Civil Power.** Montcalm had been engaged in a bitter struggle with the Governor and with the Intendant, who did their best to interfere with and thwart his plans.

P. 216, l. 24.—**Provinces.** The English colonies in North America, afterwards known as the United States of America.

P. 218, l. 22.—**Townshend-Murray.** Two of the brigadier-generals sent out with Wolfe to capture Quebec. Both were skillful soldiers and ably seconded the efforts of Wolfe. Murray was afterwards Governor of Quebec and Governor-General of Canada.

P. 219, l. 24.—**Burton.** A veteran officer, who had seen long service in America. He had served with Braddock in the ill-fated expedition against Fort Duquesne.

Webb's Regiment. Called after its Colonel, Webb, who was commander-in-chief of the English forces in America in 1756.

THE INCHCAPE ROCK.

This poem was written at Bristol, 1802, and is based on the following extract from an old writer. "By east the Isle of May, twelve miles from all land in the German seas, lies a great hidden rock called Inchcape, very dangerous for navigators, because it overflowed every tide. It is reported, in old times, upon the said rock there was a bell, fixed upon a trie or timber, which rang continually, being moved by the sea, giving notice to the sailors of the danger. This bell or clock was put there and maintained by the Abbot of Aberbrothok, and being taken

down by a sea pirate, a year thereafter he perished upon the same rock, with ship and goods, in the righteous judgment of God."

The Inchcape Rock, better known as the Bell Rock, is a very dangerous rock, nearly opposite the mouth of the Tay. It is barely seen at spring tides, and there is deep water all around it. A lighthouse was built on the rock in 1811 by Stevenson.

HOW THESEUS SLEW THE MINOTAUR.

This selection is taken with some slight omissions and changes from Parts II. and III. of *Theseus* in Kingsley's *The Greek Heroes*, (The Macmillan Co.). See Book V., page 380. See also "The Minotaur" in Hawthorne's *Tanglewood Tales*, (Houghton, Mifflin & Co.).

P. 223, l. 2.—**Theseus.** Theseus had but newly arrived at his father's court. He had been left, when an infant, at Trœzene with his mother, who had instructions to send him to Athens, when he was able to lift a large stone, under which Ægeus, his father, had concealed his sword and sandals. Theseus grew up to manhood, raised the stone, took possession of the sword and sandals, and journeyed to Athens, where he arrived after encountering many dangers. He was at once recognized by his father and proclaimed heir to the throne.

P. 223, l. 5.—**Ægeus.** King of Athens and father of Theseus. He had been obliged to have his son brought up away from court, for fear of his nephews, the sons of Pallas, who expected the crown. He at once recognized Theseus when he saw him and acknowledged him as his son. He was inconsolable when Theseus departed for Crete and made him promise that if the attempt to kill the Minotaur should be successful, he would hoist white sails on the ship on the return voyage. Theseus forgot his promise. When Ægeus saw the black sails, thinking that his son was dead, he drowned himself in the sea, which now bears his name, the Ægean.

P. 223, l. 9.—**Herald.** The office of Herald among the Greeks was very much esteemed and sought after. The person of the Herald was considered sacred.

P. 223, l. 4.—**Dog-faced.** A favorite expression of contempt among the Greeks. Achilles, in the *Iliad*, charges Agamemnon with having "the face of a dog and the heart of a deer."

P. 223, l. 20.—**Minos.** The king here referred to is the son of the famous Minos, who was the son of Zeus and Europa. Minos was a

very powerful monarch and extended his conquests over the islands of the Ægean. He pursued Dædalus, after that inventor had fled from court. Minos followed him to Sicily and was there put to death by the king of that country, who did not wish to deliver up Dædalus.

P. 223, l. 21.—**Crete.** One of the largest islands in the Mediterranean, famous for its hundred cities and for the laws of Minos, which were in force there.

P. 224, l. 5.—**Androgeos.** The son of Minos and Pasiphae, and a famous wrestler. All that is known of him is stated in the text.

P. 224, l. 10.—**Sons of Pallas.** Pallas, the brother of Ægeus, had 50 sons. These expected to be the heirs of their uncle and were jealous of any interference with their claims. They were all killed by Theseus, whom they attempted to assassinate.

P. 224, l. 14.—**Thebes.** The capital of Bœotia, one of the most celebrated cities of ancient Greece. See Book III., page 188.

P. 224, l. 15.—**Bull of Marathon.** A ferocious bull, which for years had been ravaging the plains of Marathon, near Athens, and had slain all who had came against it. It was captured alive, after a fierce struggle, by Theseus, who led it through the streets of Athens, and sacrificed it to Poseidon.

P. 224, l. 22.—**Black-sailed.** A reference to the mournful nature of the errand.

P. 225, l. 9.—**Labyrinth.** A series of perplexing windings and passages, so constructed as to render escape from them almost impossible. The labyrinth of Crete, said to have been built by Dædalus, was modelled on the famous one in Egypt.

P. 225, l. 11.—**Minotaur.** The monster is fully described in the text.

P. 225, l. 18.—**Have I not slain.** Theseus, on the road from Trœzene to Athens, and afterwards while at Athens, had killed many famous robbers and monsters. A full account of his adventures, prior to the incident here recorded, is given in the original from which this extract is taken.

P. 225, l. 29.—**Clung to his knees.** A favorite mode of entreaty among the Greeks. Compare Priam clinging to the knees of Achilles, begging for the body of Hector.

P. 226, l. 2.—**Drew lots.** The seven youths and seven maidens were chosen by lot so that all had an equal chance to escape.

P. 226, l. 20.—**Sunium.** A promontory of Attica, about 45 miles from Athens.

P. 226, l. 30.—**Speaking Statues.** These were the famous statues endowed with the power of speech, made by Dædalus for Minos.

P. 226, l. 31.—**Dædalus.** The most cunning inventor of the age. After his flight from Athens, he took refuge with Minos, king of Crete, and built for him the labyrinth. Having incurred the displeasure of Minos, he was confined in his own labyrinth, from whence he escaped with his son Icarus, and fled to Sicily. Here he lived for some years, but was finally put to death by the king with whom he had taken refuge.

P. 227, l. 5.—**Perdix.** Sometimes called Talus. His story is given in the text.

P. 227, l. 12.—**Temple of Athene.** The famous temple of Pallas Athene, which crowned the Acropolis of Athens. It still exists in ruins.

P. 227, l. 12.—**Goddess.** Pallas Athene. See Book IV., page 2[illegible]

P. 227, l. 17.—**Icarus.** The son of Dædalus. His story is told in the text. The Icarian sea was named after him.

P. 228, l. 17.—**Ariadne.** The daughter of Minos. The impression left by the last line in the text is not quite true to ancient fable. When the ship touched Naxos, Theseus abandoned Ariadne, and she in despair, hanged herself. It was in punishment for this offence that the gods made Theseus forget his promise to Ægeus, a forgetfulness which resulted in the death of the old king. The story is fully given in the following chapter in the original story.

P. 230, l. 31.—**Through his throat.** The death of the Minotaur put an end to the tribute paid by Athens.

P. 231, l. 13.—**Naxos.** One of the islands in the Ægean sea.

LUCY GRAY.

This poem was published in the second volume of the *Lyrical Ballads*. Palgrave says: "Simple as *Lucy Gray* seems, a mere narrative of what 'has been and may be again,' yet every detail in it is marked by the deepest and purest 'ideal' character. Hence it is not strictly a pathetic poem, pathetic as the situation is. So far as this element has a place, Wordsworth asks that we should feel for the parents, rather than for the child. She is painted as a creature 'made one with nature' in her death, not less than in her life."

Great care should be taken in treating this poem, as its simplicity may easily be degraded into childishness.

CANADIAN STREAMS.

This poem appeared first in the Christmas number of *The Dominion Illustrated*, 1892, and was subsequently published in *Songs of the Common Day*, 1893. Mr. Roberts says: "In the case of the poem called "Canadian Streams," I was influenced by the passion of longing for my own country. I wrote the poem in Connecticut, by the banks of the Housatonic, and my desire was towards my own rivers and my own people." The germ of this poem is to be found in "An Ode for the Canadian Confederacy," published in *Songs of the Great Dominion*, (Walter Scott), 1889.

This poem provides a splendid opportunity for teaching Canadian history in the very best way. The teacher should be perfectly familiar with every incident mentioned here. The notes largely consist of references to literature on the subject. The poem should be taught or studied in the spirit in which it was written by the author.

P. 234, l. 8.—**Race for gain.** Who think that life has nothing in it but the making of money.

P. 234, l. 9.—**Unsung streams.** Not celebrated in song.

P. 234, l. 18.—**Daulac.** Adam Daulac, Sieur des Ormeaux, who with 16 Frenchmen and a few Indians held a fort at the Long Sault on the Ottawa, against hundreds of Indians. Daulac is sometimes called Dollard. See *Stories of New France*, by A. M. Machar, (D. Lothrop & Co.) pages 165-181; *Stories of the Maple Land*, by Katherine A. Young, (The Copp Clark Co.); pages 65-73; *How Canada Was Saved*, by George Murray in *Songs of the Great Dominion*, (Scott); pages 222-227, and *The Thermopylæ of New France*, in Miss Machar's *Lays of the True North*, (The Copp, Clark Co.).

P. 234, l. 19.—**La Tour.** Charles La Tour, who held Fort St. Louis against his father and a considerable force of English. See *A History of Canada*, by C. G. D. Roberts, (Morang); pages 49-58; *Stories of New France*, page 266; Bryce's *A Short History of the Canadian People*, (The W. J. Gage Co.), pages 134-141, and *The Heroine of St. John*, by P. S. Hamilton, in Rand's *Treasury of Canadian Verse*, (Briggs).

P. 234, l. 21.—**Inland Stream.** The River Thames in Ontario, near whose banks was fought the battle of Moravian Town, at which Tecumseh was killed.

P. 234, l. 22.—**Tecumseh.** The chief of the Shawnee Indians,

who assisted the British in the war of 1812. He was made a general in the British service. He fell at Moravian Town in 1813. See *Tecumseh*, by Charles Mair, (Wm. Briggs); *Tecumseh's Death*, by Major Richardson in *Songs of the Great Dominion*, and *Death of Tecumseh* in Jakeway's *The Lion and the Lilies*, (Briggs).

P. 234, l. 23.—**Small Water.** The river Missiguash, a tidal stream near the southern end of the isthmus of Chignecto. It formed the boundary between the French and English possessions. The French built a fort on their side of the stream and called it Beausejour, while as a counter-check the English built Fort Lawrence, on the opposite side, on the site of the old village of Beaubassin, burned by the Indians to prevent it falling into British hands. The river, as the boundary, was the scene of countless bloody conflicts.

P. 234, l. 25.—**Saguenay.** See the poem with this title, translated by Sir J. D. Edgar, from the French of Louis Frechette, in *Songs of the Great Dominion*, page 306.

P. 234, l. 27.—**Roberval.** The Governor of Canada, associated with Jacques Cartier in his explorations. "In 1549, with his brother Achille, he organized another expedition to Canada, the fate of which is one of the romantic secrets of history. A dim tradition would have us believe that the adventurers sailed up the Saguenay, seeking a kingdom of jewels and strange enchantments; and that no man of the company ever returned through the bleak portals of that wizard stream."—*Roberts.* This legend is told in verse by Arthur Weir in *The Secret of the Saguenay*, in *Songs of the Great Dominion*, pages 303-5. See *Stories of New France*, Chapter III., and Parkman's *The Pioneers of France in the New World*, pages 216-227.

P. 235, l. 1.—**Annapolis.** Originally Port Royal, founded in 1605 by Champlain, was captured by the British in 1709 and renamed Annapolis, "the city of Ann," in honor of the British Queen.

P. 235, l. 2.—**Champlain.** See *The Story of Champlain* in *Stories of New France*, pages 79-99. Bourinot's *The Story of Canada*, (The Copp, Clark Co.), contains portraits of Champlain, D' Iberville, Brock, Montcalm, Wolfe and De Salaberry.

P. 235, l. 4.—**Poutrincourt.** The companion of Champlain in his early explorations in Canada. See *Stories of New France*, Chapters V. and VI.

D' Iberville. One of the most famous of the French soldiers, noted for his exploits on Hudson's Bay and in Acadia. See Robert's

History of Canada, pages 104-6, and Bryce's *A Short History of the Canadian People*, pages 204-206. D' Iberville, is the hero of Gilbert Parker's *The Trail of the Sword*, (The Copp Clark Co.).

P. 235, l. 8.—**Canadian blood.** This poem was written shortly after the outbreak of the North West Rebellion in 1885. Both Fish Creek and Batoche, the two important places where engagements were fought are on the Saskatchewan.

P. 235, l. 10.—**De Salaberry.** The commander of a regiment of Canadian Voltigeurs during the war of 1812, and the hero of the battle of Chateauguay. See Robert's *History of Canada*, pages 244-5, and Bourinot's *The Story of Canada*, pages 328-330.

P. 235, l. 11.—**Brock.** Sir Isaac Brock, (1769-1812), the commander of the British and Canadian forces at Queenston Heights, where he was killed. See Robert's *History of Canada*, pages 227-230; *Brock*, by Charles Sangster in *Songs of the Great Dominion*, pages 254-5, and *Death of Brock*, in Jakeway's *The Lion and the Lilies*.

THE WINGED HORSE.

This selection is taken with some alterations and omissions from Chapter XXIII. of Baldwin's *The Story of Roland*, (Charles Scribner's Sons). The book as a whole deals with the marvellous adventures of the Knights of Charlemagne, or Charles the Great of France, and is an attempt to abridge and narrate in prose the stories given in the principal metrical romances of the Middle Ages. These stories are admirably adapted for class use. They open the way to a vast, and as yet for school room use, unexplored region of literature. Bulfinch's *Legends of Charlemagne*, *The Boys' Froissart*, Ed. by Sidney Lanier (Chas. Scribner's Sons), and Guerber's *Stories of the Middle Ages*, (American Book Co.), are all filled with information on this subject. The latter is well illustrated. See also *National Epics*, by Kate M. Rabb, (McClurg), and *Popular Romances of the Middle Ages*, by Cox and Jones, (Holt & Co.).

Atlantes, the magician, had a nephew, Rogero, the bravest of all the Moorish princes. It had been foretold that the boy would one day leave his home and friends and become a Christian. The old magician, to prevent this, kept the boy concealed, but at the same time trained him in all warlike accomplishments. Rogero was, however, seduced from his home by Agramant, King of Africa, and induced to assist him

in his invasion of France. While on this expedition, he met Bradamant, with whom he fell violently in love. They were, however, separated, and while searching for her Rogero was seized by old Atlantes and conveyed to an inaccessible castle, which the magician had built amidst the Pyrenees. To render Rogero's captivity as light as possible, Atlantes was in the habit of capturing knights and ladies, whom he took to the castle as companions for his imprisoned nephew. Bradamant was searching for Rogero, when she heard that he was imprisoned in the castle, and was on her way to rescue him, when she met the wizard as recorded in the text.

P. 235, l. 1.—**Bradamant.** The niece of Charlemagne and sister of Rinaldo. She was very beautiful and one of the most celebrated warriors of her age. Her further adventures, before being united to Rogero, are full of marvel and interest.

P. 235, l. 10.—**Brunello.** A dwarf in the service of Agramant, king of Africa. He had been sent by his master with the magic ring, stolen from Angelica, Princess of Cathay, to endeavor to release Rogero.

P. 236, l. 13.—**Open book.** The book in which his magic spells were written. A book was and still is an object of dread to the ignorant.

P. 236, l. 19.—**Hippogriff.** A peculiar animal, with the body of a horse, the head of an eagle, claws armed with talons, and wings covered with feathers.

P. 236, l. 23.—**Atlantes.** The further attempts of Atlantes to gain possession of Rogero and separate him from Bradamant are interesting, and make good class reading.

P. 238, l. 31.—**Magic ring.** This ring belonged to the Princess of Cathay, and had the power of rendering the wearer proof against enchantment. When placed in the mouth it made the person invisible.

P. 239, l. 7.—**Bound him.** The dwarf was in the service of the enemy of Charlemagne, and was there for the purpose of releasing Rogero, in order that he might assist Agramant against the French king.

P. 240, l. 3.—**Weird woman.** Melissa, the enchantress and keeper of Merlin's tomb, who had instructed Bradamant how to encounter the enchanter.

P. 242, l. 7.—**Decrees of fate.** See Introduction.

THE PLAINS OF ABRAHAM.

This poem should be read in connection with *The Taking of Quebec*, Book IV., page 213. All the references in the poem are explained in the notes on the prose selection. Note the tribute to the memory of Wolfe and Montcalm, and also the ringing, musical verse in which the poem is written.

THE BATTLE OF THE BALTIC.

The first draft of this poem was written in 1805. It was afterwards revised and published in 1809.

The incident celebrated in the poem is the battle off Copenhagen, fought between the English under Lord Nelson and the Danes. The origin of the quarrel may be given in the words of Fitchett: "Great Britain was supreme on the sea, Napoleon on the land, and in his own words, Napoleon conceived the idea of 'conquering the sea by the land.' Paul I. of Russia, a semi-lunatic, became Napoleon's ally and tool. Paul was able to put overwhelming pressure on Sweden, Denmark and Prussia, and these powers were federated as the League of Armed Neutrality, with the avowed purpose of challenging the marine supremacy of Great Britain. Paul seized all British ships in Russian ports; Russia marched troops into Hanover, every port from the North Cape to Gibraltar was shut against the British flag. Britain stood alone, practically threatened with a naval combination of all the northern powers. The fleets of France and Spain were blockaded; but the three northern powers could have put into battle line a fleet of 50 great ships, and 25 frigates. With this force they could raise the blockade of the French ports, sweep triumphant through the narrow seas and land a French army in Kent or in Ulster. Pitt was Prime Minister and his masterful intellect controlled British policy. He determined that the fleets of Denmark and of Russia should not become a weapon in the hands of Napoleon against England; and a fleet of 18 ships of the line, with frigates and bomb vessels was despatched to reason, from the iron lips of their guns, with the misguided Danish government." Sir Hyde Parker, as senior officer, was in command of the expedition, but in the battle itself Nelson commanded, Parker with a portion of the fleet being distant about four miles. The engagement took place on April 12, 1801, and lasted about 4 hours.

Nelson himself said that it was the fiercest struggle in which, up to that time, he had been engaged. The Danes were forced, after almost all their vessels and floating batteries had been destroyed, to agree to an armistice. This left the British fleet free to engage the Russians and the Swedes. The death of the Czar, however, broke up the League, and England was safe from danger in this quarter.

A very full and graphic account of the battle, together with a map and a picture of Captain Riou, will be found in Fitchett's *Deeds that Won the Empire*, (George Bell & Sons).

The prevailing sentiment of this poem is glory in the great deeds wrought by British seamen. The vigorous language, the sonorous epithets, the rapid motion, the vivid imagery of the poem are beyond praise, and the general effect of the whole is inspiring. The poem has about it a martial ring which carries the reader along in spite of himself. Line for line study should hardly be attempted. Purity of diction and clearness of expression are not characteristic of Campbell's ballads. The poem should be felt rather than studied.

Songs of Action, by Conan Doyle, (Doubleday); *Admirals All* and *The Island Race*, by Henry Newbolt, (John Lane); *Ballads of the Fleet*, by Rennell Rodd, (Arnold); *Poems of the Love and Pride of England*, by F. & M. Wedmore, (Ward, Lock & Co.), are collections that contain selections similar to *The Battle of the Baltic*. Tennyson's patriotic poems, such as *The Revenge* and *The Siege of Lucknow*, should be read in this connection.

P. 244, l. 4.—**All the might.** The battle was fought near Copenhagen, so that as the crew of a ship were slain, others took their places from the shore. This was done in some cases as many as three times.

P. 244, l. 8.—**Prince.** The Regent, afterwards Frederick VI. He was a nephew of George III. of England.

P. 245, l. 1.—**Leviathans.** A mythical sea-animal of colossal proportions.

P. 245, l. 3.—**Sign of battle.** The signal for close action flew at the mast head of Nelson's ship during the whole engagement.

P. 245, l. 5.—**Ten of April morn.** The action began at five minutes past ten.

P. 245, l. 6.—**As they drifted.** The British fleet were compelled to trust to chance in their effort to navigate the channel, as all the buoys had been removed. In the drifting several of the battle ships came to grief.

P. 245, l. 10.—**Might of England.** "The courage of the British soldiers glowed in anticipation of the fight."—*Sykes.*

P. 245, l. 13.—**Deadly space.** The average distance of the hostile ships apart was about 600 feet.

P. 245, l. 15.—**Adamantine.** Like adamant, an excessively hard metal.

P. 245, l. 26.—**Conflagration.** A number of the Danish ships took fire during the battle.

P. 245, l. 28.—**Hailed.** Nelson did not hail the Danes, but sent a message in these words: "To the brothers of Englishmen, the Danes, Lord Nelson has directions to spare Denmark, when no longer resisting, but if the firing is continued on the part of Denmark, Lord Nelson will be obliged to set on fire all the floating batteries he has taken, without having the power of saving the brave Danes, who have defended them." After another message stating that humanity was the reason for sending the flag of truce, an armistice of 14 weeks was agreed upon.

P. 246, l. 4.—**To our King.** George III.

P. 246, l. 5.—**Blessed our chief.** This is hardly a fact, although it was commonly believed in England at the time. There was no applause when Nelson landed.

P. 246, l. 21.—**Elsinore.** A town in Denmark about 24 miles from Copenhagen and about two and a half miles distant from the coast of Sweden. The "stormy steep" has existence only in the imagination of the poet.

P. 246, l. 26.—**Riou.** At the height of the struggle, Sir Hyde Parker hoisted a signal for Nelson to withdraw from the engagement. Nelson, however, paid no attention to it, but went on fighting. "The signal had one disastrous result—the little cluster of frigates and sloops engaged with the Three-Crown Batteries obeyed it, and hauled off. As the *Amazon*, Riou's ship ceased to fire, the smoke lifted and the Danish battery got her in full sight, and smote her with deadly effect. Riou, himself, heartbroken with having to abandon the fight, had just exclaimed, 'What will Nelson think of us!' when a chain shot cut him in two."—*Fitchett.* Nelson had become acquainted with Riou just before the battle, and described him in his despatches in the words used in the poem.

THE PYGMIES.

This selection is taken, with some slight omissions from Hawthorne's *Tanglewood Tales*. There is, of course, as is usual with Hawthorne, a lesson underlying the text, and to which he is constantly drawing attention. The lesson is that mere brute force, without intelligence, as represented by the *earth born* giant Antæus, is no match for skill and rightly-directed intelligence as represented by Hercules.

P. 247, l. 3.—**Antæus.** A giant of Libya, the son of Poseidon and Terra. His story is told in the text.

P. 247, l. 4.—**Pygmies.** A nation of dwarfs, called Pygmies, who inhabited the interior of Africa. Their story is here told.

P. 247, l. 6.—**Earth.** The earth was worshipped as a goddess by the ancients under the name Terra.

P. 249, l. 9.—**No other merit.** A sly hit at the fact that at least two of the Presidents of the United States were elected for no other reason than they had obtained a little passing military glory.

P. 250, l. 23.—**The stranger.** Hercules, or Herakles, one of the most celebrated figures in classical mythology. A number of his exploits are related in the text. He was made a god after death, and worshipped as such over a large part of the ancient world. See *Herakles, the Hero of Thebes*, by M. E. Burt and Zenaide Ragozin, (Chas. Scribner's Sons).

P. 250, l. 28.—**Golden helmet.** Most of the arms of Hercules had been given to him by the gods. Pallas Athene had given him his *helmet*, Hephaestus his *breastplate* and Hermes his *sword*. The *Lion Skin* he wore was that of the Nemæan lion. This was the first labor imposed on Hercules by his brother. This lion lived near Mycenæ and ravaged the country round about. Hercules boldly followed the monster into its retreat, and as he could not pierce its hide with his arrow, nor kill it with his club, he caught it in his grasp and strangled it. He then skinned the lion and ever afterwards wore the hide. On his way to meet the lion, Hercules cut a *club* in the forestto assist him in the fight.

P. 251, l. 17.—**Upheld the sky.** Atlas, one of the Titans, had assisted the giants in their war against the gods, and in consequence was compelled to support the weight of the heavens upon his shoulders. When Hercules was engaged upon the search for the golden apples of the Hesperides he asked the assistance of Atlas. The Titan refused

on the plea that if he were to move from his place, the heavens would fall, and the earth be entirely destroyed. Hercules offered to take his place during the required time, but when once Atlas was released he refused to resume his burden. Hercules begged him to help him move the weight from one shoulder to another. Atlas agreed, and Hercules easily transferred the burden to the shoulders of Atlas once again. He then picked up the apples which, in the meantime Atlas had procured and departed.

P. 253, l. 15.—**Hesperides.** Three nymphs, whose special duty it was to guard the golden apples which Herè gave to Zeus on their wedding day. The apples were kept in a garden, the location of which was concealed and were guarded by a never-sleeping dragon. One of the labors imposed upon Hercules was to obtain three of these apples.

P. 253, l. 16.—**Eurystheus.** The King of Argos and Mycenæ. Hercules was subject to him and compelled to do his will, owing to a rash oath made by Zeus, the father of Hercules. Eurystheus compelled Hercules to perform his twelve celebrated exploits. He was finally killed by Hyllus, the son of Hercules.

P. 263, l. 27.—**Hydras.** The second labor of Hercules was the destruction of the Lernæan Hydra, a water-serpent with nine heads, which dwelt in a swamp in that country. Hercules tried to destroy it by knocking off the heads, one after the other, but as soon as one head was knocked off two others grew in its place. With the assistance of Iolaus, who seared the wounds with a hot iron as soon as the head was destroyed, he disposed of eight and then buried the ninth head, which was immortal, under a rock.

P. 263, l. 28.—**Stags.** The fourth labor was to capture alive a beautiful stag, with golden horns and brazen hoofs, which lived among the Arcadian hills. Hercules chased it for a year without ceasing, and finally captured it by running it into a snow-drift, from which it could not escape.

Six-legged men. The tenth labor was to capture the oxen of Geryon, a monster with three heads, three bodies, and three sets of legs. Hercules slew him with his club, and drove away his oxen.

P. 263, l. 29.—**Three-headed dogs.** The twelfth labor was to bring alive from Hades the three-headed monster, Cerberus, who guarded the gates of the infernal regions. Hercules descended to Hades, and having obtained the permission of Pluto, dragged Cerberus by main force to the upper air.

Giants with furnaces. On his way home with the oxen of Geryon, Hercules rested for a short time near the cave of the giant Cacus. The giant stole some of the oxen, and to prevent discovery dragged them backward into the cave. The lowing of the oxen betrayed the robber to Hercules, who, in spite of the fire and smoke belched forth by Cacus, seized him in his arms and strangled him. See Church's *Stories from Virgil*, (The Macmillan Co.), Chapter XVIII.

THE FAMINE.

This selection is the twentieth division of *Hiawatha*. The tenth division "Hiawatha's Wooing" should be read, as it explains the early life of Minnehaha, reference to which is made in the text.

Longfellow notes in his diary, June 22, 1854: "I have at length hit upon a plan for a poem on the American Indians, which seems to me the right one and the only. It is to weave together their beautiful traditions into a whole. I have hit upon a measure, too, which I think the right and only one for such a theme." The poem was published in 1855. The measure is borrowed from the great Finnish epic the *Kalevala*.

When Longfellow wrote this poem he had no particular acquaintance with the Indians. He had seen one or two of them in Maine, had seen Black Hawk and his tribe in Boston, and had entertained an Ojibway chief in his house at Cambridge. He drew his information from the various books on the Indians, written by Schoolcraft.

P. 267, l. 1.—**Gitche Manito.** The Great Spirit, the Master of Life.

P. 268, l. 13.—**Pauguk.** Death.

P. 268, l. 30.—**Wahonomin.** An exclamation of lamentation.

P. 270, l. 21.—**Ponemah.** The hereafter.

THE DEATH OF THE FLOWERS.

This poem is a threnody, written by Bryant, in memory of his sister, who died of consumption at the early age of 22. "To this cherished companion of his childhood he erected one of the noblest monuments with which the memory of any American has yet been honored, in his lines on *The Death of the Flowers*. No one is to be

envied who can read the closing stanzas to-day without emotion."—*Warner.* Although the first four stanzas of the poem are in themselves beautiful and present a complete picture, yet here they are of importance only as leading up to the last stanza, which contains the main thought of the poem, and the reason for its being written. This fact should govern the teaching of the selection.

SAMUEL JOHNSON'S REPENTANCE.

This selection is taken, with considerable omissions, from *Samuel Johnson*, in Hawthorne's *Biographical Stories.* See "Johnson" in "Biographical Sketches," in this volume.

ALICE BRAND.

This ballad occurs in the fourth canto of *The Lady of the Lake.* It is sung by the old minstrel, Allan Bane, for the purpose of cheering his mistress, Ellen Douglas, who was lamenting that her father had gone to Sterling to surrender himself to the king. See Book IV., page 14. The poem is founded upon an old Danish ballad called "The Elfin Gray." The poem is an endeavor to imitate the style and flavor of the older English ballads.

P. 277, l. 2.—**Mavis and merle.** Thrush and blackbird.

P. 277, l. 3.—**In cry.** Technical hunting term for the baying of the hounds.

P. 277, l, 7.—**Hold by.** Remain in. **Wold.** An open tract of country.

P. 277, l. 8.—**Wont.** Are accustomed.

P. 277, l. 14.—**Glaive.** Sword.

P. 277, l. 17.—**Pall.** Fine purple cloth.

P. 277, l. 23.—**Darkling.** In the dark.

P. 278, l. 1.—**Vair.** A rich variegated fur, probably ermine.

P. 278, l. 2.—**Sheen.** Bright, beautiful. **Crimson.** Crimson cloth.

P. 278, l. 3.—**Russet.** "A coarse brown rustic dress, and the material of such dress without special regard to its color."—*Stuart.*

P. 278, l. 13.—**Elfin king.** The king of the Elves or Fairys, beings not absolutely malevolent, but rather peevish and repining and envious of the happiness of mankind.

P. 278, l. 14.—**Woned.** Dwelt, lived.

P. 278, l. 18.—**Moonlight circle's screen.** The trees which were being cut down formed a shade for the circle in which the fairies conducted their midnight revels. These rings of grass, of a brighter green than the grass they enclose, are very common in meadows and are supposed to be made by the feet of the fairies as they dance in a circle.

P. 278, l. 22.—**Fatal green.** "As the Men of Peace wore green habits they were supposed to take offence when any mortals ventured to assume their favorite color."—*Scott.*

P. 278, l. 24.—**Christened man.** "The Elves were supposed greatly to enjoy the privileges acquired by Christian initiation, and they gave to those mortals who had fallen into their power a certain precedence, founded upon this advantageous distinction."—*Scott.*

P. 278, l. 25.—**Cross or sign.** The sign of the cross, the symbol of Christianity, was supposed to be a protection against evil influence.

P. 279, l. 8.—**Grisly.** Fearful, terrible.

P. 279, l. 16.—**Kindly blood.** The blood of thine own kin.

P. 279, l. 29.—**Bridle ringing.** The bridle was hung with bells.

P. 280, l. 6.—**Inconstant shape.** Scott notes the fantastic and illusory nature of the pleasure and splendor of the Fairies.

P. 280, l. 12.—**Twixt life and death.** Many persons were supposed to have died who were in reality transported to Fairy land.

P. 280, l. 14.—**Wist I.** If I knew.

P. 280, l. 16.—**Mortal mould.** Human form.

P. 280, l. 24.—**Mould.** Earth, land.

P. 280, l. 25.—**Dunfermline.** The abbey of the Grey Friars, in Dunfermline, a town of Fife, 15 miles from Edinburgh.

FROM "EVANGELINE."

This selection forms the first division of the second part of *Evangeline.* It would be well to read in this connection Chapter VIII. of Parkman's *Montcalm and Wolfe* for facts connected with the removal of the Acadians. *Evangeline* is much better as poetry than as history.

Evangeline was the daughter of Benedict Bellefontaine, the wealthiest farmer of Grand Pré, the beautiful Acadian village on the shores of the Basin of Minas, in Nova Scotia. Here she dwelt with her father, in peace and contentment, a dutiful daughter, a thrifty housewife, and beloved by all in the village. From her earliest childhood, she had

been the companion of Gabriel Lajeunesse, the son of Basil, the blacksmith, her father's old and trusty friend. This friendship had ripened into love and they were formally betrothed in the presence of Rene Leblanc, the notary. During the evening of the betrothal, Basil mentioned that English ships had that day appeared in the Basin and expressed the fear that they had not come for a peaceful purpose.

The next day, according to summons, the Acadian farmers met in the church, where a strong guard at once took them prisoners. They were informed that their refusal to take the oath of allegiance to England was to be punished by banishment from Acadia. A tumult at once arose, which was calmed only by the efforts of Father Felician, the village priest, who exorted them to peace and forgiveness. In the meantime, Evangeline was consumed with fear and anxiety, but spent her time comforting the trembling women. The next day the men were taken from the church to the shore, where the work of embarkation began. Here Benedict died, and was buried on the sea-shore, while to complete Evangeline's misery, she and Gabriel were carried into separate ships. The village was burned, and the ships sailed away.

But Evangeline was faithful to her love for Gabriel. The second part of the poem, of which the selection in the text is the first section, is taken up with her long, wearisome search, a search which lasted for many years and took her to all parts of the continent. She heard frequently of her lover, but never succeeded in coming up with him. At last, worn out, she became a hospital nurse in Philadelphia. Entering a ward one morning, during the plague, a new patient caught her eye. It was Gabriel. He died as he recognised her. The lovers were buried together in the little Catholic church and in Philadelphia.

A Sister to Evangeline, by Charles G. D. Roberts, a novel covering this period, may be used with profit in studying the selection.

P. 281, l. 1.—**Grand Pre.** "Large meadow," the home of the Acadians. See *Evangeline*, Part I., lines [illegible].

P. 281, l. 3.—**Nation.** About 3,000 Acadians were deported.

Household Gods. A reference to the Lares and Penates of the Romans. Each household had its own gods to whom a special room was devoted, and whom they worshipped in private. Here the meaning is "their most precious possessions."

P. 281, l. 4.—**Without an end.** A very large proportion of the Acadians found their way back to Nova Scotia, where their descendants still live.

Example in story. Not to be compared to the treatment of the Hugenots in France, the Moors in Spain or the Jews in Portugal.

P. 281, l. 10.—**Father of waters.** A translation of the Indian name, Mississippi.

P. 281, l. 12.—**Mammoth.** A gigantic animal of pre-historic times, resembling the elephant.

P. 282, l. 11.—**He.** Gabriel.

P. 282, l. 18.—**Coureurs-des-Bois.** "Runners of the Woods." Men engaged in trading with the Indians.

P. 282, l. 20.—**Voyageur.** The boatmen who carry the furs and supplies along the rivers. **Louisiana** was at this time a colony of France.

P. 282, l. 24.—**Notary.** René Leblanc, the notary, is one of the prominent characters in Part I. of the poem.

P. 282, l. 26.—**St. Catherine's tresses.** St. Catherine is the name of two virgin saints of the church, Catherine of Sienna and Catherine of Alexandria. On these saints' days it was the custom for maidens to go to the church and braid the tresses on the images of the saints. As only maidens could take part in this ceremony, the expression here means "to remain unmarried."

P. 283, l. 20.—**Muse.** An invocation to the Muse, after the manner of the classical writers, for assistance in writing his poetry. See Book IV., page 23.

SONGS OF THE NIGHT.

This selection is remarkable, not only for the thought, but also because of the beauty of the language. Blanco White's sonnet *To-Night*, Book V., page 312, may be read in this connection.

P. 284, l. 17.—**Pestilence, etc.** *Psalms* xci., 6.

P. 284, l. 18.—**Terror, etc.** *Psalms* xci., 5.

P. 285, l. 23.—**God's Glory.** *Job* xxxviii., 7.

HYMN TO THE NIGHT.

This poem was "composed in the summer of 1839, while sitting at my chamber window, on one of the balmiest nights of the year, I endeavored to reproduce the impression of the hour and scene." Note

carefully the imagery of the poem and the lesson the poet seeks to impress. This poem should be memorized.

P. 286, l. 1.—**Night.** Among the ancients Night was worshipped as a goddess. She is usually represented as mounted in a chariot, covered with a long black cloak and wearing a veil bespangled with stars.

P. 286, l. 5.—**Spell of might.** Some powerful influence.

P. 286, l. 21.—**Orestes.** Agamemnon, the father of Orestes had been murdered by his wife, Clytemnestra. To avenge the death of his father, Orestes killed his mother. For this crime the gods sent the Furies to pursue him. They gave him no rest either night or day, until the crime was fully expiated. His prayer during his continuous torment was *peace*. See Church's *Stories from the Greek Tragedians*, (The Macmillan Co.), Chapters VIII., IX., X. and XI.

ALADDIN, OR THE WONDERFUL LAMP.

The original of this story is from *The Arabian Nights Entertainment*. The version here given is that printed in *The Heart of Oak Books*, No. III., taken from *The Child's Own Book*.

A FOREST CALM.

This poem is a portion of *The Recollection*; a stanza at the beginning and one at the end make up the complete poem. "*The Recollection* is one of two companion poems addressed 'To Jane,' written in 1822, and published in a fragmentary form as one poem in 1829, in their present form in 1839. The other poem is entitled *The Invitation*, and anticipates the delight of that excursion to the pine forest of the Cascine, near Pisa, of which the present poem is the recollection. The 'Jane' to whom this, and several other later poems of Shelley's are addressed, was the wife of his friend Captain Williams, who shared Shelley's last residence and untimely fate. *The Recollection* has the note of regret, and yearning and dissatisfaction with the present, so characteristic of the poet."—*Alexander*.

P. 307, l. 2.—**Ocean.** The forest lies along the Mediterranean.

P. 308, l. 31.—**Elysian.** Heavenly. Elysium was the abode of the blessed.

THE ESCAPE OF QUEEN MARY.

This selection is made up from the 35th Chapter of *The Abbot*. The story is a continuation of *The Monastery*, and relates the adventures of Roland Graeme, the adopted son of Sir Halbert Glendenning, who afterwards turns out to be Roland Avenal, the heir of the noble border family of that name. The chief interest of the novel, however, centres around the personality of Queen Mary, and the various attempts made to effect her escape from Lochleven castle, where she was imprisoned by order of the Council. The present selection deals with the successful outcome of the final plot.

P. 309, l. 1.—**Roland.** Roland Graeme, the page of the Queen, placed in his position by the Regent, but who had been won over to the side of Mary.

P. 309, l. 4.—**Kinross.** A small village on the shores of Loch Leven.

P. 309, l. 21.—**St. Elmo.** Electric lights, seen playing about the masts of ships during a storm. They presage fair weather.

P. 310, l. 3.—**Fleming.** Mary Fleming, the chief personal attendant upon the Queen.

P. 310, l. 24.—**Catherine.** A daughter of the noble house of Seyton, and one of the Queen's attendants. She afterwards marries Roland Graeme.

P. 311, l. 1.—**New retainer.** During the day a new man-at-arms had arrived, purporting to have been sent by the Lord of the Castle, Sir William Douglas. He was in reality, Edward Glendenning, the Abbot of St. Mary's, who had dropped his sacred calling for the moment, to venture his life on behalf of the Queen.

P. 311, l. 7.—**Our Lady.** The Virgin Mary.

P. 311, l. 9.—**Tutelar saint.** Guardian saint.

P. 311, l. 24.—**Poisoned.** An attempt had been made a short time before this, by the fanatical steward of the castle to poison the Queen. Fortunately the attempt miscarried.

P. 312, l. 22.—**Lady Lochleven.** Lady Douglas, the mistress of Lochleven castle. She was the mother of the regent, Murray.

P. 312, l. 29.—**Tasted.** Since the attempt to poison the Queen, the lady had insisted on tasting all dishes before they were eaten, in order to guard against any such attempts in future.

P. 313, l. 9.—**Corpse-candles.** The will o' the wisp.

P. 313, l. 17.—**Forged keys.** Roland had, with great industry, manufactured a set of false keys as nearly as possible like the real ones.

P. 315, l. 10.—**Henry Seyton.** The brother of Catherine, whom he greatly resembled. He was accustomed to make use of this likeness, and disguised himself as a girl. While in this guise, he had on one or two occasions encountered Roland, with the result that he did not look with favor upon the page.

P. 318, l. 19.—**Kelpie.** The water spirit which generally appeared in the form of a horse.

P. 318, l. 29.—**George Douglas.** The grandson of the Lady of Lochleven. He was a victim to a passionate love for the Queen and had assisted in a former attempt to rescue her from captivity, an attempt which was discovered, and resulted in his banishment from the castle. He was killed at Langside, while defending the Queen.

THE BALLAD OF THE "CLAMPHERDOWN."

This poem is taken from *Ballads and Barrack-Room Ballads.* It is Kipling's protest against the ironclad warships. The courage of the English seamen is contrasted with the great iron machines in which they are compelled to fight. If ever England is conquered on the sea, it will be because her seamen cannot get to close quarters with the enemy, but are compelled to fight their battle in an "eight-day clock" with the foe miles away. The vividness with which the helplessness of the ship is brought out, and the splendid vigor of the last stanzas should be pointed out. A picture of a modern warship cleared for action would very much assist in explaining this poem.

P. 320, l. 13.—**Hotchkiss gun.** A light rapid-firing gun, very light and rapid as compared with the hundred-ton gun.

P. 321, l. 9.—**Thresher's ire.** A kind of shark, so called from the enormous length of the upper division of the tail, with which it threshes the water. It is the inveterate enemy of the whale, and frequently, in company with the sword-fish, attacks that animal.

P. 321, l. 16.—**Bold A. B.** Able-bodied seaman.

P. 321, l. 25.—**Nordenfelt.** A modern rapid-firing gun.

P. 321, l. 29.—**Sharpnel.** Shells.

P. 321, l. 17.—**Conning-tower.** The pilot-house of an ironclad.

THE BATTLE OF LANDEN.

This selection is taken from Macaulay's *History of England*, Vol. IV., Chapter XX. It would be well for the teacher to read Chapters XIX. and XX. in full, as in these is given a complete account of the continental operations of William. An admirable summing up of these operations is to be found in Traill's *William the Third*, in *Twelve English Statesmen series*, (The Macmillan Co.).

William had succeeded early in 1689, in spite of almost overwhelming difficulties in forming a confederacy against his inveterate enemy, the French king, Lewis, or Louis XIV. The principal members of the confederacy were England, Spain, the Austrian and German Empires and Holland. The League had held together, in spite of repeated reverses, for about three years when, in the spring of 1693, William took command of the allied forces, and opened the campaign. He found himself opposed to overwhelming forces, but owing to the timidity of Lewis this advantage was not pressed. Lewis finally withdrew, leaving Luxemburg with 80,000 men to oppose the confederates. The French general, by a series of brilliant strategic movements, succeeded in inducing William, not only to abandon a strong position, but also to weaken his force by detaching 20,000 men on an unnecessary service. This left William with but 50,000 men to oppose the 80,000 of Luxemburg. Under these circumstances the king was attacked by the French, with the result related in the extract. The battle was indecisive, as the French victory was not followed up, and in a few weeks William was as strong as ever. The loss on each side at Landen was about 10,000 men.

Macaulay's primary object here is, of course, to give a description of the Battle of Landen, but the end in view from the beginning and towards which the whole description is directed is the endeavor to present in the clearest light the personal courage, military skill, and greatness of heart even under defeat of William. Note how each step in the narrative tends to bring out one or other of these points, and how the details are selected with this object in view. The effective use of contrast and climax might also be noted. Macaulay is, however, a master of the art of narration; and special stress should be laid on this point. If the class are ready for work of this kind, the lesson affords excellent material for the study of sentence structure.

P. 323, l. 1.—**King.** William III. **Hasty retreat.** William had

been outwitted by Luxemburg, and had to try to make the best of a bad position.

P. 323, l. 7.—**Palisades.** A fence made of stakes, driven firmly into the ground.

P. 323, l. 10.—**Outnumbering.** The French had 30,000 men more than the Confederates.

P. 323, l. 14.—**Lewis.** Louis XIV., king of France, who reigned for seventy-two years. He ascended the French throne when Charles I. was King of England and died during the reign of George I. France saw the height of power as well as the depths of misery during this period. The latter part of the reign of Lewis was a succession of defeats and reverses for the French arms.

P. 323, l. 16.—**Allies.** See Introduction.

P. 323, l. 24.—**Low Countries.** The name usually given to the Netherlands, or Holland and Belgium, on account of their situation.

P. 324, l. 4.—**Saint Simon.** A celebrated French writer and diplomatist, born in 1675. He entered the army at an early age and took part in the battle of Landen. He was employed on various diplomatic missions in the service of France. He died in 1755. He is known principally by his *Memoirs*.

P. 324, l. 8.—**Luxemburg.** One of the greatest of the French generals, born at Paris in 1628. He early entered the army and soon displayed extraordinary talent. He received one important command after another and distinguished himself in all. He was made a marshal of France in 1675. When the confederacy under William was formed, Luxemburg was made Commander-in-Chief of the French forces. He was successful at Fleurus, Steinkirk and Landen. He died in 1695. After his death the French armies gained no more victories against the Confederates.

P. 324, l. 19.—**Montchevreuil.** A distinguished French general of long experience. He was killed in this battle.

P. 324, l. 20.—**Berwick.** James Fitz-James, Duke of Berwick, was the illegitimate son of James II. and Arabella Churchill, the sister of the Duke of Marlborough. He commanded the Irish forces when James made his attempt to win that country. After the disastrous close of this war, he entered the service of Lewis, in whose army he soon attained high rank. He was killed at Philipsburg in 1734.

P. 324, l. 27.—**White Cockade.** The emblem of the house of Stuart, and hence of the Jacobites.

P. 324, l. 31.—**George Churchill.** A brother of Marlborough and uncle of Berwick.

P. 325, l. 6.—**Close domestic ties.** William was the son of Mary Stuart, the daughter of Charles I. and was consequently the nephew of James II. and cousin of Berwick. In addition, William was married to his cousin Mary, the daughter of James II. and half-sister of Berwick.

P. 325, l. 7.—**Inexpiable injuries.** William had been instrumental in depriving Berwick's father of the throne of England, and was now engaged in a war against the friends and protectors of James.

P. 325, l. 16.—**Bourbon.** Lewis, Duke of Bourbon, one of the princes of the royal blood, was at this time a mere boy, but distinguished himself for personal courage both at Steinkirk and at Landen.

P. 326, l. 7.—**Household troops.** The flower of the French army, the "Old Guard" of an earlier date. Under the leadership of men like Conde and Turenne, they had never known defeat.

P. 326, l. 8.—**Steinkirk.** In 1692, the Allies under William attempted to surprise the French under Luxemburg at Steinkirk. The surprise, owing to the broken nature of the ground, was a failure, and the two armies were soon engaged in a hand to hand encounter. The British troops under Count Solmes were in the van, Mackay's division leading. After a desperate resistance, these troops were cut in pieces by the Household brigade of Lewis, led by the royal princes. The disaster was blamed on Solmes, who, through either cowardice or incapacity, did not send aid to those engaged. The Allies were defeated and driven back with great loss.

P. 326, l. 17.—**Duke of Chartres.** The son of the Duke of Orleans and nephew of the King. He distinguished himself at Steinkirk, although only a boy of 16. He held an important command at Landen.

P. 326, l. 24.—**Solmes.** An experienced Dutch officer, who commanded the Dutch contingent of the English army in Ireland. He distinguished himself at the Boyne, and was made commander-in-chief in Ireland. His conduct at Steinkirk brought upon him the hatred of every officer and man in the English army, a hatred which was not lessened by his harsh and overbearing manner. He was killed at Landen.

P. 326, l. 29.—**Duke of Ormond.** James Butler, Duke of Ormond, was one of the first who sided with the Prince of Orange. He commanded the Life-guards at the Boyne, and accompanied William in his continental wars. He was successively Viceroy of Ireland and chief in

command of the British army in Flanders; but being impeached for breach of duty, he fled to France and joined the standard of the Pretender. He died in 1745.

P. 327, l. 4.—**Ruvigny.** The Marquis de Ruvigny was a Frenchman, and lived in that country for the first 40 years of his life. Being a Hugenot, he was forced to flee from France. He joined the Prince of Orange, commanded the Hugenot brigade in Ireland, and was created Earl of Galway for his services. During the war of the Spanish Succession, he commanded the British forces in the Peninsula, but was recalled on account of his ill-success. He died in 1720.

P. 327, l. 10.—**Treason, persecution.** He was persecuted as a Hugenot, and forced thereby to commit treason by fighting against his native country.

P. 327, l. 20.—**Talmash.** A leading English general, second only to his great rival, Marlborough. He was distinguished as well for personal courage as for military sagacity. He was killed during an unsuccessful attack on Brest in 1694. The treachery of Marlborough was responsible for this disaster.

P. 327, l. 29.—**Ensign of the Garter.** The order of the Garter, originated by Edward III., is one of the most ancient orders in Europe. Only Princes of the royal blood, Sovereigns of foreign countries, and the higher nobility are admitted to its ranks. The emblem of the order is a dark blue ribbon, edged with gold, bearing the motto of the order in golden letters, with a buckle and pendant of gold. It is worn on the left leg, below the knee; hence the name Garter. The ensign of the order is an eight-pointed silver star, having in its centre the Cross of St. George, encircled by the garter.

P. 328, l. 3.—**Blue-riband.** In connection with the order of the Garter there are various decorations worn on the person. Among others is the "lesser George"—the figure of St. George on horseback encountering the Dragon—pendant to a dark blue riband, hung over the left shoulder. It is this riband that is referred to here.

P. 328, l. 5.—**Chelsea hospital.** An asylum for disabled or superannuated soldiers, established in 1609, and supported by government funds. The inmates, who are called pensioners, wear a special uniform and are under complete military discipline.

P. 328, l. 6.—**Galway's horse.** An Irish cavalry regiment in the service of William.

P. 327, l. 12.—**Eye-witness.** Note the skill with which Macaulay

here introduces direct personal testimony in order to strengthen the impression.

P. 328, l. 28.—**Ajax.** Hector, the leader of the Trojan armies, challenged the bravest of the Greeks to meet him in single combat. The challenge was accepted by Ajax, the son of Telamon, one of the bravest of the Greek heroes. The combat progressed with varying fortunes for some time

> Then Ajax seized the fragment of a rock,
> Applied each nerve, and swinging round on high,
> With force tempestuous let the ruin fly;
> The huge stone, thundering, through his buckler broke,
> His slacken'd knees received the numbing stroke;
> Great Hector falls extended on the field,
> His bulk supporting on the shatter'd shield.

The story of the combat is given in the seventh book of Homer's *Iliad.*

P. 328, l. 29.—**Horatius.** Book IV., page 359.

P. 328, l. 31.—**Richard.** Richard I., Coeur-de-Lion, of England. The personal bravery of the King commanded the respect of even his Saracen foes.

P. 329, l. 2.—**Robert Bruce.** While Bruce, immediately before battle was joined at Bannockburn, was riding in front of his army, mounted on a small pony and armed only with his battle-axe, an English knight, Sir Henry Bohun, fully armed, rushed upon him. Bruce swerved from the attack, and as the knight passed him, crushed his head with his battle-axe, killing him immediately.

P. 329, l. 11.—**Exposed.** Abandoned to die. By the laws of Lycurgus, in Sparta, weak, sickly children were at once put to death.

P. 329, l. 13.—**Quiet cloister.** Would have become monks.

P. 329, l. 19.—**Hunchbacked dwarf.** Luxemburg. "His features were frightfully harsh, his stature was diminutive; a huge and pointed lump rose on his back. His constitution was feeble and sickly."—*Macaulay.*

P. 329, l. 21.—**Asthmatic skeleton.** William was afflicted with constitutional asthma. At one time "his physicians pronounced it impossible that he could live until the end of the year. His face was so ghastly that he could hardly be recognized. Those who had to transact business with him were shocked to hear him gasping for breath, and coughing until the tears ran down his cheeks."—*Macaulay.*

THE GREAT STONE FACE.

This selection is taken from *The Snow-Image and Other Twice-Told Tales*, published in 1851. The following extract from Hawthorne's diary for 1839 gives the germ of the story: "The semblance of a human face to be formed on the side of a mountain, or in the fracture of a small stone by a *lusus naturæ*. The face is an object of curiosity for years or for centuries, and by and by a boy is born, whose features gradually assume the aspect of that portrait. At some critical juncture the resemblance is found to be perfect. A prophecy might be connected." Such a face does actually exist in the Franconia Notch, called the Old Man of the Mountain, or the Profile.

The story teaches the same lesson as *The Diamond and the Star*, Part II., page 82—"We grow to be like that which we reverence and keep continually before us." This has a bearing on one's reading, one's companionship, one's environment. The attainment of an ideal is not primarily a matter of birth or wealth, but the result of careful, faithful, honest effort.

P. 331, l. 7.—**Titan.** The Titans were monsters of the ancient world, of gigantic size and horrible aspect.

P. 341, l. 31.—**Home of Washington.** George Washington's home was at Mount Vernon on the Potomac.

HORATIUS.

This poem is one of *The Lays of Ancient Rome*, published in 1842. In the *Lays* Macaulay assumes the truth of the theory that the early history of Rome, as it has come down to us, is entirely mythical, and owes its preservation to the popular ballads of the day. He has endeavored to reproduce the style and spirit of the original ballads supposed to be sung by the Roman peasants. Two of these, *Horatius* and *The Battle of Lake Regillus*, are in *The Victorian Readers*.

"The following ballad (*Horatius*) is supposed to have been made about 120 years after the war which it celebrates, and just before the taking of Rome by the Gauls. The author seems to have been an honest citizen, proud of the military glory of his country, sick of the dispute of factions, and much given to pining after good old times, which had never really existed. The allusion, however, to the partial

manner in which the public lands were allotted could proceed only from a plebeian; and the allusion to the fraudulent sale of spoils marks the date of the poem, and showed that the poet shared in the general discontent with which the proceedings of Camillus, after the taking of Veii, were regarded."—*Macaulay.*

The story of the poem deals with the attempt of Porsena and the Etruscans to compel the restoration to his kingdom of the banished Tarquin. Lucius Tarquinius, by his tyranny, had made himself odious to the Romans. A frightful crime committed by Sextus, the eldest son of Lucius, roused the Romans to desperation, and the family with their adherents were banished. Tarquin immediately began to take steps to interest the neighboring princes in his misfortunes. After the failure of a plot within the city itself, he induced the people of Tarquinii and Veii, to take up his cause. In the battle that ensued the Romans were victorious, a supernatural voice during the night declaring this to be the case, as the Romans had lost one man less than the enemy. The third attempt, with the assistance of Porsena, is related in the text.

Church's *Stories from Livy*, (The Macmillan Co.), is a very useful book to read in connection with these *Lays*. It should be in every schoolroom. An excellent map, showing the location of the places mentioned in the text, is given in *Lays of Ancient Rome*, edited by J. H. Flather, (The Cambridge Press).

Attention might be called to the following points, among others, in the teaching of this poem: The simplicity and clearness of the narrative, the fine vigor of the verse, the vivid descriptive power, the use of simile and descriptive epithets, the manner in which the multitude of proper names is used, the use of specific terms and particular instances, the use of repetition, alliteration, and sound echoing sense, but above all the splendid patriotism displayed and its reception by the populace.

P. 359, l. 1.—**Lars.** An Etruscan title corresponding to our word "lord" or chief. It was usually applied to the first-born, a younger son being called Aruns.

Clusium. One of the twelve cities of the Etruscan League, now known as Chiusi, situated on the river Clanis, a tributary of the Tiber.

Nine Gods. The Etruscans worshipped nine great gods; that is, those who had the power of hurling thunderbolts. These were called by the Romans "Dii Novenselis," or "new gods."

P. 359, l. 2.—**House of Tarquin.** The Tarquins were descended from Demaratus, a nobleman of Corinth, who settled at Tarquinii, in

Etruria, and married a noble lady of that place. His son, Lucumo, succeeded to his father's property, but being an alien, was excluded from all political power in his native city. He accordingly removed to Rome, assumed the name of Lucius Tarquinius, and soon became the king of his adopted city. He was assassinated after a reign of 38 years, and was succeeded by his adopted son, Servius Tullius. This king was in turn assassinated by a grandson of Lucius, who ascended the throne and reigned as Lucius Tarquinius, surnamed *Superbus*, or *The Proud*. It was he who was banished from Rome, and in whose favor Porsena marched against the city.

P. 359, l. 3.—**Trysting-day.** A day of meeting agreed upon beforehand.

P. 359, l. 7.—**Shame.** The sentiment here expressed is of course that of Lars Porsena, not that of the poet who is reciting the Lay.

P. 359, l. 9.—**Amain.** Strenuously, as quickly as they can.

P. 359, l. 12.—**Purple.** The permanent epithet attached to mountains seen in the distance. "On purple peaks a deeper shade descending."—*Scott.*

P. 359, l. 13.—**Volaterrae.** One of the 12 cities of the Etruscan league now known as Volterra. It was built on a lofty hill 1700 feet high, about 5 miles from the river Cæcina, and 15 miles from the sea. It was so strongly fortified as to be almost impregnable. It was, in consequence, fabled to have been constructed by the hands of the Giants. Similarly Poseidon and Apollo were supposed to have constructed the walls of Troy.

P. 359, l. 15.—**Populonia.** The principal seaport of Etruria, situated on a promontory opposite the island of Elba. The mountains of Sardinia are easily visible from Populonia.

P. 359, l. 17.—**Pisse.** Now Pisa, on the Arno.

Queen. In reference to its commercial supremacy.

P. 359, l. 18.—**Massilia.** Now Marseilles, at the mouth of the Rhone.

Triremes. Ancient ships or galleys, propelled by oars arranged in banks one above the other.

Fair-haired slaves. These slaves were obtained from the interior of France, and from among the German tribes. An extensive slave trade was carried on by Massilia.

P. 359, l. 19.—**Clanis.** See note on page 359, line 1.

P. 359, l. 20.—**Cortona.** An ancient Etruscan city, situated on

a high hill about 9 miles north of Lake Thrasymene. The ancient walls, constructed of blocks of gigantic size, still remain.

P. 359, l. 21.—**Auser** An Etrurian river flowing into the sea, near the Arno.

P. 359, l. 22.—**Ciminian hill.** A mountain range in Etruria, running south-west from the Tiber to the sea-coast.

P. 359, l. 23.—**Clitumnus.** A small tributary of the Tiber, flowing through a very fertile region, famed as an excellent pasturing ground for cattle.

P. 359, l. 24.—**Volsinian mere.** The mere or lake on which the Etruscan town of Volsinii was situated. A large portion of it was swampy and filled with reeds.

P. 360, l. 1.—**But now.** All the men of military age have accompanied Porsena.

P. 360, l. 3.—**Milk-white steer.** The ancients fabled that oxen, after bathing in the Clitumnus, immediately became white. The cattle from this stream were usually employed in the sacrifices to the gods.

P. 360, l. 5.—**Arretium.** One of the twelve Etruscan cities, situated in the upper valley of the Arno. It was noted for its corn and wine.

P. 360, l. 6.—**Umbro.** Now the Ombrone, flowing between the Arno and the Tiber.

P. 360, l. 7.—**Luna.** A city on the left bank of the Macra, celebrated for its wine and cheese.

Must. Unfermented grape juice.

P. 360, l. 9.—**Thirty chosen prophets.** "The religion of the Etruscans was a system of 'Shamanism'; in other words, it sought to ascertain the will of the gods by the interpretation of outward signs, which might be furnished by the flight of birds, the direction of lightning, the entrails of victims, or in any other way."—*Taylor.* It was customary before undertaking any important expedition thus to consult the divine powers. Here the prophets endeavored to anticipate the future by interpreting the sacred books.

P. 360, l. 12.—**Traced from the right.** The sacred books, prepared by the wise men in the early days of the tribe, and handed down from generation to generation, were transcribed on prepared linen, and were written from right to left, as is the case with the Hebrew and Chinese.

P. 360, l. 14.—**Go forth.** The answer of the gods is favorable; Porsena will be successful.

P. 360, l. 15.—**Royal dome.** The palace of Porsena at Clusium.

P. 360, l. 16.—**Nurscia's altars.** Nurscia was one of the great goddesses of the Etruscans. The allusion here is to the custom of the depositing certain of the spoils of a conquered city around the altar of the protecting divinity.

Golden shields. During the reign of Numa Pompilius, while the Roman people were suffering from a pestilence, there fell from heaven a golden shield as a sign of the favor of the gods. Upon the preservation of this shield depended the safety of Rome, so Numa in order to make any attempt at removing it exceeding difficult, had eleven other shields constructed, exactly like the original, so that it was impossible to tell the one from the other. These shields were kept in the temple of Vesta, and a special order of priests was entrusted with their charge. These priests were 12 in number and were called Salii. On the first day of March in each year these shields were carried in solemn procession around the walls of the city, accompanied by the priests, dancing and singing hymns in honor of the god of war, Mars.

P. 360, l. 17.—**Tale.** Full number, quota.

P. 360, l. 19.—**Sutrium.** A city on an isolated hill about 32 miles north of Rome.

P. 360, l. 22.—**Banished Roman.** A large number of the Romans had accompanied the Tarquins into exile.

Stout ally. Several of the cities of the Latin League sent troops to the assistance of Porsena.

P. 360, l. 24.—**Mamilius.** A Roman who bore sway in Tusculum, a city situated on a spur of the Alban hills, about 15 miles from Rome. In order to increase his influence Tarquin had married his daughter to Mamilius, and when banished from Rome, took refuge with his son-in-law. Mamilius commanded the Latin troops in the service of Porsena.

P. 360, l. 25.—**Yellow Tiber.** So called from reddish-yellow soil at the bottom, which gives the river its yellow appearance.

P. 360, l. 26.—**Champaign.** Open country, plain.

P. 361, l. 2.—**Skins.** Bottles made of skins.

P. 361, l. 6.—**Rock Tarpeian.** Tarpeia, the daughter of the governor of the citadel of Rome, offered to betray the city into the hands of the Sabines, who were besieging it, provided they would give her that which they carried on their left arm, meaning of course, their gold

bracelets. The Sabines consented and were admitted into the city. As they entered the Sabine king removed his shield from his left arm and threw it upon Tarpeia. His followers imitated his example, and the traitress was crushed to death. She was buried in the Capitol and the rock was from that time called by her name.

Wan burghers. The citizens were pale with watching and anxiety.

P. 361, l. 7.—**Blazing villages.** A sign that the war had begun.

P. 361, l. 8.—**Fathers of the City.** The members of the Senate or governing body at Rome. They were called "Patres," or Fathers of the State. They were 300 in number at this time.

Sat. Were assembled in council.

P. 361, l. 10.—**Tuscan bands.** Tuscany is the modern name of Etruria.

P. 361, l. 11.—**Crustumerium.** A Latin city, near Rome.

P. 361, l. 12.—**Verbenna, Astur.** Two famous chiefs of the Etruscans. They are mentioned later in the poem.

Ostia. The original port of Rome, at the mouth of the Tiber.

Janiculum. A very strong fortress at the top of the Janiculan hill, situated on the right bank of the Tiber, exactly opposite the Palatine hill.

P. 361, l. 14.—**I wis.** Certainly. The word is an adverb here.

P. 361, l. 16.—**Consul.** After the expulsion of the kings, the executive power was entrusted to two magistrates called Consuls. These held office for one year. Each consul was attended by twelve officers called "lictors," each of whom carried a bundle of rods, within which was an axe, as a symbol that the consuls possessed the power of scourging and putting to death. Age most probably determined the seniority of the consuls. The two consuls at this time were Publius Valerius and Titus Lucretius; the former is the consul referred to in the poem.

P. 361, l. 17.—**Girded.** The garment referred to was the toga, a loose outer-robe, which, for convenience in walking, was gathered up round the waist.

P. 361, l. 18.—**The River Gate.** The Porta Flumentana, directly opposite Janiculum.

P. 361, l. 20.—**Roundly.** In plain terms.

The bridge. The Pons Sublicius, one of the oldest bridges across the Tiber, built to connect with Janiculum.

P. 362, l. 5.—**Twelve fair cities.** The twelve cities of the

Etruscan league. Each city was independent, but all were united in matters of common interest.

P. 362, l. 7.—**Umbrian, Gaul.** The Etruscans had frequently conquered Umbria and Cisalpine Gaul. The former of these Provinces was separated from Etruria by the Tiber, the latter lay on the other side of the Appenines, south of the Po.

P. 362, l. 9.—**Port.** Carriage.

Lucumo. An Etruscan chieftain. Each of the twelve cities had its own Lucumo.

P. 362, l. 10.—**Cilnius.** The head of one of the princely Etruscan families.

P. 362, l. 11.—**Four-fold shield.** Composed of four layers of ox-hide.

Brand. Sword.

P. 362, l. 12.—**Tolumnius.** Unknown outside of this poem.

Hold—Cortona. See page 359, line 20.

Thrasymene. A lake in Etruria, famous in Roman history as the scene of the great victory, gained during the second Punic war, by the Carthaginians under Hannibal over the Roman legions.

P. 362, l. 13.—**War.** Army.

P. 362, l. 16.—**Sextus.** The eldest son of Tarquin. See introduction.

P. 362, l. 25.—**Captain of the Gate.** In charge of the guard at the River gate.

P. 362, l. 28.—**Ashes—Temple.** His country and his religion.

P. 363, l. 2.—**Holy maidens.** The Vestal Virgins, or priestesses of Vesta, the protectress of the home. There were six of these priestesses, who were chosen from the chief Patrician families of Rome. Their duty was to keep constantly burning the sacred fire on the altar of Vesta. The station was a very honorable and conspicuous one, and was much sought after.

P. 363, l. 8 and 10.—**Ramnian—Titian.** "Niebuhr's supposition that each of the three defenders of the bridge was the representative of one of the three Patrician tribes, is both ingenious and probable."—*Macaulay.* These were the Ramnes (Latins), Tities (Sabines), and Luceres (Etruscans).

P. 363, l. 21.—**Tribunes.** After the expulsion of the Tarquins the city was ruled by the Patrician families. Their tyranny at length became so odious that the Plebians, or common people, left the city

in a body and retired to the Sacred Mount. A compromise was effected by which it was agreed that magistrates, called Tribunes, should be elected annually to protect the interests of the Plebs. Their persons were sacred and they were empowered to place a veto upon any law which they considered to be detrimental to the interests of the Plebeians.

P. 363, l. 24.—**Harness.** Armor.

P. 364, l. 6.—**Measured tread.** Regular step.

P. 364, l. 12.—**Tifernum.** Modern Biferno.

P. 364, l. 13.—**Ilva.** The island of Elba, celebrated for its iron mines.

P. 364, l. 16.—**Nequinum.** A strongly fortified town, situated on a lofty hill on the left bank of the Nar, or Nera, in Umbria. The Nar was noted for its sulphurous waters and pale color.

Lowers. Frowns, threatens.

P. 364, l. 21.—**Falerii.** An Etruscan city near Mount Soracte.

P. 364, l. 22.—**Urgo.** Modern Gorgona, an island in the bay of Pisa, about 25 miles from Leghorn.

P. 364, l. 24.—**Cosa.** Now known as Ansedonia, an Etruscan town on the sea coast.

P. 364, l. 25.—**Albinia.** Liguria, lying along the sea coast north of Etruria.

P. 365, l. 5.—**Campania.** A Province of Italy, south of Latium, very rich and fertile.

P. 365, l. 16.—**She-wolf's litter.** Romulus and Remus, the sons of Ilia and the god Mars, were thrown into the Tiber by order of their uncle, who had usurped the throne of their grandfather. They were cast up on the banks of the river, and were suckled by a she-wolf, who took care of them until they were found by a shepherd. Romulus was the founder of Rome, and the Romans are thus spoken of as the litter or progeny of the she-wolf.

P. 366, l. 2.—**Alvernus.** A densely wooded hill in the Appenines, close to the headwaters of the Tiber and the Arno.

P. 366, l. 4.—**Augurs.** A priestly body at Rome, whose duty it was to declare the will of the gods, as made known by signs. They were held in high respect in the city. See note, page 369, line 9.

P. 366, l. 8.—**Cheer.** Entertainment.

P. 367, l. 3.—**Thrice.** The usual classic number. Webb notes that Achilles endeavored three times to embrace the ghost of his father, and

Odysseus makes the same number of attempts to embrace his mother's spirit.

P. 367, l. 23.—**Constant.** Firm, determined.

P. 368, l. 1.—**Craven.** Cowardly.

P. 368, l. 3.—**Palatinus.** The Palatine, one of the seven hills of Rome.

P. 368, l. 5.—**Father Tiber.** The river Tiber was worshipped as a god by the Romans.

P. 368, l. 15.—**Spent, etc.** Exhausted with exchanging blows.

P. 368, l. 17.—**Ween.** Think, know.

Evil Case. Adverse circumstances.

P. 369, l. 3.—**Public right.** Land owned by the state.

P. 369, l. 7.—**Comitium.** The portion of the Forum in which the ten tribes met to cast their votes upon proposed measures.

P. 369, l. 8.—**Halting.** Lame, on account of the wound in his thigh.

P. 369, l. 12.—**Charge the Volscians.** To charge the ranks of the Volscians without flinching. The Volscians occupied territory adjacent to Rome and were constantly at war with that city. At the time that this Lay is supposed to have been sung, the Romans had just given a decided check to their neighbors.

P. 369, l. 12.—**Juno.** The wife of Jupiter and the Queen of Heaven. She presided over married life, and as the goddess Lucinia was invoked in childbirth.

P. 369, l. 18.—**Algidus.** A densely wooded range of the Alban hills, about 12 miles south-east of Rome.

P. 369, l. 23.—**Goodman.** The man of the house, head of the family. Note the picture here of the home life of the Romans.

THE WATCH ON THE RHINE.

"In Germany no one would hesitate to attribute the victories of 1870-71 to the enthusiasm aroused by Max Schneckenburger's song, *The Watch on the Rhine*, written in 1840, yet the name of the poet was quite unknown till the song was heard as a battle cry on French soil, and even then his kinsmen did not show their gratitude to the real winner of their victories. The poet would probably have remained forgotten, but for the accidental discovery of the original manuscript, which dragged his name from obscurity."—*W. T. Stead.*

Schneckenburger was but 21 years old when he wrote this poem in 1840. The left bank of the Rhine was at this time threatened by the French forces. He was a hard-headed man of business, but he had the true patriotic fire in his breast, and in a moment he dashed off the poem. The poem did not attain any great popularity until the outbreak of the Franco-Prussian war.

The translation printed in Book IV. is that of G. F. Dunning. A very spirited version of the poem by Lady Natalie MacFarren is given in Fitzgerald's *Stories of Famous Songs*, (Nimmo), page 92.

THE MARSEILLAISE.

Fitzgerald in his *Stories of Famous Songs*, Chapter IV., gives the following account of the origin of this song: "Rouget de Lisle was greatly esteemed among his friends for his poetical and musical gifts, and was a particular friend of the family of the Baron de Dietrich, a noble Alsatian, then Mayor of Strasburg. 'One night during the winter of 1792, the young officer was seated at the table of this family. The hospitable fare of the Baron had been so reduced by the calamities and necessities of war that nothing,' says Mdme. Fanny Raymond Ritter, 'could be provided for dinner that day except garrison bread and a few slices of ham. Dietrich smiled sadly at his friend, and lamenting the poverty of the fare he had to offer, declared he would sacrifice the last remaining bottle of Rhine wine he had in his cellar, if he thought it would aid de Lisle's poetic invention, and inspire him to compose a patriotic song for the public ceremonies shortly to take place in Strasburg. The ladies approved and sent for the last bottle of wine of which the house could boast.' After dinner de Lisle sought his room, and though it was bitterly cold he at once sat down at the piano, and between reciting and playing and singing, eventually composed 'La Marseillaise,' and thoroughly exhausted fell asleep with his head on his desk. In the morning he was able to recall every note of the song, wrote it down and carried it to his friend Baron Dietrich. Everyone was enchanted with the song, which aroused the greatest enthusiasm. A few days later it was publically given in Strasburg, and thence it was conveyed by the multitude to Marseilles." The song was originally named *The War Song of the Army on the Rhine*, but when adopted as the official hymn of the revolutionists, it received its present title. It was during the war against Austria and the Confederate

Kingdoms that the song was written. See Smith's *Stories of Great National Songs*, (The Young Churchman Co.), Chapter XXII.

The translation printed in Book IV. was made about three years after the song was written, but the author is unknown. The text as printed is not quite accurate. Line 1 should read, "Ye sons of France, awake to glory!" and line 13 in the original has "scowling" instead of "rolling."

THE BATTLE HYMN OF THE REPUBLIC.

The following account of the origin of this poem is abridged from an article by Florence H. Hall: Shortly after the outbreak of the Civil war in the United States, in December, 1861, Mrs. Howe visited Washington, itself almost in the condition of an armed camp. In company with her husband and some friends she drove to a distance of several miles from the city to see a review of the troops. An attack of the enemy interrupted the programme, and the return drive was made through files of soldiers, who occupied almost the entire road. To beguile the tedium of their slow progress, Mrs. Howe and her friends sang army songs, among others *John Brown's Body*. This seemed to please the soldiers, who surrounded the party and enthusiastically cheered them. Mrs. Howe had often wished to write words to be sung to this tune, and kept turning over the idea in her mind. She slept quietly that night, but waking before dawn, found herself weaving together the lines of a poem. These quickly took shape, and fearing that the words would fade from her mind, she sprang out of bed, and in the grey morning light hastily wrote down the verses, went back to bed again and soon was fast asleep. On her return to Boston, she offered the verses to the *Atlantic Monthly*. They were at once accepted, and published, under the present title in the issue of the magazine for February, 1862. Mrs. Howe received five dollars for her contribution.

This poem is a fine specimen of the true patriotic lyric. It is simple and dignified, full of vigor, yet without a trace of sectionalism. The touch of pathos in the last verse adds much to the poem. See Smith's *Stories of Great National Songs*, Chapter X.

SCOTS, WHA HAE WI' WALLACE BLED.

Burns says: "There is a tradition that the old air 'Hey tuttie taitie' was Robert Bruce's march at the battle of Bannockburn. This

thought in my solitary wanderings, has warmed me to a pitch of enthusiasm on the theme of liberty and independence, which I have thrown into a kind of Scottish Ode, fitted to the air that one might suppose to be the gallant Scots' address to his heroic followers on that eventful morning."

The poem was written in July or August, 1793, after a thunder-storm, in which the poet had been caught while walking with a friend.

The battle of Bannockburn was fought on June 24, 1314, and resulted in a complete victory for the Scotch.

P. 374, l. 1.—**Wallace.** See Book V., page 354.

P. 374, l. 2.—**Bruce.** Robert I., King of Scotland (1274-1329). He was crowned in 1306, but did not succeed in freeing his country until some seven years later, although it was not until 1328, that the independence of Scotland was formally acknowledged.

P. 374, l. 7.—**Edward.** Edward II. of England, who following the example of his father, had usurped the Scottish throne, and tried to make his claim good by force of arms.

THE DOMINION HYMN.

This poem was written by the Marquis of Lorne, now the Duke of Argyll, a former Governor-General of Canada.

GOD SAVE THE KING.

When the *Victorian Readers* were published this poem read *God Save the Queen.* Since that time Queen Victoria has died, and the song is now sung in honor of King Edward.

It is not probable that the question as to the authorship of the National Anthem will ever be settled definitely. Various claims are put forth for different writers, all more or less strongly supported. The general verdict, however, seems to incline in favor of Henry Carey, the author of *Sally in our Alley.* See "Biographical Sketches." He is said to have written the words somewhere between 1736 and 1740. A full discussion of the subject will be found in Fitzgerald's *Stories of Famous Songs,* (Nimmo), pages 384-408; Smith's *Stories of Great National Songs,* (The Young Churchman Co.), and in *The Educational Journal of Western Canada* for June-July, 1901, by Miss Agnes Deans Cameron.

BOOK V.

THE RED RIVER VOYAGEUR.

This selection is, to residents of Manitoba, probably the best known of Whittier's poems. The poet had never visited Manitoba, but had read somewhere an account of the Roman mission. It should be kept in mind that the mission referred to is not the present St. Boniface church, but the old edifice with two towers which was burned down in 1860. The frontispiece to Book V. gives a picture of the old church. The poem is a very beautiful one, none the less so on account of the life lesson with which it concludes.

P. 1, l. 8.—**Assiniboins.** See Book IV., page 157.

P. 2, l. 1.—**Voyageurs.** See Book IV., page 282.

P. 2, l. 3.—**Vesper.** The bell calling to evening prayer.

P. 2, l. 4.—**St. Boniface.** The town across the Red river from Winnipeg.

P. 2, l. 5.—**Roman Mission.** The settlement of St. Boniface on the east bank of the Red River, dates from 1817, when the Catholic Meurons, auxiliary Swiss troops in the service of England during the war of 1812, and under Lord Selkirk, accepted grants of land in return for their military services. The German origin of these soldiers explains the choice of the patron saint, St. Boniface, the apostle of Germany. Hence also comes the German motto "Gottes hülfe," of St. Boniface College. In 1818 the Rev. N. B. Provencher, accompanied by the Rev. S. Dumoulin, arrived at St. Boniface to minister to the Catholics there and to evangelize the Indians. Father Dumoulin made his headquarters at Pembina, while Father Provencher took charge of St. Boniface and the neighboring Red River settlements. In 1822 the latter was consecrated Bishop, with jurisdiction extending over the North-West Territories as far as Hudson's Bay. Shortly after his arrival in the settlement, he had erected, in 1818, a small wooden building, which served as a dwelling, school-house and chapel, the first chapel in the country. Five years later Bishop Provencher raised a more spacious construction, and in 1832 he laid the foundation stone of the handsome cathedral "with turrets twain," which was destroyed by fire on December 14, 1860.

P. 2, l. 13.—**Angel of Shadow.** The Angel of Death.

THE PILGRIM'S PROGRESS.

This selection forms the opening portion of *The Pilgrim's Progress.* Bunyan's characteristics as a writer are of course his clearness and simplicity of style, his plain direct method of telling his story, his intense earnestness, his imaginative faculty and his strong dramatic power. All of these points are more or less to be noted in this extract. The notes are intended to draw attention to the extent to which both the thought and the language of Scripture influenced the writing of *The Pilgrim's Progress.* See *Great Books*, by Dean Farrar, (Crowell & Co.), Chapter II., and *Puritan and Anglican Studies in Literature*, by Edward Dowden, (Henry Holt & Co.), Chapter VIII.

P. 3, l. 2.—**A den.** Bedford Jail, where Bunyan was confined.
P. 3, l. 6.—**Burden.** *Psalms* xxxviii., 4.
P. 4, l. 18.—**What shall I do?** *Acts* xvi., 30, 31.
P. 4, l. 26.—**Condemned.** *Hebrews* ix., 27.
P. 5, l. 1.—**Tophet.** *Isaiah* xxx., 33.
P. 5, l. 7.—**Flee from, etc.** *Matthew* iii., 7.
P. 5, l. 12.—**Wicket-gate.** *Matthew* vii., 13, 14.
P. 5, l. 14.—**Shining light.** *Psalms* cxix., 105.
P. 5, l. 21.—**Return.** *Luke* xiv., 26.
P. 5, l. 23.—**Behind him.** *Genesis* xix., 17.
P. 6, l. 13.—**Enjoy.** *II. Corinthians* iv., 18.
P. 6, l. 16.—**To spare.** *Luke* xv., 17.
P. 6, l. 20.—**Fadeth not away.** *I. Peter* i., 4-6.
P. 6, l. 27.—**Plough.** *Luke* ix., 62.
P. 7, l. 12.—**Him that made it.** *Hebrews* ix., 17-22.
P. 8, l. 10.—**Cannot lie.** *Titus* i., 2.
P. 8, l. 14.—**For ever.** *Isaiah* lxv., 17. *John* x., 27-29.
P. 8, l. 18.—**Firmament of heaven.** *II. Timothy* iv., 8; *Revelation* xxii., 5 and *Matthew* xiii., 43.
P. 8, l. 22.—**From our eyes.** *Isaiah* xxv., 8; *Revelation* vii., 16-17; xxi., 4.
P. 8, l. 25.—**Dazzle your eyes.** *Isaiah* vi., 2; *I. Thessalonians* iv., 16-17.
P. 8, l. 31.—**Golden crowns.** *Revelation* iv., 4.
P. 8, l. 32.—**Golden harps.** *Revelation* xiv., 1-5.
P. 9, l. 4.—**Garment.** *John* xii., 25; *II. Corinthians* v. 2-4.

A CANADIAN BOAT SONG.

During the year 1804 Moore paid a visit to Canada. It took five days to make the journey down the St. Lawrence from Kingston to Montreal, but the way was enlivened by the French-Canadian boatmen, who sang their folk songs in their native tongue. One of these airs seemed to have made a strong impression on Moore, so much so that he harmonized it and wrote the words of the *Boat Song* to be sung to it. See Fitz-Gerald's *Stories of Famous Songs*, (Nimmo), page 373.

P. 9, l. 3.—**Keep time.** Moore notes the perfect harmony of the boatmen's song.

P. 9, l. 4.—**St. Ann.** The last church on the island of Montreal. Moore was obliged to have everything taken from his boat before attempting the rapid at St. Ann.

P. 10, l. 1.—**Utawa's tide.** The river Ottawa.

THE PICKWICKIANS ON ICE.

This selection is taken from Chapter II., Part II. of *The Posthumous Papers of the Pickwick Club.* Mr. Pickwick and his four friends and his servant, Sam Weller, Mr. Ben Allen and Mr. Bob. Sawyer, young medical students, with the sister of the former, are spending Christmas with Mr. Wardle. After attending the parish church and partaking of lunch, the party proceed to the ice.

Pickwick Papers is the one novel of Dickens' that is nothing but fun from beginning to end. It is impossible to give any story of the book because it has no plot. It is a succession of humorous sketches, in which the cynical or satirical element is entirely lacking. This selection is given here as a specimen sketch; it is purely humorous and should be treated as such.

FOR THE STRENGTH OF THE HILLS WE BLESS THEE.

The title of this poem in the collected works of Mrs. Hemans is *Hymn of the Vaudois Mountaineers in Time of Persecution.* The poem is prefaced by a line from Howitt, "Thanks be to God for the mountains."

The Vaudois mountaineers, living among the Cottian Alps, in the north of Italy, about 30 miles from Turin, belonged to the Waldensian

Church, so called from Peter Waldo, its reputed founder. During their whole history, on account of their religious opinions, they were subjected to terrible persecutions by the Dukes of Savoy. Time and again their mountain homes were raided, but neither pillage nor massacre could shake their faith. This hymn is an expression of their absolute trust in God. "Though he slay me yet will I trust in him."—*Job* xiii., 15.

P. 19, l. 5.—**Ark of refuge.** *Genesis* viii., 4.
P. 19, l. 14.—**By the rod.** *Exodus* xvii., 6.
P. 19, l. 18.—**Still, small voice.** *I. Kings* xix., 12.

BEETHOVEN'S MOONLIGHT SONATA.

All Beethoven's biographers agree that there is a great deal of biographical significance in *The Moonlight Sonata.* The underlying idea is perhaps best expressed in Frances Ridley Havergal's poem *The Moonlight Sonata*, which should, if possible, be read in connection with the text.

The following account of the circumstances under which the Sonata was written, is taken from the *Life of Beethoven*, by Louis Nohl, (A. C. McClurg & Co.). "And now began for Beethoven a period of severe trials, brought upon him by himself. Absorbed in work, he neglected to take sufficient care of his physical health. His trouble with his hearing was increasing, but he paid no attention to it. His carelessness in this regard reduced him to a condition in which he would have found no alleviation and no joy, were it not for the inexhaustable resources he possessed within himself.

"But to understand him fully we must read what he wrote himself in June, 1801, to his friend Amenda, who had left Vienna two years before. He says: 'Your own dear Beethoven is very unhappy. He is in conflict with nature and with God. . . You must know that what was most precious to me, my hearing, has been, in great part, lost. How sad my life is! All that was dear to me, all that I loved, is gone! How happy would I now be if I could only hear as I used to hear. If I could I would fly to thee, but as it is, I must stay away. My best years will fly, and I shall not have fulfilled the promise of my youth, nor accomplish in my art what I fondly hoped I would. I must now take refuge in the sadness of resignation.' We have here the words to the long-drawn funereal tones of a song as we find it at the

beginning of the celebrated C sharp minor (Moonlight) sonata op 27, No. II., which belongs to this period. The direct incentive to its composition was Seumes' poem, *die Beterin*, in which he gives us the description of a daughter praying for her noble father, who has been condemned to death. But in this painful struggle with self, we also hear the storm of passion in words as well as tones. Beethoven's life at this time was one of sorrow. He writes 'I can say that I am living a miserable life. I have more than once execrated my existence. But if possible I shall bid defiance to fate, although there will be, I know, moments in my life when I shall be God's most unhappy creature.' The thunders of power may be heard in the finale of that sonata."

Ludwig von Beethoven was born at Bonn, December 16, 1770. The family came originally from Belgium, but had in 1732 removed to Bonn. The father of Ludwig was at this time court musician to the Archbishop of Cologne. He was a very dissolute man, but a competent teacher of music. He was very anxious to exhibit his son as a musical prodigy, so that money might be obtained to support the family, and accordingly put him through a thorough course of musical instruction. The child made his first appearance in public at the age of seven. His extraordinary musical abilities were at once recognized, and opportunities given him to continue his studies. In 1792 he removed to Vienna in order to receive instruction from the best masters. In 1795 he made his first appearance as a composer in that city. About 1800 the great affliction of his life overtook him, his deafness. Three years later he had almost completely lost the sense of hearing. This misery was enhanced by an unfortunate love affair, from the effects of which he never quite recovered. He continued to reside in Vienna, occupied with the production of his various works. His last days were passed amidst disappointments and poverty. His domestics robbed him, his family proved ungrateful, and the public neglected him. He died at Vienna, March 26, 1827. The general opinion in regard to Beethoven is that "He is in music what Shakespeare is in poetry, a name before the greatness of which, all other names, however great, seem to dwindle." See also *Beethoven*, by H. A. Rudall, (Scribner's).

P. 21, l. 1.—**Bonn.** In Prussia, the birthplace of Beethoven.

P. 21, l. 5.—**Sonata in F.** One of Beethoven's most famous works, his sonata written in the key of F.

P. 21, l. 9.—**Finale.** The closing passages of the sonata.

P. 22, l. 15.—**Fraulein.** Young lady.

P. 24, l. 12.—**Agitato finale.** The closing movement in very rapid time.

THE SONG OF THE CAMP.

During the Russian war the sea-port of Sebastapool, on the Black Sea, was besieged from October, 1854, to September, 1855, when the place surrendered. Sebastapool was very strongly fortified, two of the principal defenses being the Malakoff tower and the Redan, an immense earthwork. 84,000 Russians fell during the siege, and the combined armies of England and France lost at least 60,000 men.

Annie Laurie.

Maxwelton braes are bonnie
Where early fa's the dew,
And it's there that Annie Laurie
Gie'd me her promise true;—
Gie'd me her promise true,
Which ne'er forgot will be:
And for bonnie Annie Laurie
I'd lay me doune and dee.

Her brow is like the snaw-drift,
Her throat is like the swan;
Her face it is the fairest
That e'er the sun shone on;—
That e'er the sun shone on,
And dark blue is her ee:
And for bonnie Annie Laurie
I'd lay me doune and dee.

Like dew on the gowan lying
Is the fa' o' her fairy feet,
Like the winds in summer sighing,
Her voice is low and sweet;—
Her voice is low and sweet,
And she's a' the world to me:
And for bonnie Annie Laurie
I'd lay me doune and dee.

—*William Douglas.*

P. 25, l. 3.—**Camps allied.** The English and the French. The Turks and the Sardinians did not take part in the siege.

P. 25, l. 10.—**We storm the forts.** The storming of the Malakoff and the Redan was one of the most brilliant episodes of the war. See *The Battles of English History*, by H. B. George, (Dodd, Mead & Co.), Chapter XV.

P. 25, l. 15.—**Severn, Clyde, Shannon.** Representative rivers of England, Scotland and Ireland.

P. 26, l. 1.—**Darkening ocean.** Sebastapool is in the Crimea, on the shore of the Black Sea.

THE DEMON OF THE DEEP.

This selection is made up from Chapters I. and III., Book IV., of *Toilers of the Sea.* The intervening chapter is taken up with a detailed description of the Devil Fish.

No knowledge of the story of *The Toilers of the Sea* is necessary in order to study this selection. The story, however, is a very powerful one. It deals principally with the endeavors of Gilliat to float a steamship which had been wrecked on an almost inaccessible rock. The reward offered for the safe return of the vessel was the hand of Deruchette, the daughter of the owner. Gilliat, who was the son of a reputed witch, and himself not held in high esteem, had long been in love with the young lady, and resolved to attempt secretly to float the vessel. He succeeded, but on his arrival in port found that Deruchette loved another. He assisted the couple to elope, and then, returning to the rock from which he had floated the vessel, drowned himself.

THE DAY IS DONE.

This poem was written in 1844, as proem to *The Waif*, a small volume of minor poems selected by Mr. Longfellow and published at Christmas of that year. Its appropriateness as an introduction to a volume of this character is obvious.

This is a difficult poem to understand, unless the student can put himself in the place of the writer, and identify his own mood with that described in the poem. The second part has no meaning unless the first part is clearly understood and appreciated.

THE VISION OF MIRZA.

This selection was printed in No. 159 of *The Spectator*, Saturday, September 1, 1711. It was prefaced by the following paragraph: "When I was at Grand Cairo, I picked up several oriental manuscripts which I have still by me. Among others I met with one entitled, *The Vision of Mirza*, which I have read over with great pleasure. I intend to give it to the public when I have no other entertainment for them, and shall begin with the first vision which I have translated word for word as follows:"

P. 34, l. 1.—**Of the moon.** Of the month.

P. 34, l. 4.—**Bagdad.** An important city of Turkey-in-Asia, situated on the River Tigris.

P. 34, l. 7.—**Vanity.** Emptiness, foolishness.

P. 34, l. 12.—**Habit.** Clothing, dress.

P. 35, l. 1.—**Paradise.** The Mohemmedan religion is referred to throughout the vision.

P. 35, l. 2.—**Last agonies.** The pangs of death.

P. 35, l. 3.—**Secret raptures.** Raptures which it could not express in words.

P. 35, l. 5.—**Genius.** A being more than human, possessing supernatural powers.

P. 35, l. 17.—**Familiarized him.** Made me lose sight of his supernatural nature.

P. 36, l. 10.—**Arches.** The life of man is 70 years, although some few live even beyond that age (*Psalm* xc., 10). The fact of the arches being broken indicates that at one time life had been longer than it is at present; before the Deluge, in the time of Noah, it extended even to one thousand years.

P. 36, l. 19.—**Black cloud.** The eternity out of which we came and into which we go; both states of existence are hidden from our view.

P. 36, l. 23.—**Trap doors.** Causes of death of which we are ignorant, and which we cannot anticipate.

P. 36, l. 27.—**At the entrance.** In infancy.

P. 37, l. 1.—**Hobbling march.** Dragged out a weary existence in old age.

P. 37, l. 12.—**Bubbles.** The pleasures of the world.

P. 37, l. 16.—**Scimitars.** A curved Persian sword. The allusion is to the premature deaths caused by war and rapine.

P. 37, l. 28.—**Harpies.** See Book IV., page 180.

P. 37, l. 29.—**Winged boys.** Cupid, the god of love, is usually represented as a winged boy, carrying a bow and arrows.

P. 37, l. 30.—**Middle arches.** These passions attack men during their more mature period in middle life.

P. 38, l. 14.—**Immense ocean.** The boundless spaces of eternity.

P. 38, l. 15.—**Adamant.** The synonym for extreme hardness.

P. 38, l. 30.—**Seats.** Abodes.

P. 39, l. 5.—**Myriads.** Literally "ten thousand," but here "an innumerable number."

P. 39, l. 8.—**Mansions of good men.** *John* xiv., 2.

P. 39, l. 23.—**Other side.**—The abodes of the wicked.

THE MINSTREL BOY.

This poem has no local significance, but is of general application. It is a stirring patriotic lyric, showing how the feeling of love of country animated the boy and found expression in his action.

THE BATTLE OF THE ANTS.

This selection is taken, with some omissions, from the chapter entitled "Brute Neighbors," in Thoreau's *Walden*. The book itself is a record of the experiences of the author while living the life of a hermit by the Walden ponds.

P. 41, l. 1.—**Duellum.** A fight between two. **Bellum.** A general battle.

P. 41, l. 4.—**Myrmidons.** The Myrmidones were a people in the south of Thessaly who accompanied Achilles to the Trojan war. The word here means "warriors."

P. 41, l. 9.—**Internecine.** A murderous civil struggle.

P. 41, l. 21.—**By the board.** A metaphor borrowed from the mast of a ship broken off close to the deck.

P. 41, l. 30.—**With his shield.** See Book V., page 271, line 20.

P. 42, l. 1.—**Achilles.** During the Trojan war Achilles had withdrawn himself from the conflict owing to a quarrel with Agamemnon, (Book V., page 292, line 27). During his absence the Trojans had

proved everywhere victorious and were on the point of burning the Greek ships. **Patroclus**, who had accompanied Achilles to the war, begged to be allowed to put on the armor of his friend, in order that under that guise he might frighten the Trojans. The ruse was successful, and the enemy was driven back. In the fight the helmet of Patroclus was knocked off; the Trojans seeing who their pursuer really was, turned, and Patroclus was slain by Hector. Achilles, to revenge his friend, became reconciled to Agamemnon, rejoined the Greeks, and slew Hector, the Trojan leader. See Church's *Story of the Iliad*, (The Macmillan Co.), Chapters XVIII.-XXIV.

P. 42, l. 15.—**Eminent chip.** Conspicuous station.

P. 42, l. 17.—**Concord.** The first conflict of the Revolutionary war, April 19, 1775.

P. 42, l. 24.—**Austerlitz.** A town in Moravia, the scene of the great victory gained by Napoleon over the combined armies of Austria and Russia, December 2, 1805. The French had 75,000 men and lost 12,000, while the allies, with 85,000 men, lost 30,000.

P. 42, l. 25.—**Dresden.** The capital of Saxony, the scene, on August 27, 1813, of a great battle between the French, under Napoleon, and the combined armies of Russia, Austria and Prussia. About 300,000 men were engaged, and 20,000 were said to have fallen on the battlefield.

A principle. The colonists in 1775 were fighting for the principle of "No taxation without representation," rather than to avoid the paltry tax imposed by the Imperial Parliament.

P. 42, l. 29.—**Bunker Hill.** The battle fought near Boston, June 17, 1775, between the revolted colonists and the British troops. The colonists were defeated, but the way in which they held out in the struggle against disciplined troops, encouraged them to carry on the conflict.

P. 43, l. 23.—**Hotel des Invalides.** A hospital for injured and aged soldiers, supported by the French Government in Paris. It is an immense building, thoroughly equipped and carefully managed under military discipline.

SKIPPER IRESON'S RIDE.

Whittier was entirely misinformed in regard to the facts upon which he based this poem. Were it not that the name of a good man has in

the poem been branded with infamy, it would not be worth while saying anything on the point. Ireson was accused of having refused to come to the assistance of a shipwrecked crew in the Bay of Chaleur. His vessel sailed away from them, but they were afterwards rescued and brought back to Marblehead. The indignant populace tarred and feathered Ireson, but the women took no part in the outrage. The true story, as related by Captain Codman in *McClure's Magazine* for March, 1897, is as follows:—"Ireson desired to take off the shipwrecked crew, but his men, who were sailing on shares, were in a hurry to get into port and forestall the market. When the shipwrecked crew arrived and told the tale of their being deserted, Ireson's crew laid it to his charge, and as there was the testimony of a dozen to one, they were believed. From the day of his cruel persecution, poor Ireson was hated and despised in Marblehead, deprived of his position and forced to eke out a scanty living by fishing in a small boat and digging clams until the time of his death. It was after this, and when it was too late to be of service to him, that the conscience-stricken sailors made confession that completely exonerated him." Kipling, in *Captains' Courageous*, gives the true version of the story. The poet, however, on being shown indisputable evidence of the facts, expressed great regret at the injustice he had unwittingly done the memory of Ireson. See note on page 174, Vol. I., of collected edition of Whittier's *Poetical Works*, (Houghton, Mifflin & Co.).

The poem, without any reference to the facts of the case, stands as a powerful dramatic fragment, and as such is worthy of all praise.

P. 44, l. 3.—**Apuleius's Golden Ass.** Apuleius was a Roman writer of the second century, the author of many philosophical and satirical works. His best known work is *Metamorphoses* or *The Golden Ass*, the adventures of one Lucius, who was transformed into a golden ass, and thus had many opportunities of seeing the follies of mankind. See Dunlop's *History of Fiction*, (Geo. Bell & Sons), Vol. I., pages 96-107.

P. 44, l. 4.—**Calendar's horse of brass.** In the *Arabian Night's Entertainment* is told the story of a Calendar, who being left in charge of a beautiful castle, with strict injunctions not to open one door, of which, however, he had the key, did so, and discovered in the room a horse of brass. He mounted the animal, which immediately flew away to the top of a mountain, where it threw the Calendar to the ground, at the same time striking out one of his eyes with its tail.

The Calendars are the members of a religious order of Dervishes, who profess great purity of life and conduct.

P. 44, l. 6.—**Islam's prophet.** Mohammed (570 A.D.-632), the founder of the religion which bears his name. Islamism, the name given to the religious system of Mohammed, is derived from an Arabian word, meaning "obedience to God." Al Borak is the winged white animal, in size between a mule and an ass, on which Mohammed, conducted by the Angel Gabriel, made his journey during the night to the seventh heaven, and into the very presence of God.

P. 44, l. 8.—**Marblehead.** A seaport town in Massachusetts, 18 miles north-east of Boston.

P. 44, l. 26.—**Bacchus.** The god of wine among the ancients. The worship of Bacchus was conducted with extreme license, his priestesses indulging in antics of every description. The scene here referred to is that pictured on some Greecian vase, in which Bacchus is represented as being chased by some of his worshippers.

P. 45, l. 1.—**Conch-shell.** A sea-shell of spiral shape, which may be used as a trumpet.

P. 45, l. 2.—**Mænads.** Bacchantes or devotees of Bacchus. They were accustomed to indulge in the most frenzied actions during the worship of the god, killing even human beings who interfered with their devotions.

P. 46, l. 12.—**Indian.** Hindoo.

THE CRUSADER AND THE SARACEN.

This selection forms Chapter I. of *The Talisman.* A knowledge of the story is not necessary to the teaching of the selection, as it forms the introductory chapter. The knight, however, is Prince David of Scotland and the Saracen is Saladin.

P. 47, l. 2.—**Knight of the Red Cross.** The Crusaders wore emblazoned on their surcoat a red cross as an emblem of their mission to rescue the Holy Sepulchre from the hands of the infidels.

P. 47, l. 3.—**Northern home.** Scotland.

P. 47. l. 6.—**Dead Sea.** A sea in Palestine, about 40 miles long and from 5 to 9 miles broad. It is 1,316 feet below the surface of the Mediterranean and has no apparent outlet for its waters. The specific gravity of its water is one-fourth greater than that of ordinary water.

It is seven times more salty than the ocean. It is enclosed between limestone cliffs, and surrounded by deserts and salt hills.

P. 47, l. 12.—**Accursed cities.** Sodom and Gomorrah. *Genesis* xix., 24 and 25.

P. 47, l. 19.—**Garden of the Lord.** *Genesis* xiii., 10.

P. 48, l. 12.—**Brimstone, etc.** *Deuteronomy* xxix., 23.

P. 49, l. 7.—**Hauberk.** A sleeveless coat of mail formed of woven rings of steel.

P. 49, l. 12.—**Poniard.** A small dagger.

P. 49, l. 16.—**Pennoncelle.** A small pennon or flag.

P. 49, l. 24.—**Couchant leopard.** A leopard lying down, with the head raised.

P. 49, l. 11.—**Unicorn.** See Book IV., page 69.

P. 52, l. 13.—**Caftan.** A long vest tied round at the waist with a girdle, and having sleeves longer than the arms.

P. 53, l. 32.—**Emir.** An independent chief, generally a direct descendant of Fatima, the sister of Mohammed.

P. 54, l. 23.—**Harness.** Armor.

P. 55, l. 13.—**Lingua franca.** A mixture of Italian with Turkish, Arabic and Greek.

P. 55, l. 20.—**The Prophet.** Mohammed.

P. 55, l. 22.—**Nazarene.** The Christians were so called as the followers of Jesus of Nazareth.

SCARLETT'S THREE HUNDRED.

This selection describes the famous charge of the Heavy Brigade at Balaclava. Though somewhat overshadowed by the charge of the Light Brigade, it was one of the most glorious actions in the annals of the British army. "The Thin Red Line," on page 150, Book V., describes the charge. A very full and graphic account is given in Fitchett's *Fights for the Flag*, pages 271-283. Read also Tennyson's stirring poem, *The Charge of the Heavy Brigade.*

On the morning of October 25, 1854, the Russians attacked the lines of the Allies in full force, with the object of capturing the arsenal and base of supplies at Balaclava. The Russians had routed the Turks, who held the redouts, and were galloping down on the "thin red line" of Sir Colin Campbell's Highlanders, when orders came to Scarlett, who commanded the Heavy Brigade, to support the infantry.

Scarlett, with 600 of his men, immediately moved forward, but when passing along under the Causeway Height he was amazed to see coming over the crest of the hill a body of 3,000 Russian cavalry. There was nothing for Scarlett to do but charge, and like a brave man he did not hesitate. The front line, composed of 300 Greys and Inniskillings—their last charge together was at Waterloo—bore up the hill upon the enemy. Broken ground restrained the men, so that when the troop reached clear ground, and were prepared to charge in line, Scarlett was about 50 yards ahead of his men. In he smashed, however, followed closely by Elliot, his aide-de-camp, and Shegog, his orderly, and the trumpeter. The 300 were soon swallowed up in the midst of the Russians, but the remainder of the squadron charged in and the Russians were routed.

The text of this poem was specially provided by Mr. Massey for the *Victorian Readers*. The author also requested that the usual title, *The Death Ride*, be changed and that *Scarlett's Three Hundred* be substituted. The poem as originally written contained but eight stanzas, with a different arrangement. The ordinary version may be found in *Open Sesame*, (Ginn & Co.), Vol. II., page 57.

P. 56, l. 6.—**Avalanche.** The Russians were coming down the hill.

P. 56, l. 9.—**Scarlett.** "A white-whiskered, red-faced soldier, 55 years old, a delightfully simple-minded warrior, who had never heard a shot fired in anger."—*Fitchett.*

P. 57, l. 3.—**Elliot.** "Elliot received in all fourteen sword wounds, yet kept his seat and his sword through them all."—*Fitchett.*

P. 57, l. 9.—**They shrink.** As Scarlett galloped in alone, the nearest Russians dropped from their horses.

P. 57, l. 21.—**For the dead.** The loss of the Heavy Brigade was 5 killed and about 30 wounded.

THE BURNING OF MOSCOW.

This selection is taken from Chapter IX., Vol. I., of *Napoleon and His Marshals* published in 1846; the chapter is entitled "Marshal Mortier, Duke of Treviso."

While the effort of the author in this selection is to give a vivid picture of the burning of Moscow, it should not be forgotten that the main idea is to show the connection of Marshal Mortier therewith.

The details are arranged in such a way as to bring out in the clearest possible light his heroic efforts to stem the tide of destruction. The terrible nature of the catastrophe is brought out more clearly by showing that it was too great for even the efforts of the gigantic Marshal to subdue.

On June 24, 1812, Napoleon invaded Russia with an army of 600,000 men. Every step of his advance was stubbornly contested by the Russians, so it was not until September 14 that Moscow was reached. In the meantime the bloody battle of Borodino had been fought, in which 80,000 men are said to have fallen. On the way to Moscow, Mortier commanded the Young Guard, and was at once made governor when the French army entered the defenceless city.

P. 58, l. 4.—**Goal of his wishes.** Napoleon seemed to think that if Moscow were captured the Russians would be compelled to sue for peace.

P. 58, l. 4.—**Murat.** One of the most brilliant of Napoleon's marshals. He was the son of an inn-keeper and was himself a waiter in an hotel in Paris. He joined the fortunes of Napoleon, took part in most of his campaigns, was made a marshal, a prince of the Empire, and finally King of Naples. He married in 1800 a sister of Napoleon. His ambition, however, caused his ruin. He proved traitorous to both the Allies and to Napoleon, and was repulsed by both. Being driven from his throne he made a desperate attempt to recover it, was captured and shot October 13, 1815.

P. 58, l. 13.—**Mortier.** [1768-1835.] One of Napoleon's most trusty and beloved marshals; a man of indomitable courage and marked coolness and sagacity. He was originally a merchant, but entered the army in 1791, and soon rose to high command. He took part in most of Napoleon's campaigns, distinguishing himself in all, notably at the battle of Dirnstein.

P. 59, l. 5.—**First light.** Napoleon lost about 500,000 men during the Russian campaign; this certainly weakened his power and had a great deal to do with his fall.

P. 59, l. 19.—**Kremlin.** The Kremlin is really the central part of the city on the left bank of the Moskwa, on the Borovitsky hill, containing the palace of the Czars and many other public buildings.

P. 60, l. 17.—**Manly form.** Mortier was of gigantic height and a splendid swordsman.

P. 60, l. 32.—**Eugene.** The step-son of Napoleon and one of his most trusted generals. He accompanied Napoleon in the Egyptian campaign and took a prominent part in the Russian campaign, in which he had charge of the retreat. He died in 1824.

Berthier. The Prince of Wagram, one of Napoleon's marshals and his chief-of-staff.

P. 61, l. 9.—**Moskwa.** The river on which Moscow is situated.

MARCO BOZZARIS.

"Among Halleck's fellow clerks in Jacob Barker's counting-house was a young man of literary culture and disciplined taste, to whom he used to confide his effusions, to be read overnight and reported on at the first interval of leisure the next day. One evening, having missed the usual opportunity of quietly slipping into his friend's hand the latest 'copy of verses,' he left them at his lodging with 'Will this do?' written on the margin. The poem was *Marco Bozzaris.*"—*Tuckerman.* The poem first appeared in the *New York Review* in 1823.

A complete history of the composition of the poem, as well as an account of the action which made Bozzaris famous, will be found in Wilson's *Life and Letters of Fitz Greene Halleck*, (D. Appleton & Co.), pages 290-305.

In 1821 the Greeks rose in rebellion against the Turks and the war for independence was begun. One of the bravest of the Greek leaders at the outbreak of the war was Marco Bozzaris, or Botzares, as the word is written in Greek. One of the Grecian generals, Caraiscos, had been defeated and was being driven southward by a force of 8,000 desperate Turks, under the command of Jelaludin Bey. Bozzaris resolved to stem the current of retreat and went to meet the Greek army, taking with him a band of 300 Suliotes and Parghiotes. After enduring incredible hardships they reached Caraiscos, who refused to join the desperate venture. Bozzaris resolved to attack alone and pushed forward. The men threw away their rifles and stole into the camp of the Turks, armed with swords and pistols. Being mistaken for an Albanian reinforcement, they were allowed to penetrate almost into the centre of the camp. Then the cry of "Sword!" was raised and a volley poured into the tent of the Turkish general. Bozzaris fell at the first attack, but not before he had killed Mustapha, the Turkish Commander-in-Chief, who was resting in the tent of his nephew,

Jelaludin Bey. His followers rescued his body, and continued the slaughter of the demoralized Turks until daybreak, when Caraiscou came down from the hills and completed the rout. The battle took place on August 20, 1823, at Carpenisi. Only 50 Greeks, including Bozzaris, fell, while 800 Turks were slain. The immediate result of the battle was a long period of peace for the suffering Greeks.

This poem should be read in connection with *The Isles of Greece* Book V., page 201, to which it might almost seem to be an answer.

P. 64, l. 2.—**The Turk.** Mustapha Bey, the Turkish Pasha, who had raised an immense army in the northern part of the state, with the purpose of blotting out the Greeks.

P. 64, l. 8.—**Monarch's signet ring.** Grand Vizier or Prime Minister of the Sultan of Turkey.

P. 64, l. 11.—**Garden-bird.** The bird of Paradise.

P. 64, l. 13.—**Suliote.** Christian Albanians living in the Cassopeian mountains. They derived their name from Suli, their chief village. For 60 years before this their life had been one long conflict with the Turks.

P. 64, l. 13.—**Bozzaris.** Bozzaris was born at Suli, in Albania, in 1788. He received his military training in the French army, and on the outbreak of the Greek war joined his countrymen. He soon rose to high command, and crowned his years of victory by his death at Carpenisi.

P. 64, l. 16.—**Platæa.** Carpenisi, where the battle was fought, was very near the battlefield of Platæa, where 350,000 Persians, under Mardonius, were defeated by an army of 110,000 Greeks, under Pausanias, the Spartan. Only about 43,000 Persians escaped, while the Greek loss was about 1,300 men. The battle was fought September 22, B.C. 479.

P. 65, l. 7.—**Altars. Fires.** Religion and home.

P. 65, l. 11.—**Moslem.** Turks.

P. 65, l. 12.—**Bozzaris fell.** Bozzaris had entered the tent of Mustapha and slain him. He yelled this fact to his soldiers. The Turks heard his voice, poured a volley into the tent, and killed the hero.

P. 65, l. 23.—**Blessed seals.** *Revelation* viii.

P. 66, l. 6.—**Storied brave.** The heroes whose deeds are recorded on the monuments raised to their memory.

THE ARCHERY CONTEST.

This selection is taken from Chapter XXXIV, of *The White Company*. The Black Prince, with his army of English and Gascons, had marched into Spain for the purpose of assisting the exiled Don Pedro to regain his throne. They had passed through the Pyrenees in safety and were now encamped in the vale of Pampeluna. The Prince here called his council together to consider plans for the carrying on of the war.

Alleyne Edricson, a brother of the Socman of Minsted, resolved to leave the monastery where he had been brought up, to seek his fortune in the world. On the way he met with Hordle John, who had been put out of the monastery, and with Samkin Aylward, a representative of "The White Company," who is on his way to Twynham castle to invite Sir Nigel Loring to take the command of the famous body of Free Companions. Being cast off by his brother, Alleyne attached himself to his two companions, and together they accompanied Sir Nigel to France, not, however, before the young squire had fallen very deeply in love with the daughter of the castle, the Lady Maude. On the way they took part in a stirring naval engagement, in which Sir Nigel proved victorious. From the time they landed in France and attached themselves to the banner of the Black Prince, the story is a succession of conflicts, both in tournament and in field. Sir Nigel took command of his company, led them to Spain, and there their last stand was made. There the company was disbanded, after a long, stern fight against overwhelming odds. When succor, for which Alleyne had ridden at the risk of his life, arrived, but six or seven men remained, while Sir Nigel and Aylward had been captured and carried away. Alleyne received knighthood at the sword of the Black Prince, returned to England and married the Lady Maude. Immediately after the wedding he set out to seek Sir Nigel, but just as he was about to quit England, Sir Nigel and Aylward, who had made good their escape, appeared, and there was a joyful reunion.

P. 66, l. 3.—**La Nuit, Black Ortingo.** Leaders of Free Companies in the service of the Black Prince.

P. 67, l. 9.—**Gambesson.** A quilted tunic.

P. 67, l. 17.—**Moulinet.** The little windlass used for bending the cross-bow.

P. 67, l. 19.—**Prod, Latch.** A *prod* is a crossbow used for

throwing balls of metal or stone, while a *latch* is the ordinary crossbow from which both balls and arrows are shot.

P. 67, l. 28.—**Arbalest.** Crossbow.

Three Kings. The three wise men of the East, who came to worship the infant Jesus at Bethlehem. Their names were Gaspar, Melchior and Balthazar. They are supposed to have continued their journey westward, and to have there died. Their bones are buried in the Cathedral of Cologne.

P. 68, l. 3.—**Juancon.** A small town in the south of France, near the Pyrenees, noted for its wine.

P. 68, l. 11.—**Kermesse.** The annual festival of the village.

P. 68, l. 15.—**Constable de Bourbon.** The office of Constable of France was hereditary in the noble family of the Bourbons. The family has been celebrated from the earliest times in French history.

Brignais. A small town in France, near Lyons, on the river Garon.

P. 68, l. 27.—**Rood.** Cross.

P. 69, l. 4.—**Saddle-backed.** Hollow backed. **Swine-backed.** Convex.

P. 69, l. 11.—**Rover.** A shot at a casual mark of uncertain distance.

Long-butts. A stationary mark, placed some distance away upon a mound of earth.

P. 69, l. 12.—**Hoyles.** A mark used by archers when shooting at rovers.

P. 69, l. 19.—**Quarrel.** The arrow of the crossbow.

P. 70, l. 9.—**Peregrine falcon.** A wandering falcon or hawk.

P. 71, l. 6.—**Clout.** The centre of the target.

P. 74, l. 3.—**Assoil.** Pardon.

P. 74, l. 28.—**Cantle.** A piece or fragment.

P. 75, l. 5.—**Mantlet.** Shield.

P. 75, l. 13.—**Mon gar.** Mon garcon. My boy.

ROSABELLE.

This poem forms Section XXIII., of Canto VI., of *The Lay of the Last Minstrel.* While the betrothal feast of Margaret of Branksome and Lord Henry of Cranstoun was in progress, the bards who had come with the various leaders exhibited their skill in composition.

The song *Rosabelle* was sung by Harold, "bard of brave St. Clair," who had accompanied Home to the castle. No knowledge of the context is necessary to the interpretation of the poem.

"The third song is intended to represent that wild style of composition, which prevailed among the bards of the northern continent, somewhat softened and adorned by the ministrel's residence in the south. Our readers will probably be struck by the poetical effect of the dramatic form into which it is thrown, and of the indirect description by which everything is most expressively told, without one word of distinct narrative."—*Jeffrey.* Hales adds, "Perhaps its supreme virtue is the simple vigor with which its pictures are drawn. There is no personal intrusion; there is no vain cries and groans; there is no commenting and explaining. The pictures tell their own story and tell it so vividly and thrillingly that nothing more is needed."

For a complete analysis of the poem, for the purpose of illustrating a method of teaching, see *Longer English Poems*, edited by Hales, (The Macmillan Co.), pages 11 to 37. This introduction should be read by every teacher.

P. 75, l. 1.—**Ladies.** The bard addresses himself to the ladies of the castle, who are listening to his song.

P. 75, l. 4.—**Rosabelle.** "This was a family name in the house of St. Clair."—*Scott.*

P. 75, l. 7.—**Castle Ravensheuch.** "A large and strong castle, now ruinous, situated between Kirkcaldy and Dysart, on a steep crag, washed by the Firth of Forth. It was long a principal residence of the Barons of Roslin."—*Scott.*

P. 75, l. 8.—**Tempt.** Attempt or venture.

P. 76, l. 2.—**Inch.** Island. **Sea-Mews.** Gulls.

P. 76, l. 3.—**Water Sprite.** "The spirit of the waters, who, as is vulgarly believed, gives previous intimation of the destruction of those who perish within his jurisdiction, by preternatural lights and noises, and even assists in drowning them."—*Jamieson*, quoted by Stuart.

P. 76, l. 5.—**Seer.** One gifted with second sight, who can foretell the future.

P. 76, l. 6.—**Wet shroud.** Some lady is doomed to be drowned.

P. 76, l. 9.—**Lord Lindesay's heir.** The maiden here betrays herself. Her very anxiety to disclaim this as the reason shows it to be the real source of her anxiety to get back to Roslin.

P. 76, l. 10.—**Roslin.** "The castle and chapel of Roslin, the chief

seat of the St. Clair's, are situated seven miles south of Edinburgh, in the midst of the beautiful vale of the North Esk. The castle was built on a promontory in the glen, approached by a high and narrow bridge. Nothing [now] remains but the ruins of walls and a large, round tower."—*Sykes.*

P. 76, l. 14.—**Ring.** Similar to the modern military sport of tilting at the ring. A ring is suspended from a beam, the contestants are armed with lances, and the object of the sport is to carry away the ring on the lance, while galloping at full speed. It requires quickness of eye and steadiness of hand.

P. 76, l. 18.—**Wondrous blaze.** The chapel of Roslin, erected by William St. Clair in 1446, situated somewhat north of the castle, is one of the finest specimens of architecture in Scotland. The chapel is said to blaze with a mysterious fire previous to the death of any of the descendants of its founder.

P. 76, l. 22.—**Copse-wood.** Brushwood.

P. 76, l. 23.—**Dryden.** A village two miles north of Roslin.

P. 76, l. 24.—**Hawthornden.** About a mile from Roslin. The banks of the Esk are here hollowed into caves, two ranges of which are under the mansion of Hawthornden. These caves are connected by passages with the courtyard of the mansion.

P. 76, l. 26.—**Uncoffined.** Lawson says that the vault in Roslin chapel contains ten of the barons who died before 1690. It was the custom of the St. Clairs to bury their chiefs in complete armor, without coffins.

P. 76, l. 28.—**Panoply.** Armor.

P. 77, l. 2.—**Sacristy.** Vestry, where the sacred vessels are kept.

Altar's pale. The enclosure of the altar; the reference is to the chancel of the church, which contains the altar or communion table.

P. 77, l. 3.—**Foliage-bound.** Roses and leaves are carved on some of the pillars.

P. 77, l. 5.—**Pinnet.** Pinnacle.

P. 77, l. 6.—**Buttress.** A support to the wall, frequently in Roslin chapel, decorated with roses.

P. 77, l. 14.—**Candle, book, bell.** During the funeral service in the Roman Catholic Church candles are lighted, the prayers are read from a book and the bell is tolled.

RALEIGH AND THE QUEEN.

This selection is taken, with omissions, from Chapter XV. of *Kenilworth*. The Earl of Sussex had been very ill, but was rapidly recovering under the treatment of Wayland Smith. Queen Elizabeth, becoming anxious about the health of Sussex, sent her court physician, Masters, to attend him, but Raleigh, one of the squires of Sussex, would not permit the earl, who was sleeping, to be disturbed. Masters returned in great anger to the Queen, who was equally angry when she heard what had happened. Sussex, when he awakened, fearing the displeasure of the Queen, sent his master-of-horse, Blount, to make his excuses and explain matters. Blount took with him Raleigh, and when the selection opens they had arrived only to see preparations being made for the Queen's excursion upon the water.

Further than what is given above, no knowledge of the story is necessary to the study of the selection. The novel relates the love-story of the unfortunate Amy Robsart, who met her death at Cumnor Hall, in order that her husband, the Earl of Leicester, might be saved from disgrace and ruin.

P. 77, l. 3.—**Gentlemen-Pensioners.** "A band of 40 gentlemen and their 6 officers, all entitled esquires, whose office it is to attend the sovereign to and from the chapel royal and on all occasions of ceremony."

P. 77, l. 10.—**Lord Hunsdon.** The chamberlain to the household and cousin of the Queen. His mother, Mary Boleyn, was the sister of Elizabeth's mother.

P. 78, l. 3.—**Young cavalier.** Sir Walter Raleigh (1552-1618). Raleigh had studied for a short time at Oxford, then joined the French Huguenots, with whom he fought for five years. He afterwards won distinction in the Irish wars. After gaining the favor of Elizabeth he rose rapidly in his profession, made many voyages to America, and wrote accounts of some of them. He was beheaded by order of James I.

P. 78, l. 7.—**His companion.** Blount.

P. 79, l. 12.—**Tracy's drap-de-bure.** Tracy was a fellow-squire in attendance on Sussex. A *drap-de-bure* is a woolen cloak.

P. 79, l. 17.—**Cuerpo.** Without a cloak, naked.

P. 79, l. 23.—**Master-of-horse.** Lieutenant, next-in-command.

P. 80, l. 2.—**Good jere.** Good year. A meaningless expletive, probably a contraction of "As I hope for a good year."

P. 83, l. 4.—**Masters.** The physician.

THE DEACON'S MASTERPIECE.

This poem is taken from Chapter XI. of *The Autocrat of the Breakfast Table.* This is one of the few humorous poems that will bear re-reading, resembling in this respect *John Gilpin* and some of Lowell's [redacted]

P. 84, l. 2.—**Georgius Secundus.** George II. of England.

P. 84, l. 3.—**German hive.** George was a son of George I. of England, who was Elector of Hanover, in Germany, before he became king of England.

P. 84, l. 4.—**Lisbon town.** The great earthquake of Lisbon took place on November 1, 1755. Over 30,000 persons were destroyed and the greater part of the city. It was, however, very quickly rebuilt.

P. 84, l. 6.—**Braddock's army.** The English and colonial forces under General Braddock, marching to the attack of Fort Duquesne, were defeated on the banks of the Monongahela by a mixed force of French and Indians. The defeat ended in a massacre and headlong rout.

THE WINTER LAKES.

Anyone who has visited the Great Lakes, particularly the Thunder Bay district of Lake Superior, cannot but be struck with the beauty and aptness of the description here given. There are probably few poems that give such perfect description in such few words; it is astonishingly compact in its expression. This poem may be studied from the rhetorical as well as from the literary standpoint.

THE CAPTAINS AT PLYMOUTH.

This selection is arranged from Chapter XXX. of *Westward Ho!* It is not necessary to know the story in order to study this selection, although the book as a whole should be read both for itself and for the spirit that animates it. It is a glorification of English seamanship and daring in the closing years of the sixteenth century. See Froude's

English Seamen in the Sixteenth Century, (Chas. Scribner's Sons), and *Ballads of the Fleet*, by Rennell Rodd, (Arnold).

The news of the approach of the Spanish Armada had not yet reached Plymouth, where the captains were gathered waiting the signal for action. Kingsley's object here is to give as life-like a picture as possible of the stamp of men who fought for "Queen and Country" in the days of Elizabeth. It is from this standpoint that the selection should be studied.

P. 88, l. 1.—**Last summer.** *Westward, Ho!* was written in 1855. The Russian war broke out in 1854.

P. 88, l. 2.—**Plymouth.** Almost all the names of places here mentioned are in and around Plymouth. Excellent maps showing all these places may be found in the *Encyclopædia Britannica*, Vol. XIX., pages 236-237.

P. 89, l. 7.—**Dry-dock.** A dock from which, after the vessel enters, the water may be withdrawn.

P. 89, l. 14.—**Lime hoys.** A small vessel loaded with lime.

P. 89, l. 23.—**Modern range.** This statement is much more true now than it was at the time it was written. Modern naval guns have a range of from 15 to 18 miles.

P. 89, l. 31.—**Raree-show.** A peep-show.

P. 90, l. 13.—**Black Sea waves.** Referring to the British navy in the Black Sea during the Russian war, 1854-55.

P. 90, l. 27.—**Posse Comitatus.** A legal expression signifying "the power of the county, including the aid and attendance of all knights and other men above the age of 15, within the county." Here the meaning is "all that could be collected together," or "the whole power."

P. 90, l. 28.—**Armada.** The great armament sent by Philip of Spain to crush England. It consisted of 65 galleons, 4 galleasses, 4 galleys and 56 armed merchant vessels.

Lord Howard. Charles Howard of Effingham, the Lord High Admiral (1536-1624). He was a grandson of the Duke of Norfolk and a Roman Catholic.

P. 91, l. 1.—**Prince Hal.** Prince Henry, afterward Henry V. He and Poins wished to spy upon Falstaff. Poins suggested that they put on the drawer's aprons and wait upon him at table. *Henry IV.*, Part II., Act III., Scene 2, lines 189-191. The "drawers" were the inn servants.

P. 91, l. 11.—**Walter Raleigh.** See Book V., page 77.

P. 91, l. 12.—**Lord Sheffield.** Not noted for anything in particular, other than that he fought bravely against the Armada.

P. 91, l. 14.—**Sir Richard Grenville.** (1541-1591.) In early youth he served under Maximilian against the Turks. He was actively engaged in the various wars against the Spaniards, fought his ship against the Armada, and finally died on board *The Revenge*, fighting the whole Spanish fleet. Read Tennyson's *The Revenge*.

P. 91, l. 18.—**Sir Robert Southwell.** A member of one of the most noted Roman Catholic families in England.

P. 91, l. 30.—**Francis Drake.** One of England's most famous naval heroes. (1540-1595.) His life was one long warfare at sea against the Spaniards. He was the first man to circumnavigate the globe. He died while on an expedition against the Spaniards, and was buried at sea. Read "Drake's Drum" in *Admirals All*, by Henry Newbolt, (John Lane). See also *Drake*, by Julian Corbett, in *English Men of Action*, (The Macmillan Co.).

P. 92, l. 9.—**John Hawkins.** One of the famous Elizabethan seamen. (1520-1595). He is said to have been the first Englishman engaged in the slave-trade.

P. 92, l. 13.—**Armageddon.** *Revelations* xvi., 16.

P. 92, l. 18.—**Martin Frobisher.** One of the early pioneers of English discovery. (1535-1594.) He made an attempt to discover the North-West Passage.

John Davis. A famous English sailor, who made three voyages in search of a North-West Passage. Davis Strait is named after him. He was killed by the Japanese in 1605.

P. 92, l. 20.—**Fenton, Edward.** (1550-1603.) He accompanied Frobisher on his voyages in search of a North-West Passage. He was given command of four vessels for purposes of exploration, but did not succeed in circumnavigating the globe.

Withrington. One of the Elizabethan heroes. Hakluyt gives an account of his voyage to the southern seas.

P. 92, l. 23.—**George Fenner.** In 1566 Fenner made a voyage to the Cape Verde Islands and the coast of Africa.

Seven Portugals. Probably the Cape Verde Islands, about 200 miles from the coast of Africa, in the North Atlantic Ocean.

Leicester. The Earl of Leicester, the favorite of Elizabeth. At this time he was in command of the land forces of England.

P. 92, l. 28.—**Richard Hawkins.** He was a brave seaman, but in an expedition in 1593 against the Spaniards in Peru, he was captured and held prisoner for some years in spite of his father's efforts to release him.

P. 92, l. 30.—**William.** Nothing is known of him except that he bore himself bravely in a fight in Porto Rico, and that John Hawkins erected a monument to his memory.

P. 93, l. 4.—**Amyas.** Sir Amyas Leigh, the hero of *Westward Ho!*

P. 93, l. 6.—**Captain Barker.** John Barker, the brother and partner of Andrew Barker.

P. 93, l. 7.—**Andrew Barker.** A Bristol merchant, who was engaged in numerous commercial enterprises, but had suffered severely at the hands of the Spaniards. In 1576 he resolved to pay back his enemies, and sailed for America with two ships. He succeeded in doing much damage, but a mutiny broke out, and Barker, with some of his followers, was turned adrift in Honduras. Here they were surprised by the Spaniards and all killed.

John Oxenham. Sailed with Drake on several of his voyages. After waiting in vain for Drake to lead another expedition, Oxenham set out with his own crew in a ship of 120 tons. At first they met with success, but, grown careless, were surprised by the Spaniards and defeated. Oxenham was captured and hanged at Lima in 1575.

P. 93, l 11.—**Accounts.** The interest of *Westward Ho!* centres around the efforts of Amyas Leigh and his comrades to recover Rose Salterne, a beautiful young English girl, who had been induced by a Spanish prisoner of war, Don Guzman, to accompany him to America. In the expedition, Francis Leigh, the brother of Amyas, was captured and put to death by the Spaniards. Rose Salterne met a similar fate. From that time onward Amyas lived only for revenge.

TO THE DANDELION.

In this poem, one of his earliest, Lowell shows almost a Wordsworthian fondness for nature. His delight in the beauty of the flower, the associations that it brings up, and the inevitable lesson with which it concludes strongly remind us of Wordsworth. However, the somewhat recondite allusions and the pronounced use of figure are characteristics all Lowell's own. The melody and easy flow of the verse, as well as the peculiar verse form, should be noted.

P. 92, l. 5.—**Buccaneers.** Originally Frenchmen, who were driven from Hayti, where they were engaged in *buccaning* or hunting wild cattle and curing their flesh, by the Spaniards, who claimed the exclusive right to the New World. These Frenchmen were joined by many English adventurers, and together they made it their business to prey upon the Spaniards. Soon, however, they ceased to attack the Spaniards alone, and became, in effect, pirates.

P. 93, l. 6.—**Eldorado.** A land of gold and precious stones, supposed to exist somewhere in the American continent. The Spanish adventurers of the sixteenth century were constantly engaged in the search for this mythical land. The word has come to mean a land in which wealth is easily acquired.

P. 93, l. 10.—**Spanish prow.** The Spaniards claimed the whole of the New World as their possession. Their ships were engaged constantly in the search for wealth among the undiscovered seas. *Indian* refers here to both the East Indies and the West Indies or the islands of the new world.

P. 93, l. 14.—**Largess.** Bounty.

P. 94, l. 5.—**Mine Italy.** A look at the dandelion brings Italy before him.

P. 94, l. 12.—**Sybaris.** A city in Magna Græcia, in the south of Italy, noted for the luxurious and enervating lives led by the inhabitants.

P. 94, l. 23.—**Earliest thoughts.** See Wordsworth's *To the Cuckoo.*

P. 94, l. 30.—**Untainted ears.** Uncontaminated by the world.

P. 95, l. 9.—**God's book.** Nature.

THE VOYAGE.

This selection has the first place in *The Sketch Book.* It was originally published in New York in 1819, and at once included in an edition published in London in the next year. It is a sketch of a personal experience of Irving on his voyage to Europe.

THE WATER-FOWL.

"When Bryant journeyed on foot over the hills to Plainfield on December 15, 1815, to see what inducements it offered him to com-

mence there the practice of the profession to which he had just been licensed, he says in one of his letters that he felt 'very forlorn and desolate.' The world seemed to grow bigger and darker as he ascended, and his future more uncertain and desperate. The sun had already set, leaving behind it one of those brilliant seas of chrysolite and opal which often flood the New England skies, and while pausing to contemplate the rosy splendor with rapt admiration, a solitary bird made its winged way along the illuminated horizon. He watched the lone wanderer until it was lost in the distance. He then went on with renewed strength and courage. When he reached the house where he was to stop for the night, he immediately sat down and wrote the lines *To a Water-Fowl*, the concluding verse of which will perpetuate to future ages *the lessons in faith* which the scene had impressed upon him."—*Charles Dudley Warner.*

The poem was written when Bryant was 21 years of age, but was not published until 1818, when it appeared in *The North American Review.*

CROMWELL'S EXPULSION OF THE LONG PARLIAMENT.

This selection is taken from Chapter VI., Vol. X., of Lingard's *History of England.* The Long Parliament had been sitting since 1640, and had now dwindled to a fraction of its former self. It had done good work for the nation, but its usefulness had long gone by. Cromwell and the Parliament had been engaged in a struggle for some time. The Lord-General pressed for reforms and a new parliament; the Long Parliament, or that faction of it led by Sir Harry Vane, were bent on perpetuating themselves in office. At last Vane was on the point of having passed a bill, the effect of which would have been to have made the Long Parliament perpetual and supreme. Cromwell was informed of this, and marching to the house, prevented the passage of the bill in the summary manner related in the text.

Oliver Cromwell, by Frederic Harrison, in *Twelve English Statesmen*, (The Macmillan Co.), contains an excellent account of the expulsion of the Long Parliament, and the reasons for the act. Harrison entirely agrees with Lingard. Sir Walter Scott's *Woodstock* is an interesting, if somewhat prejudiced study of this period.

P. 104, l. 10.—**Harrison.** A member of the Long Parliament and entirely devoted to Cromwell. He was a Colonel during the Civil War, and was raised to the rank of General. It was he who conducted

the removal of Charles I. to Windsor. He was afterwards leader of the Anabaptists.

P. 104, l. 21.—**Presbyterians.** Cromwell and the army were Independents, the Parliament clung to the Presbyterian form. The former believed in freedom of worship, the latter wished to insist on the Presbyterian forms and doctrines.

P. 104, l. 33.—**Wentworth.** A member of the Long Parliament. He was one of the Commissioners appointed to try the King, but refused to act. After the death of Cromwell he again took part in public affairs, and died at a very advanced age.

P. 105, l. 2.—**Servant.** As a general in the army, he was subject to Parliament.

P. 105, l. 13.—**Sir Henry Vane.** (1612-1662.) Vane was for some years Governor of Massachusetts. He returned to England, became a member of the Long Parliament, greatly helped in the impeachment of Strafford, and was head of the Naval department. He opposed Cromwell and retired into private life. After the Restoration he was executed for treason.

P. 105, l. 19.—**Whitelock.** (1605-1676.) One of the most valued members of the Long Parliament. He managed the impeachment of Strafford, and was one of the Commissioners appointed to treat with Charles I. He refused to take any part in the trial of the king. He filled many offices under the Commonwealth, among others that of Speaker of the House of Commons. After Cromwell's death he was President of the Council of State. He was included in the Act of Oblivion passed at the Restoration.

P. 105, l. 20.—**Chaloner.** Both James and Thomas Chaloner were members of the Long Parliament, and judges at the trial of Charles I. The former died in 1661, the latter in 1662.

P. 105, l. 27.—**Algernon Sydney.** (1622-1683.) Sydney was a younger son of the Earl of Leicester. He saw service in Ireland, and commanded a regiment during the war between the king and the Parliament. He was one of the judges at the trial of the king, but was not present at the condemnation. He did not hold office under Cromwell, but became a member of the Council of State after the death of the Protector. He remained in exile on the Continent until 1677. He was executed for alleged complicity in the Rye House Plot.

P. 106, l. 3.—**Alderman Allan.** One of the members of the Long Parliament. His name has not an important place in history.

P. 106, l. 11.—**Whitehall.** The Royal Palace in London.

P. 106, l. 12.—**Council.** The Council of State, which was at this time the executive of the nation, was in reality a joint committee of the Parliament and the army.

P. 106, l. 13.—**Bradshaw.** (1602-1659.) Bradshaw was an able lawyer, and was chosen President of the High Court of Justice that tried Charles I. He opposed Cromwell's assumption of the supreme power. He again entered public life for a short time after the death of the Protector, but died before the Restoration.

P. 106, l. 26.—**Parricidal hands.** The army, the child of the Long Parliament, proved its destruction. The Parliament had sat since 1640 and was dissolved in 1652.

THE PRAIRIES.

In 1832 Bryant made a journey to Illinois to visit his mother and brothers, who some years before had settled in the distant West. During this journey, which at that time took two weeks, Bryant made those observations which resulted at once in *The Prairies.*

To one who has seen the prairies the description must seem at once beautiful and accurate. The high imaginative power displayed throughout is on a level with the reverent and solemn tone of the poem, while towards the end the poet seems to rise on the very wings of prophecy. The poem also lends itself to the study of pictures in verse.

P. 107, l. 3.—**No name.** Prairie is a French word, meaning "meadow."

P. 107, l. 21.—**Limpid.** Clear.

P. 107, l. 22.—**Fountains of Sonora.** One of the Northwestern states of Mexico, drained into the Gulf of California.

P, 107, l. 23.—**Calm Pacific.** The *Pacific* Ocean was so called, because when discovered in 1521 it was perfectly calm.

P. 108, l. 9.—**Our Eastern hills.** In the first edition of Book V., "our" was printed "the." The reference is to the hills of the New England States.

P. 108, l. 17.—**Mighty mounds.** The original inhabitants of North America have been named Mound Builders, because of the mounds builded by them as burial places for the dead and as a defence against their enemies. These mounds are scattered over the continent. Many of them have been thoroughly examined and indicate a high state of

civilization. Very little, however, is known of this extinct people. One of the mounds is 70 feet high and 900 feet in circumference. There are said to be 10,000 of these mounds in Illinois alone.

P. 108, l. 24.—**Pentelicus.** A mountain in Attica, from which the Greek sculptors obtained the marble used in their building operations and for their statuary. The name of the mountain is here used for the marble taken from it.

P. 108, l. 26.—**Parthenon.** The temple of Pallas Athene, which crowned the Acropolis at Athens. It was 227 feet long, 101 feet broad and 65 feet high, and was built entirely of white marble.

P. 108, l. 28.—**Haply.** Perhaps.

P. 109, l. 3.—**Vanished.** Bryant adopts the theory that the Mound Builders were exterminated by the Indians.

P. 109, l. 10.—**Unknown gods.** Gods of whom we know nothing.

P. 109, l. 11.—**Barriers.** Many of these mounds are miles in length, and could have had no other object than that of defence.

P. 109, l. 32.—**Quickening.** Life-giving.

P. 110, l. 5.—**Missouri's springs.** The headwaters of the Missouri.

P. 110, l. 6.—**Oregon.** Now the Columbia River.

P. 110, l. 7.—**Venice.** Referring to the huts erected by the beavers. Venice is built on a large number of small islands, the canals being the streets of the city. There may be a reference here to the fact that Venice was so built as a refuge from the incursions of the barbarian tribes of the North.

P. 110, l. 10.—**Majestic brute.** The bison or American buffalo. This, of course, was true in 1832, when this poem was written, but the bison is now extinct except in parks and private herds.

P. 110, l. 23.—**Golden age.** A period in the world's history, according to the ancients, when the earth was common to all, and brought forth food for its inhabitants of its own accord; purity and innocence reigned supreme; evil and discord were unknown; toil and trouble came not near the happy people.

RIP VAN WINKLE.

This selection is taken from *The Sketch Book*, where it has the fourth place in the table of contents. The story was published for the first time in New York in 1819, and subsequently published with

others in London in the next year. *Rip Van Winkle* was originally prefaced with a statement to the effect that the manuscript of the tale had been found among the papers of Diedrich Knickerbocker, a Dutch historian of the early colonial period. A further statement was added at the end affirming the truth of the tale, as sworn to before magistrates and others.

P. 111, l. 2.—**Kaatskill Mountains.** In the eastern part of New York.

P. 111, l. 3.—**Appalachian.** The general name of the mountain ranges running parallel to the Atlantic coast.

P. 111, l. 24.—**Peter Stuyvesant.** (1602-1682.) The last Director-General of the New Netherlands, appointed in 1645. He held his office until the capture of the country by the English in 1664.

P. 111, l. 9.—**Fort Christiana.** A Swedish fort on the Brandywine, in Delaware, captured by Stuyvesant in 1655.

P. 114, l. 11.—**Galligaskins.** Loose wide breeches.

P. 116, l. 6.—**Junto.** A secret council, which deliberates on affairs of government.

P. 120, l. 13.—**Settlement.** By the Dutch in 1614.

P. 121, l. 3.—**Hollands.** Holland gin.

P. 124, l. 26.—**Night-cap.** During the French Revolution a red cap was looked upon as the symbol of liberty. The people of the village, in order to celebrate the independence of their country, had erected a liberty-pole, crowned with the red cap, and fluttering from it the flag of the United States.

P. 124, l. 23.—**Union—Jonathan.** New names, typical of the change of government.

P. 125, l. 17.—**Congress.** The Parliament of the United States.

Bunker's Hill. Book V., page 42.

Seventy-six. The date of the Declaration of Independence.

P. 125, l. 18.—**Babylonish jargon.** Babylon was built on the site of the tower of Babel.—*Genesis* xi., 9.

P. 125, l. 28.—**Federal—Democrat.** The names of the two political parties formed after the union of the 13 colonies.

P. 126, l. 13.—**Tory.** During the Revolutionary War those who took the side of the mother country were so-called.

P. 126, l. 32.—**Stony Point.** On the Hudson. The fort on this point was captured by the British in 1779, but about six weeks afterwards was recaptured by the colonists.

P. 127, l. 2.—**Antony's Nose.** On the Hudson. See Irving's *History of New York*, Book IV., Chapter VI.

P. 129, l. 29.—**Hendrick Hudson.** A famous English navigator; the discoverer of Hudson's River, Bay and Strait. His crew mutinied in 1611, while in Hudson's Bay, and turned Hudson adrift with 8 men in a boat. They were never heard of again.

BURNS.

In 1822 Halleck paid a visit to Europe. On October 10 he visited the birthplace of Burns, and two days later stood by his grave. The poem *Burns* was written as a result of this visit. When and where the poem was written is not known, but it was published before the return of Halleck to the United States. This poem is considered to be the best memorial poem on Burns yet written. It occupies the place of honor in the memorial volume in honor of Burns, while a framed copy of it hangs on the wall of the cottage in which the poet was born. It also stands as Halleck's best poem, the poem in which he reached his height. This was his own opinion as well as that of his critics. The manly sentiment of the poem, its sympathetic insight, its straightforward expression and melodious verse have made it a universal favorite. See *The Life and Letters of Fitz-Greene Halleck*, by J. G. Wilson, (D. Appleton & Co.), pages 274-282.

In order to appreciate thoroughly this poem, Carlyle's *Essay on Burns* should be carefully read and studied. An excellent edition of the essay, edited by Wilson Farrand, is published by Longmans, Green & Co. Only one who is in intense sympathy with Burns, as was Halleck, can enter into the spirit of the verse. A knowledge of the life of Burns is absolutely necessary to the understanding of the poem. Wordsworth's poems, *At the Grave of Burns* and *Thoughts the Day Following*, should be read with Halleck's poem. They are written from the same standpoint, and are not at all difficult. Lowell's *Incident in a Railroad Car* also brings out the point insisted upon by Halleck. To one who knows the life of Burns, little comment and explanation by way of notes is necessary. See *Life of Robert Burns*, by John Stuart Blackie, in *Great Writers*, (Walter Scott), and *A Primer of Burns*, by W. A. Craigie, (Methuen & Co.).

The following stanzas of the original were omitted from the poem in

Book V. The first two follow the fourteenth, and the last two the sixteenth stanza.

Strong sense, deep feeling, passions strong,
A hate of tyrant and of knave,
A love of right, a scorn of wrong,
Of coward and of slave.

A kind, true heart, a spirit high,
That could not fear, and would not bow,
Were written in his manly eye,
And on his manly brow.

And still, as on his funeral day,
Men stand his cold earth-couch around,
With the mute homage that we pay
To consecrated ground.

And consecrated ground it is—
The last, the hallowed home of one
Who lives upon all memories,
Though with the buried gone.

P. 132, l. 1.—**Loftier themes.** Other poets have had greater subjects with which to deal, have written more and spoken with a more assured tone.

P. 132, l. 7.—**Greener wreath.** A purer and more lasting poetic fame.

P. 133, l. 6.—**Cotter's.** *The Cotter's Saturday Night.* Book V., page 349.

P. 133, l. 8.—**Logan's banks.** The poem entitled *Logan Braes*, beginning:

"O Logan, sweetly didst thou glide
That day I was my Willie's bride."

P. 133, l. 9.—**Master-lay.** *Tam O'Shanter*, the scene of which is laid at Alloway Kirk, near the banks of the Ayr. The story relates how the hero narrowly escaped being done to death by the witches whom he had disturbed at their revelries.

P. 133, l. 17.—**Brief the race.** He died at the age of 37.

P. 133, l. 18.—**Rough and dark.** Burns' life was one long series of struggles against poverty and misfortune.

P. 134, l. 5.—**A Nation.** Scotland.

P. 134, l. 9.—**Pilgrim shrines.** Altars at which pilgrims from all over the world and of all creeds came to pay their devotions.

P. 134, l. 11.—**Delphian vales.** The most famous oracle of antiquity, that of Phœbus Apollo, was situated at Delphi, in Greece. It was consulted by persons from all over the then known world.

P. 134, l. 11.—**Palestine.** The sacred spot to both the Christians and the Jews.

P. 134, l. 12.—**Mecca.** The tomb of Mohammed is at Mecca in Arabia. Mohammedans look upon this as the goal of all their hopes in this world. Tens of thousands of pilgrims visit the tomb every year.

P. 134, l. 14.—**Mitred priests.** The mitre is the symbol of the bishop or churchman high in authority, as the crown is of the king.

P. 134, l. 18.—**Dimmer star.** Who have not become famous.

P. 134, l. 24.—**West.** The western part of the United States.

P. 135, l. 1.—**Doon, Nith, Ayr.** All of these are streams beside which Burns lived, and which he celebrated in his poetry, *e.g.*, *Ye Banks and Braes of Bonnie Doon*, *The Banks of Nith* and *The Bonnie, Bonnie Banks of Ayr*.

P. 135, l. 3.—**Dumfries.** A mausoleum, unsightly and undignified, has been erected in Dumfries to the memory of Burns. Here he and his wife lie side by side. It would have been better had he been allowed to rest in the plain, unpretentious grave in which he was first placed, with the name Robert Burns carved on the simple stone erected by his widow.

THE BELL OF ATRI.

This story is related by the Sicilian in *Tales of a Wayside Inn*. It is a graceful narrative in verse; very little more can be said of the poem. Another version of the story is given in Book III., page 138.

P. 135, l. 1.—**Abruzzo.** A mountainous district in Central Italy.

P. 135, l. 2.—**Roman date.** Dating back to the old Roman times.

P. 135, l. 7.—**Re Giovanni.** King John.

P. 135, l. 13.—**Syndic.** Chief magistrate of the city.

P. 136, l. 5.—**Briony.** A climbing plant, growing wild in the country.

P. 136, l. 7.—**Votive garland.** A wreath of flowers hung at the altar of a saint in pursuance of a vow made.

P. 136, l. 11.—**Falcons.** The hunting of herons, with falcons or hawks trained for the purpose, was a favorite sport of this time.

P. 137, l. 21.—**Domeneddio.** An Italian exclamation of surprise.

THE STORY OF MUHAMMAD DIN.

This selection is taken from *Plain Tales from the Hills*, published in 1890. The story is prefaced with the words: "Who is the Happy Man? He that sees in his own house at home little children crowned with dust, leaping and falling and crying."

P. 139, l. 3.—**Khitmatgar.** Table servant and valet.

P. 140, l. 10.—**Budmash.** A rascally fellow, a scoundrel.

P. 140, l. 12.—**Jailkhana.** The jail.

P. 140, l. 15.—**Sahib.** A term of respect used in addressing Europeans.

P. 140, l. 31.—**Salaam.** Corresponding to "Good day," or "How do you do?"

P. 141, l. 14.—**Bhistie.** Water-carrier.

P. 142, l. 7.—**Bearer.** In India this word means either a domestic servant or a palanquin-carrier.

THE BURIAL OF MOSES.

This poem is based on *Deuteronomy* xxxii., 48-50, and xxxiv., 5, 6. The sublimity of the scene in the poem is equalled only by the solemnity and beauty of treatment, while the suitability of the expression to the thought is most marked. Note the use made of contrast throughout.

SEDGEMOOR.

This selection is taken from Chapter V., Vol. I., of Macaulay's *History of England*. The chapter deals fully with the causes, rise, progress and results of Monmouth's rebellion.

Monmouth, the illegitimate son of Charles II. and nephew of James II., had resolved to attempt to wrest the crown of England from his uncle. Declaring himself to be the lawful heir to the crown and the champion of the Protestant cause, he set sail from Holland with three ships and landed at Lyme on June 11, 1685. He was accompanied by a small force and some experienced officers, but the major portion of his advisers were discredited exiles and religious bigots. He was cordially received by the people of the west counties, obtained some slight successes over the royal army, and finally reached Taunton,

where he assumed the title of king. The peasants flocked to his standard until he had an army of 6,000 men, rude and undisciplined, but brave and devoted to the cause. The royal troops had been hurriedly massed and were now at Sedgemoor, about 3 miles from Bridgewater, under General Feversham. A night attack was agreed upon; the result is described in the text. See Green's *Short History of the English People*, (The Copp, Clark Co), Chapter IX., Section VI., and Grant's *British Battles on Land and Sea*, (Cassell & Co.), Vol. I., Chapter LXVI.

Conan Doyle's *Micah Clarke* describes in a very vivid manner the progress of Monmouth's rebellion, and gives a very graphic description of Sedgemoor. A similar account is given in Blackmore's *Lorna Doone*.

P. 145, l. 1.—**Great hazard.** The stroke upon which all their future depended; defeat here meant hopeless ruin.

P. 146, l. 4.—**Castle.** The castle at Bridgewater, where Monmouth had taken up his residence.

P. 146, l. 12.—**Grey.** Ford Grey, Lord Grey of Wark, one of the English exiles in Holland, a man of worthless character but of considerable ability. On June 14, Grey with 500 men attacked the local militia at Bridport. The militia fled, but soon rallied and made a stand. Grey and his cavalry fled in turn, and did not stop running until they had reached the main body of the army.

P. 146, l. 22.—**Rhines.** Ditches.

P. 146, l. 29.—**Wains.** Wagons.

P. 147, l. 5.—**Horse Guards.** The king's regiment.

P. 147, l. 9.—**Weston Zoyland.** A small village a few miles from Bridgewater.

P. 147, l. 20.—**Churchill.** Afterwards the Duke of Marlborough. He was in command of the Blues at this battle. See Book III., page 121.

P. 148, l. 6.—**Matches.** Each soldier carried matches, by means of which he set fire to the powder in his gun and caused the discharge.

Dumbartons. Each regiment in the English service had a specific name.

P. 148, l. 22.—**Feversham.** The commander of the king's troops, an utterly incompetent general, despised alike by his officers and by his men. He was a Frenchman, the younger brother of the Duke de Lorges and a nephew of Turenne. He emigrated to England, where Charles II. gave him the title of Baron Duras. He was at one time

the English ambassador at the court of France. James II. created him Earl of Feversham, and made him commander-in-chief of the English army.

P. 149, l. 13.—**Rode from the field.** After wandering through the fields and ditches for some time, Monmouth was captured, sent to London, and there executed for treason.

P. 149, l. 19.—**Oglethorpe.** The colonel of the Life-Guards.

P. 149, l. 29.—**Sarsfield.** One of the ablest of the Jacobite commanders. He took a prominent part at the Boyne. After the defeat of James in Ireland, Sarsfield with the greater part of the army passed over to France and entered the service of Louis. He was killed at Landen in 1693. See Book IV., page 323.

THE THIN RED LINE.

This selection is an extract from one of the letters sent by Sir William Howard Russell, special correspondent of the London *Times*, to his paper immediately after the battle of Balaclava, October 25, 1854. The letters were subsequently edited and published in book form in 1855, under the title *Letters from the Crimea*. The complete letter may be found in Chambers' *Cyclopædia of English Literature*, Vol. II., page 620.

The repulse of the Russian cavalry by 550 men of the 93rd Highlanders under Sir Colin Campbell and the charge of the Heavy Brigade are the two incidents here related. (See Book V., page 56.) The Turks in the forward redoubts had been cut in pieces by the Russians, whose cavalry was among them. In their flight they fell back upon the second line, the Highland Brigade, who stood waiting for the charge. Fitchett, in *Fights for the Flag*, gives a graphic account on pages 274-5 of the conduct of the Highlanders on this occasion: "Sir Colin Campbell had previously ridden down the line and told his soldiers, 'Remember there is no retreat from here, men. You must die where you stand.' And from the kilted privates came the cheerful answer, 'Ay, ay, Sir Colin; we'll do that.'" See *British Battles on Land and Sea*, by James Grant, Vol. III.

P. 150, l. 5.—**Companions.** The last charge together of these two regiments was at Waterloo.

P. 151, l. 1.—**Light Cavalry Brigade.** The famous charge of the Light Brigade took place a few hours after the incidents here related.

P. 151, l. 12.—**Minié.** The name by which the muskets were known.

P. 151, l. 23.—**Sir Colin Campbell.** (1792-1863.) He entered the army in 1808, served through the Peninsular war, in China, India, the Crimea, and was sent to India in 1857 to suppress the Indian Mutiny. His conduct of the operations in India was a brilliant success. He was raised to the peerage as Lord Clyde. See *Colin Campbell* by Archibald Forbes in *English Men of Action*, (The Macmillan Co.).

P. 151, l. 31.—**Muscovite.** Russian.

P. 152, l. 2.—**Corps d' élite.** A choice or select troop.

P. 152, l. 11.—**Lord Raglan.** (1788-1855.) The son of the Duke of Beaufort. He served through the Peninsular war, and lost an arm at Waterloo. He was the Commander-in-Chief of the English forces in the Crimea. He died in camp during the war.

P. 152, l. 14.—**Spectators.** Fitchett very pertinently remarks, "That a British general and his staff could be mere spectators in such a scene is very wonderful."

THE PANTHERS.

This selection is taken from *Earth's Enigmas*, where it is entitled, *Do Seek Their Meat From God*, thus revealing the meaning and the intention of the story. Before being included in *Earth's Enigmas* in 1896, the story was published in the Christmas number of *Harper's Magazine* for 1892. Roberts says, "This story, like several others in *Earth's Enigmas*, is intended to call attention (without any attempt at solution) to the terrible problem of suffering—the fact that the good of one creature involves the anguish of another."

THE DRAGON FLY.

This poem is taken from *At Minas Basin, and Other Poems*, published in 1897.

Some years ago a gentleman was walking along a roadway in the neighborhood of Minas Basin. He observed ahead of him a tall figure, leaning over the railing of a small bridge and evidently interested in what was going on in the water beneath. On coming up, the figure straightened up, and in the most excited tones shouted, "See!

dragon-flies! dragon-flies!" What Dr. Rand had seen in the dragon-flies that day in a dim and shadowy manner took definite form some time after, and this beautiful poem is the result. To every reader it suggests something more than is on the surface; it seems to shadow the relationship between the present life and the life to come. The chapter entitled "Not Lost but Gone Before," in Vol. I. of Mrs. Gatty's *Parables from Nature*, (The Macmillan Co.), is an admirable commentary upon the poem, and if possible should be read in class.

ENGLISH SCENERY.

This selection is taken from *A Trip to England*, published in 1891. There is nothing in it that requires annotation. A map of the British Isles should be used in teaching the selection.

BLOW, BLOW, THOU WINTER WIND.

This is the song sung by Amiens to the banished Duke in the forest of Arden, in Scene 7, Act II., of *As You Like It*. The poem is perfectly clear without any reference to its context, although it has a deeper meaning in the drama than appears here. The song explains itself.

HAIL TO THE CHIEF.

This song forms sections 19 and 20 of Canto II. of *The Lady of the Lake*. Roderick, the chief of Clan Alpine, had been absent on a foraging expedition in the Lowlands; his warriors, as they neared their home, sang the *Boat Song* in honor of their chieftain and in token of the triumphant outcome of the expedition under his leadership. See Book IV., page 14.

Two points in the Highland character are brought out in this poem, the love for chieftain and clan and the love of the excitement of conflict. The verse has a martial ring about it, and a lilt which gives a pleasing as well as a vigorous effect.

P. 169, l. 2.—**Ever-green pine.** The badge of Clan Alpine was a pine-tree, with the motto "Thy race is royal."

P. 169, l. 7.—**Bourgeon.** Bud.

P. 169, l. 10.—**Roderigh, etc.** "Black Roderick, the descendant of Alpine." Clan Alpine included the Macgregors, Mackinnons, Macnabs, and the clans that claimed descent from Kenneth Macalpine, the founder of the Scottish monarchy. Black is applied to Roderick on account of his swarthy complexion.

P. 169, l. 12.—**Beltane.** A Celtic festival celebrated about the first of May. The name of the festival is here applied to the time at which it is held.

P. 169, l. 14.—**Menteith, Breadalbane.** Districts on the Highland border, inhabited by the Macgregors. The Campbells, however, were the principal occupiers of Breadalbane.

P. 170, l. 2.—**Banochar, etc.** All the places mentioned in this stanza are in the neighborhood of Loch Lomond and were the scenes of depredations by the Macgregors of Clan Alpine.

P. 170, l. 5.—**Saxon.** Lowland.

WESTMINSTER ABBEY.

This selection is a portion of *The Spectator* article for Friday, March 30, 1711, and is No. 26. Westminster Abbey was originally built in 616 by Sebert, King of the West Saxons, and added to by Edward the Confessor and by Henry III. The length of the building is 531 feet and the width across the transepts 203 feet, while the roof is 102 feet high. The Abbey is the burial-place of the great and good of England. Probably the most attractive part of the church is the Poets' Corner, where lie buried the great men who made English literature. For nearly 1,000 years the kings and queens of England have been crowned in the Abbey.

P. 171, l. 10.—**Prebendaries.** "Functionaries of a cathedral church, so called from the 'prebend' or portion received for their maintenance."—*Leighton.*

THE BIRDS OF KILLINGWORTH.

This poem was first published in *The Atlantic Monthly* for December, 1863. It is the tale told by the Poet in *The Tales of a Wayside Inn.*

"Killingworth, in Connecticut, was named from the English town, Kenilworth, in Warwickshire, and had the same orthography in the early records, but was afterwards corrupted into its present form. Sixty or seventy years ago, according to Mr. Henry Hull, writing from personal recollection, 'the men of the northern part of the town met yearly in the spring choose two leaders, and then two sides were formed; the side that got beaten should pay the bills. Their usual game was the hawk, the owl, the crow, the blackbird and any other bird supposed to be mischievous to the corn. Some years each side would bring them in by the bushel. This was followed up for only a few years, for the birds began to grow scarce.' The story, based upon some such slight suggestion, was Mr. Longfellow's own invention."—*Note to Riverside edition of Longfellow.*

P. 172, l. 2.—**Merle and Mavis.** The blackbird and the thrush.

P. 172, l. 4.—**Cædmon.** One of the early Saxon poets, who lived in the seventh century. To him has generally been attributed the *Paraphrase*, a metrical version of selected portions of scripture. It is doubtful, however, whether Cædmon wrote it; indeed, many critics doubt the existence of the poet himself.

P. 172, l. 12.—**Holy Writ.** The Scriptures. *Matthew* x., 29.

P. 172, l. 15.—**Ravens.** The raven is not the same bird as the crow.

P. 172, l. 17.—**Sound.** The name of this Sound is unknown.

P. 173, l. 10.—**Cassandra.** See Book IV., page 35.

P. 173, l. 13.—**Town-meeting.** A gathering of the citizens.

P. 173, l. 16.—**Black-mail.** Properly extortion by means of threats of exposure.

P. 173, l. 19.—**Skeleton.** At feasts in ancient days, in Egypt and other countries, it was customary, when the merriment was at its height, to have placed at the board a skeleton, in order to bring the idea of mortality home to the guests.

P. 173, l. 22.—**Fluted.** Furrowed.

P. 173, l. 32.—**Edwards on the Will.** Jonathan Edwards (1703-1758) was one of the ablest of American scholars and thinkers. He was a Connecticut clergyman, with strong Calvinistic leanings. His great work is on *The Freedom of the Will.*

P. 174, l. 2.—**Adirondack.** Mountains in northern New York.

P. 174, l. 6.—**Hill of Science.** Note the pretentious name.

P. 175, l. 5.—**Plato.** A celebrated Grecian philosopher (429-327 B.C.),

the author of *The Republic*. From this ideal Commonwealth Plato banished, without mercy, the poets.

Reviewers. The literary critics. Literature was beginning to be recognized as a profession.

P. 175, l. 9.—**Troubadours.** The love-poets and minstrels of Southern France during the Middle Ages.

P. 175, l. 12.—**David, etc.** I. *Samuel* xvi., 23.

P. 175, l. 25.—**Weevil.** Beetles.

P. 175, l. 26.—**Interpreters.** They express their thoughts in their singing.

P. 176, l. 8.—**Madrigals.** A love poem of three or four stanzas, containing some simple, delicate thought suitably expressed.

P. 176, l. 24.—**Hurdy-gurdies.** The common barrel-organ.

P. 176, l. 26.—**Roundelay.** A song in which the first strain is repeated. The word was originally applied to a peculiar form of verse, in which eight stanzas of the poem were of one kind and five of another, there being thirteen in all.

P. 176, l. 27.—**Field-fare.** Not an American bird, nor is it little. The bird belongs to the thrush family, is of considerable size, and is found in Great Britain.

P. 177, l. 4.—**Crying havoc.** "Cry 'Havoc,' and let slip the dogs of war."—*Shakespeare.*

P. 177, l. 21.—**Another audience.** The women of the village.

P. 178, l. 4.—**St. Bartholomew.** Referring to the great massacre of the Huguenots in France, which began on August 24, 1572, St. Bartholomew's day. More than 70,000 persons are said to have perished in the massacre.

P. 178, l. 13.—**Herod.** *Matthew* ii., 16, and *Acts* xiii., 23.

P. 178, l. 16.—**Canker-worms.** A worm very destructive to trees.

P. 178, l. 32.—**Doomsday book.** The book in which was recorded by order of William the Conqueror complete information in regard to every person and piece of land in the kingdom. It was so called because it was the final authority on certain matters.

P. 179, l. 17.—**Canticles.** Songs. The word is applied to *The Songs of Solomon.*

WESTMINSTER ABBEY.

This selection is taken from *The Sketch Book*, but is a mere fragment of the original paper, the whole of which, if possible, should be read by

the student. Compare with this Addison's article on the same subject, page 170.

P. 183, l. 9.—**Shakespeare—Addison.** See "Biographical Sketches."

THE LAY OF THE PHŒNIX.

This song is sung by Edith, in Chapter II., Book X., of *Harold, the Last of the Saxon Kings.* It is a free translation of an old Anglo-Saxon *Lay* of the tenth or eleventh centuries, but Lytton has taken great liberties not only with the language but also with the thought. It is a capital example of the alliterative poetry of the Saxons. The translator has preserved much of the spirit as well as the form of the original. Note the peculiar metre, the single-word metaphors and the alliteration of the poem; all these are peculiar to the *Lay* itself.

The doctrine of the immortality of the soul seems to be shadowed forth in this poem, or perhaps it was the belief in such a doctrine that led to the conception of the bird.

P. 184, l. 3.—**Fire-east.** Lit by the rays of the rising sun.

P. 184, l. 5.—**Dight.** Arranged.

P. 184, l. 7.—**Balm-y-filled.** Filled with balm. The "y" is a relic of the old participle prefix "ge," as seen in the German *gefunden*, the participle of *finden*, to find.

P. 184, l. 14.—**Hail-steed.** Indicating the rushing sound of the hail.

P. 184, l. 17.—**Warding.** Guarding.

Woodholt. A grove of wood.

P. 184, l. 19.—**Sheen.** Bright.

P. 184, l. 20.—**Phœnix.** The story of this fabulous bird is here told.

P. 184, l. 21.—**Lieod.** The people.

P. 185, l. 1.—**Holt-top.** The top of the wood.

P. 186, l. 22.—**Himmel.** Heavens.

KILLIECRANKIE.

This selection is taken from Chapter XIII., Vol. III., of Macaulay's *History of England.* The whole chapter deals with events in Scotland at this period, and should, if possible, be read before the selection is studied. See Book V., page 256.

The immediate occasion for the battle was as follows: The Duke of

Atholl, after siding now with one side and now with the other, withdrew himself from the contest. His clansmen, left without a leader, divided into two parts, one declaring for King William and the Convention parliament, the other for Dundee and King James. The former laid siege to Blair Castle, in which a large body of the latter were shut up. On the fate of Blair Castle might depend the fate of all Scotland. Mackay urged his troops forward to the assistance of the besiegers, while Dundee hurried to raise the siege and relieve the castle. About 5 miles from Blair Castle the valley of the Garry contracts itself into the pass of Killiecrankie, then a wild and inaccessible spot. Here the battle took place. See Green's *A Short History of the English People*, (The Copp, Clark Co.), Chapter IX., Section VIII., *Scotland*, by John Mackintosh in *The Story of the Nations*, (Unwin), Chapters XV. and XVI., and *British Battles on Land and Sea* by James Grant, (Cassel & Co.), Chapter LXVIII.

Dundee was born in 1648. He served under the Prince of Orange, but quarreled with him and returned to Scotland in 1677. He was then employed by the king to hunt down the Covenanters, and so made his name odious in the Lowlands. At the Revolution he sided with the adherents of James, fled from Edinburgh, raised an army in the Highlands, marched southward and fell at Killiecrankie. See *Claverhouse*, by Mowbray Morris in *English Worthies*, (Longmans, Green & Co.).

P. 187, l. 5.—**Saxon.** Lowland Scotch and English.

P. 187, l. 6.—**Celtic.** The Highlanders.

Glengarry. One of the most daring and impetuous of the Highland chieftains. He had under his command about 400 Macdonalds, all members of his own clan.

P. 187, l. 7.—**Lochiel.** Sir Ewen Cameron, of Lochiel, or Black Ewen, was a gracious master, a trusty ally and a terrible enemy. He was the most astute of all the Highland chieftains, and was of great assistance to Dundee in all his operations. He led 700 of his clansmen to the battle.

Of a mind. A short time before this Lochiel and Glengarry had had a fierce quarrel, which threatened to break up the Highland army. The Camerons in one of their incursions had happened to kill a Macdonald, who, however, was a traitor, having shamefully betrayed his clan. But he was a Macdonald and Glengarry demanded vengeance. Dundee succeeded in reconciling the chieftains.

P. 188, l. 25.—**Cannon.** An Irish officer, sent with 300 men by King James to the assistance of Dundee. He was second in command to Dundee, but after the battle could not hold the clans together. He was forced to flee from the country in disguise.

P. 188, l. 26.—**Macdonalds.** The Macdonalds were the hereditary enemies of the Campbells, and at once rushed to arms when the call was heard. There were several branches of the clan represented. The Clanronald Macdonalds were led by an uncle of the chief, who was at this time a mere boy.

P. 189, l. 30.—**James the Seventh.** The seventh James of Scotland.

P. 189, l. 32.—**Jacobite.** Followers of James, from *Jacobus*, the Latin form of the word.

P. 190, l. 2.—**Old troopers.** Members of his cavalry troop, with which he harried the Covenanters. A very vivid picture of the sufferings of the Covenanters at this time is given in S. R. Crockett's *The Men of the Moss-Hags*, (The Macmillan Co.).

P. 190, l. 6.—**Macdonald of Sleat.** The Lord of the Isles, the richest and most powerful of all the Macdonalds.

P. 191, l. 1.—**Lowlanders.** Mackay's army was made up of his own, Ramsay's and Balfour's regiments, composed of Scottish veterans who had seen hard service in the Continental wars. They numbered eleven hundred men in all and were commanded by the Colonels whose names they bore. In addition to these were the King's Own Borderers, a new regiment enlisted on the Scottish border, under the command of David Melville, Earl of Leven, another Scottish regiment newly enlisted and a veteran English regiment known as Hasting's, now the 13th. Two troops of horse also supported him, Lord Annandale's and Lord Belhaven's. Annandale was not at the battle.

P. 191, l. 9.—**Mackay.** A Highlander of noble descent, who had seen long service on the continent. He was a brave man and a good soldier, but totally unused to Highland methods of warfare.

P. 191, l. 20.—**Leven.** One of William's confidential friends and advisers. He rendered great service to his King in Scotland.

P. 193, l. 10.—**The body.** "Dundee was buried in the church of Blair Athol, but no monument was erected over his grave, and the church itself has long disappeared."—*Macaulay.*

ELEGY WRITTEN IN A COUNTRY CHURCHYARD.

This poem was probably, though not certainly, begun in 1742, and reached its completed state in 1750. It is not probable, however, as is generally stated, that Gray was working at the poem all this time. It was at first circulated in manuscript among the poet's friends, and finally published on February 16, 1751, by Dodsley, to prevent its being printed in a cheap current publication.

"The reason of the wide-spread popularity of the poem would seem to lie in the fact that it expresses, in an easy, natural way, feelings and emotions that, time after time, have risen in every breast. Its very naturalness and simplicity win the heart and enlist the sympathies. Speculations on the strange problems of life and death will at times force themselves upon the mind, but on no occasion more than in the presence of the dead. Need it be then wondered at, that an almost irresistible fascination takes possession of the reader when engaged in perusing what to him is largely a reflex of his own meditations."—*Williams.*

"In the *Elegy* the use of nature is highly artistic. The purpose of the poem is a human one—the sympathetic representation of the honorable labor, the innocent joys, the tender and wholesome reflections of the poor, the general tone being that of a pensive melancholy, induced by the thought of death. Nature is used in due subordination to the theme, and with exquisite fitness. Every detail of the opening twilight picture contributes its own touch to prepare the mind for the succeeding reflections on death. The sounds, the tinkling of the distant folds, the droning of the beetle, the complaining of the owl, are such as emphasize silence, which is itself an accompaniment and an emblem of death. The ivy-mantled tower, the rugged elms, the black yews have been immemorially associated with death. There is also a subtle analogy in the withdrawal of light, the life of nature. So, too, each detail in the first picture of morning has its human purpose. The stirring sounds are interesting and of pathetic import, because they once waked an answering throb of life in the hearts of men who now hear them no more. The enumeration of homely country tasks has its chief value in the suggested delight of the workman in his occupation, and the resultant emphasis by contrast on the pathos of death."—*Myra Reynolds.*

Both thought and verse of this poem should be thoroughly studied.

Almost every poetic device known is here employed. It should be memorized by all who study it. Excellent annotated editions are those by Bradshaw, (The Macmillan Co.); Phelps, (Ginn & Co.); Lee, (Blackie), and Hales in *Longer English Poems*, (The Macmillan Co.). See also Phelps' *The Beginnings of the English Romantic Movement*, (Ginn & Co.), and Beers' *A History of English Romanticism in the Eighteenth Century*, (Henry Holt & Co.).

P. 193, l. 1.—**Curfew.** A bell which rang at seven o'clock, according to an ordinance of William the Conqueror, to compel the common people to put out their fires and to go to bed. The time of ringing frequently changed. The French words are *couvre feu*, cover fire.

P. 193, l. 2.—**Wind.** Incorrectly printed "winds" in first edition of Book V.

P. 193, l. 4.—**To me.** The poet here introduces himself as the sole inhabitant of the darkness of the world.

P. 193, l. 6.—**Air.** Object of "holds."

P. 193, l. 10.—**Moping.** In solitariness.

P. 193, l. 11.—**Bower.** Chamber, sleeping-place.

P. 193, l. 15.—**Narrow cell.** The grave.

P. 193, l. 16.—**Rude.** Rustic. **Hamlet.** Village.

P. 194, l. 1.—**Incense-breathing.** The fragrant airs of morning.

P. 194, l. 3.—**Clarion.** A clear sounding wind instrument.

P. 194, l. 4.—**Lowly bed.** Humble couch, on which they slept when living, although there is probably a suggestion of the grave.

P. 194, l. 6.—**Care.** Household duties.

P. 194, l. 10.—**Glebe.** Ground.

P. 194, l. 17.—**Boast of heraldry.** Pride of long descent, indicated by the coat of arms. It is the business of heraldry to deal with genealogies.

P. 194, l. 21.—**Fault.** The poor are buried without in the grave-yard, while the wealthy and powerful are buried within the chancel. Let then the proud not blame the poor if their monuments are not found in the choir of the Cathedral.

P. 194, l. 23.—**Fretted vault.** "The arched roof, ornamented with fretwork."—*Bradshaw.*

P. 194, l. 25.—**Storied urn.** Monuments with laudatory inscriptions.

Animated. Life-like.

P. 194, l. 26.—**Mansion.** The body. **Fleeting.** Quickly-passing.

P. 194, l. 27.—**Provoke.** Call forth.

P. 195, l. 2.—**Celestial fire.** "Divinely inspired."—*Phelps.*

P. 195, l. 3.—**Hands, etc.** Men who might have governed great empires.

P. 195, l. 5.—**Knowledge, etc.** They were given no opportunity of acquiring knowledge, the accumulation of many generations.

P. 195, l. 7.—**Rage.** Enthusiasm, fire.

P. 195, l. 8.—**Genial.** Phelps suggests "endowed with genius," but the meaning is probably "natural."

P. 195, l. 13.—**Hampden** (1594-1643). The Englishman who in 1636 refused to pay the ship-money tax levied without the consent of Parliament by Charles I. He was afterwards one of the most influential of the leaders of Parliament. Gray seems to prefer Hampden to Cromwell.

P. 195, l. 14.—**The little tyrant.** An oppressive landlord, little in comparison to Charles I.

P. 195, l. 15.—**Milton,** (1608-1674). The great English poet, author of *Paradise Lost.* He gave up 20 years of his life to the service of his country.

P. 195, l. 16.—**Cromwell.** The great Puritan Protector. Cromwell was much misunderstood at this time. He was considered by Gray as little more than a murderer, although his high qualities as a statesman were recognised. See Book V., page 104.

P. 195, l. 17.—**The applause, etc.** The order is "Their lot forbade (them) to command the applause, etc."

P. 195, l. 18.—**The threats, etc.** The powerful can afford to despise that which is always a source of terror to the poor.

P. 195, l. 19.—**Scatter plenty.** Probably a reference to the administration of Walpole, during which England was prosperous and at peace with all the world.

P. 195, l. 20.—**Read their history.** Estimate their place in history by the regard in which they are held by the people.

P. 195, l. 21.—**Confined.** If prevented from doing good, they were also prevented from doing evil.

P. 195, l. 23.—**To a throne.** Perhaps a reference to Cromwell.

P. 195, l. 25.—**Conscious truth.** What they know to be true and yet struggle to conceal.

P. 195, l. 26.—**Ingenuous.** Candid, natural.

P. 195, l. 27.—**Heap the shrine.** An allusion to the practice, not

extinct in the time of Gray, of writing flattering verses to the luxurious and the proud, in the hope of receiving something from their bounty.

P. 195, l. 28.—**Muse's flame.** The result of poetic inspiration. The Muses were the promoters and inspirers of poetry and the fine arts. See Book IV., page 22.

P. 196, l. 1.—**Madding.** Maddening. It was the current belief during the eighteenth century that a life of peace and innocence was possible only in the country.

P. 196, l. 4.—**Tenor.** Course.

P. 196, l. 5.—**Yet.** Refers back to page 194, line 22.

P. 196, l. 6.—**Still.** Always.

P. 196, l. 7.—**Uncouth.** Ignorant.

P. 196, l. 9.—**Unlettered muse.** An uneducated or illiterate person.

P. 196, l. 11.—**Strews.** The tombstones frequently have texts from scripture carved on them in addition to the name and years.

P. 196, l. 13.—**Forgetfulness.** Either (a) "For who, a prey to dumb forgetfulness, e'er resigned this pleasing, anxious being?" or (b) "For who e'er resigned this pleasing, anxious being to be a prey to dumb forgetfulness."—*Phelps.*

P. 196, l. 14.—**Pleasing, anxious.** Full of pleasures and worries.

P. 196, l. 15.—**Warm, cheerful.** Contrast with the cold dismal grave.

Precincts. Enclosure.

P. 196, l. 19.—**From the tomb.** Indicated by the inscriptions on the tombstones.

P. 196, l. 20.—**Wonted fires.** The same feeling that animated us when living is shewn even in death.

P. 196, l. 21.—**Thee.** The poet himself.

P. 196, l. 22.—**Artless.** Simple.

P. 196, l. 24.—**Kindred spirit.** One who has similar tastes and feelings.

P. 196, l. 25.—**Swain.** Rustic.

P. 196, l. 26.—**Upland lawn.** "Higher ground."

P. 197, l. 3.—**Listless.** Weary, lacking energy.

P. 197, l. 7.—**Woeful—wan.** "Sad and pale."—*Bradshaw.*

P. 197, l. 13.—**Dirges due.** Customary burial service.

P. 197, l. 15.—**Lay.** Poem.

P. 197, l. 17.—**Lap of earth.** A beautiful touch, as if it was his mother's lap, upon which he rested.

P. 197, l. 19.—**Science.** Knowledge did not despise him on account of his humble birth.

P. 197, l. 21.—**Large.** It was all he had.

P. 197, l. 24.—**A friend.** "Perhaps he means God Himself."—*Bradshaw.*

P. 197, l. 27.—**Alike.** The merits and the frailties.

THE MILL ON THE FLOSS.

This selection is taken from the opening chapters of *The Mill on the Floss.* It is purely descriptive and deals with the scene of the story. It is not necessary to know the story to understand this extract.

P. 200, l. 26.—**Mr. and Mrs. Tulliver.** The father and mother of Tom and Maggie Tulliver, the hero and heroine of the novel.

THE ISLES OF GREECE.

This selection comes between Stanzas 86 and 87 of Canto III. of *Don Juan.* The Canto was written in 1819 and published in 1821, the year in which the Greek War for Independence broke out. *Marco Bozzaris* should be read in connection with this poem. Byron himself was much interested in the heroic struggles of the Greeks, and assisted them with money and by his own personal efforts. See *Byron*, by John Nichol, (Macmillan & Co.), Chapter X.

This song is supposed to have been sung at the nuptials, on one of the Greek islands, of Don Juan and Haidée, the daughter of the Greek pirate, Lambro, who was supposed to be dead. It is put in the mouth of a minstrel, whom Byron describes at length. He has travelled much, and suits his singing to his audience. As he is in Greece he sings something national and inspiring. However, as Byron says in his cynical way, "His strain displayed some feeling."

This poem should be memorized; it is an almost perfect specimen of its kind of poetry.

P. 201, l. 1.—**Isles of Greece.** Most of the islands of Greece, especially those of the Ægean Sea, have interesting historical and literary associations connected with them.

P. 201, l. 2.—**Sappho.** One of the most famous poets, as well as one of the most beautiful women of antiquity. She was a native of Lesbos, and was born about B.C. 630. She fell in love with Phaon, a youth of Mitylene, but her love not being returned, she is said to have drowned herself. But few fragments of her writings remain. The Greeks called her the Tenth Muse, and paid divine honors to her after death. **Burning** means "passionate."

P. 201, l. 4.—**Delos—Phœbus.** Delos is one of the Cyclades Islands. When Latona was wandering over the earth to escape the persecutions of Herè, Poseidon caused this island to rise from the sea to afford her a place of refuge. Here Artemis and Phœbus Apollo, the children of herself and Zeus, were born. Phœbus is the name given to Apollo as the sun god. See Book IV., page 23.

P. 201, l. 6.—**Except their sun.** Nature is as beautiful as ever, but they are in a state of complete political servitude.

P. 201, l. 7.—**Scian.** Homer, the great Epic poet of the Greeks, is supposed to have been born at Scio, or Chios, although six other places claim the honor. Scio is an island on the coast of Asia Minor. It was formerly a very populous island, famed for an excellent harbor and for its wine.

Teian. Anacreon, one of the most famous lyric poets of antiquity, was born B.C. 532, at Teos, one of the twelve cities of the Ionian Confederacy in Asia Minor. Byron, following Pliny, makes Teos an island. The songs of Anacreon, which deal principally with love and wine, are still extant.

P. 201, l. 8.—**Hero—Lover.** The poems of Homer deal with heroic subjects, while those of Anacreon are concerned with love.

P. 201, l. 11.—**Echo.** The poetry of Greece has been held in high esteem in western Europe ever since the revival of learning at the close of the Middle Ages.

P. 201, l. 12.—**Islands of the blest.** The Elysian Fields, islands in Hades, where rested after death the souls of the great poets, sages and heroes. It was a land of perpetual peace and beauty. Byron has here followed one tradition which locates the Elysian Fields somewhere in the Atlantic ocean, west of Africa. They are generally identified with the Canary Islands.

P. 201, l. 13.—**Marathon.** A small village 10 miles from Athens, where 11,000 Greeks, under Miltiades, gained a decisive victory over an army of 110,000 Persians, B.C. 490. The Greeks lost 192 men and

the Persians 6,300. See Creasy's *Decisive Battles of the World*, Chapter I.

P. 201, l. 17.—**Persians' grave.** The spot where the Persians were buried.

P. 201, l. 19.—**A king.** Xerxes, King of Persia, who had invaded Greece with an immense army for the purpose of conquering the country. See *Greeks and Persians*, by G. W. Cox, in *Epochs of Ancient History*, (Longman's Green & Co.).

P. 201, l. 20.—**Salamis.** A small island in the gulf of Saronica, the scene of the famous naval engagement between the Greeks and the Persians. The Greeks had 280 ships, and lost about 40, while the Persians, with 2,000 ships, had 200 destroyed, besides a large number captured. The naval power of Persia was completely shattered by this battle. See *Historical Tales—Greece*, by Charles Morris, (Lippincott).

P. 201, l. 20.—**Degenerate.** The lyre, once struck by Homer and Anacreon, has now fallen into the hands of the minstrel who was singing the lay.

P. 202, l. 2.—**Fetter'd.** Greece had been in subjection to Turkey since the fall of Constantinople in 1453.

P. 202, l. 1.—**Dearth of fame.** "Scarcity of heroic patriotism."

P. 202, l. 6.—**Blush.—Tear.** Scorns the people but pities the country.

P. 202, l. 10.—**Spartan.** The Spartans were considered to be the bravest of the Greeks. They were the principal defenders of the pass of Thermopylæ against the Persians; see Book III., page 56. Strangely enough, this request was granted, as shortly after the War of Independence broke out, a battle was fought here for the possession of the pass.

P. 202, l. 16.—**One living head.** See *Marco Bozzaris*, page 64. The one living head arose in that hero. Others, however, followed.

P. 202, l. 20.—**Samian wine.** Samos is an island in the Ægean Sea, near the coast of Asia Minor, famous for its wine.

P. 202, l. 21. **Turkish hordes.** There is a dash of contempt here, as well as an allusion to the numbers of the Turks. The Persians were very many more than the Turks, yet they were conquered.

P. 202, l. 24.—**Bacchanal.** Wine-drinker. The Bacchanals were the devotees of Bacchus, the god of wine, whose festivals they celebrated with drunken orgies. Byron somewhat unjustly charges the Greeks with being nothing more than drunkards.

P. 202, l. 25.—**Pyrrhic dance.** A war dance of the Greeks. "The motions of the body were made in quick time to flute music, and were intended to be a kind of training in the arts of attack and defence, the dancers being completely armed."—*Sykes* and *Wells*. The dance is named after Pyrrhicus, its supposed inventor.

P. 202, l. 26.—**Pyrrhic phalanx.** The Macedonian phalanx, by means of which Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, defeated a Roman army. The soldiers in the phalanx were arranged in ranks from 8 to 16 men deep, and armed with very long lances, which projected out over the shoulders of the men in front. They were also armed with shields, which they locked together, thus presenting an impenetrable front.

P. 202, l. 29.—**Cadmus.** The son of Agenor, king of Phœnicia. He was sent by his father in search of his sister Europa, with express commands not to return until he found her. Not being successful he remained in Greece and founded the city of Thebes, 1450 B.C. He is said to have brought with him from Phœnicia 16 letters of the Greek alphabet.

P. 203, l. 3.—**Anacreon.** See page 201, line 7. Anacreon lived most of his life at Samos in the service of Polycrates. He did not leave Samos until after the death of his patron.

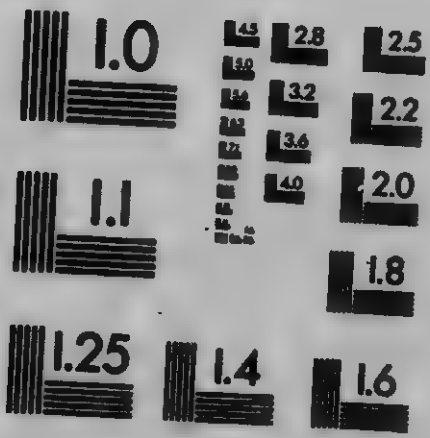
P. 203, l. 4.—**Polycrates.** The tyrant or supreme lord of Samos. He spread his dominions over some of the neighboring islands, and ruled them sternly, but for their benefit. His continual prosperity roused the envy of Orœtes, governor of Magnesia, who invited Polycrates to visit him. Against the advice of his daughter, Polycrates went, was treacherously seized and crucified.

P. 203, l. 7.—**Chersonese.** The Thracian Chersonese, lying between the Hellespont (the Dardanelles) and the Gulf of Melas. The word means "Peninsula."

P. 203, l. 9.—**Miltiades.** The hero of Marathon. He was sent by the Athenians to take possession of the Chersonesus. This he did by treacherously seizing the principal inhabitants. He mounted the throne and soon made himself master of the country, which he ruled with great severity. Returning to Athens, in time to take part in the Persian wars, he was given supreme command at Marathon, where he obtained a decisive victory. He was subsequently given a high naval command, was unsuccessful and was condemned to death. The sentence was commuted to a fine, which he was unable to pay. He died in prison 489 B.C.

MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc
1653 East Main Street
Rochester, New York 14609 USA
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

P. 203, l. 14.—**Suli.** See Book V., page 64, line 13.

Parga. A seaport town on the west coast of Albania.

P. 203, l. 16.—**Doric mothers.** The original home of the Dorians was Doris, in northern Greece. *The Heracleidæ*, or descendants of Hercules, having been expelled from the Peleponnesus, took refuge with the Dorians, who assisted them to regain their dominions. The Dorians remained in the south, and from them were descended the Spartans.

P. 203, l. 19.—**Franks.** Either a general term for the nations of Western Europe, or a specific reference to the French. Napoleon had coquetted with the Turks in 1809. Byron may refer to this or to Louis XVIII., who was then on the French throne, and whom he hated.

P. 203, l. 20.—**Buys and sells.** Puts such matters on a commercial basis. The Greeks in their efforts for freedom must depend on themselves. It was, however, by means of the combined action of the western nations that the Greeks obtained their freedom.

P. 203, l. 23.—**Latin.** The Latin nations of Europe are France, Italy, Spain and Portugal.

P. 204, l. 1.—**Sunium.** A promontory of Attica, 300 feet high, about 50 miles from Athens. Formerly a beautiful marble temple, erected to Pallas Athene, stood there. Some ruins still stand.

LABOR.

This selection is taken from Chapter XI. of the Third Book of *Past and Present*. The general title of the whole book is "The Modern Worker." In this book, Carlyle gives us his great doctrine, the Gospel of Work.

P. 204, l. 5.—**Mammonish.** Mammon is the personification of riches. *Matthew* vi., 24.

P. 204, l. 11.—**Know thyself.** This maxim dates back to Chilo, a Spartan philosopher, one of the seven wise men of Greece, who died B.C. 597.

P. 204, l. 15.—**Hercules.** See Book IV., page 253.

P. 204, l. 26.—**Amorphous.** Shapeless.

P. 207, l. 4.—**Goethe** (1749-1832). The famous German writer and thinker, the author of *Faust* and *Wilhelm Meister*. See "Biographical Sketches."

P. 207, l. 6.—**Columbus.** See Book III., page 203. See also *Columbus*, by Helps, (Bell & Sons.).

P. 207, l. 15.—**Ursa Major.** The great northern constellation, commonly known as the Great Bear or the Dipper. See *The Stars in Song and Legend*, by J. C. Porter, (Ginn & Co.).

THE OCEAN.

This selection forms Stanzas 178-184 of Canto IV. of *Childe Harold's Pilgrimage.*

"Allowing for one or two slips and blots, we must after all replace it (the address to the Ocean) among the choice and high possessions of poetry. After the first there is hardly a weak line, many have a wonderful vigor and melody, and the deep and glad disdain of the sea for men and the works of men, passes into the verse in music and fills it with a weighty and sonorous harmony, grave and sweet as the measured voice of heavy remote waves."—*Swinburne.*

Childe Harold's Pilgrimage has been called "a guidebook to Europe." It contains four cantos, each one of which deals with a portion of the continent. Canto IV., from which this selection is taken, is a descriptive sketch of Italy. The pilgrimage is nearly over. The pilgrims stand on the top of the Alban mount and view the sea in the distance. Then follows the outburst in the text.

P. 208, l. 5.—**Love not man.** "To fly from, need not be to hate mankind."—Canto III., line 653.

P. 208, l. 6.—**I steal.** I withdraw myself.

P. 208, l. 8.—**With the Universe.**

> . . . . When the soul can flee
> And with the sky, the peak, the heaving plain
> Of ocean, or the stars, mingle, and not in vain.
>
> Canto III., lines 486-488.

P. 208, l. 15.—**Save his own.** "Destruction" is understood after "own."

P. 209, l. 5.—**To the skies.** *Psalm* cvii., 26.

P. 209, l. 6.—**And send'st him.** "And causest him to call for aid on his gods, whose shrine, a feeble source of confidence, stands maybe in some neighboring harbor."—*Tozer.*

P. 209, l. 9.—**Lay.** An entirely indefensible vulgarism.

P. 209, l. 10.—**Thunderstroke.** Cannonade.

P. 209, l. 12.—**The oak leviathans.** The huge warships. See Book IV., page 245.

P. 209, l. 14.—**Clay creator.** Man.

P. 209, l. 18.—**Armada's pride.** After the defeat of the Spanish Armada by the English under Lord Howard, what remained of the fleet was shattered by storms. Only a mere fragment of the great armament returned to Spain.

Spoils of Trafalgar.—Almost all the vessels captured by the British fleet at Trafalgar were destroyed by a storm which immediately followed the battle. Out of 20 vessels captured but four were saved. See Book V., page 250.

P. 209, l. 20.—**Assyria, etc.** The great monarchies of the ancient world. See *Assyria*, by Z. A. Ragozin, and *Carthage*, by A. J. Church, in *The Story of the Nations*, (G. P. Putnam's Sons).

P. 209, l. 21.—**Washed them power.** They gained their power through commerce.

P. 209, l. 22.—**Many a tyrant.** Many a tyrant with his fleets came from over the ocean since.

P. 209, l. 29.—**Glasses itself.** God is revealed in the storm.

P. 210, l. 10.—**A delight.** Byron was a very powerful swimmer and very often refers to his exploits.

P. 210, l. 14.—**As I do here.** At the beginning of this address to the Ocean, Byron and Childe Harold are standing upon the Alban mount, but the point of view has been changed; they are now sailing on the ocean.

THE EXECUTION OF SIR THOMAS MORE.

This selection is taken from Chapter IX. (The Catholic Martyrs), Vol. II. of the *History of England*.

Sir Thomas More was one of the most learned Englishmen of his time, eminent alike as a scholar, a writer and a jurist. He early entered the household of the Archbishop of Canterbury as a page, made his mark at Oxford, was called to the bar, and on the disgrace of Wolsey, became Lord Chancellor and confidential adviser of the King. He refused to subscribe to the legality of the King's marriage with Anne Boleyn, and was sent to the Tower. A year later he was charged with denying the King's supremacy as head of the Church, convicted, and executed on July 6, 1535. More was the author of *Utopia*.

P. 210, l. 2.—**Sir Thomas Pope.** An old friend of More's.

P. 211, l. 16.—**Kingston.** The governor of the Tower.

P. 211, l. 19.—**Angel.** A gold coin, worth about $2.50, having on it a figure of the archangel Michael.

Compensation. The clothes of the executed person became the property of the executioner.

P. 212, l. 5.—**Miserere.** *Psalm* li., beginning *Miserere mei, Domine,* Pity me, O Lord!

P. 212, l. 24.—**Biographer.** His grandson, C. More, who wrote his life in 1626. The best life, however, is by William Roper, the son-in-law of More.

THE CLOUD.

This splendid imaginative poem, consisting of a series of statements of simple facts expressed in figurative language, should be very carefully studied. It may seem almost sacrilege, as some one has said, to turn these beautiful metaphors into plain prose, and no doubt a great deal will escape even if this is done, but there is no other way to fix the impression on the mind and to make the picture clear. The imagination should be allowed full scope in the study of the poem.

An excellent annotated edition, is that of Adele Ellis, *Chosen English,* (The Macmillan Co.).

P. 213, l. 2.—**From the seas, etc.** Drawn up by evaporation.

P. 213, l. 3.—**Light shade.** The cloud forms a protection from the heat of the sun.

P. 213, l. 4.—**Dreams.** Noonday sleep.

P. 213, l. 5.—**Wings.** The flying cloud is personified as a bird.

Dews. Light showers.

P. 213, l. 7.—**Mother's breast.** The plant upon which they are growing.

P. 213, l. 8.—**Dances.** Sways to the motion of the breeze.

P. 213, l. 9.—Note the three metaphors in this line.

P. 213, l. 15.—**Pillow.** The cloud seems to be resting on the side of the mountain.

P. 214, l. 1.—**Sublime.** Aloft, the original sense. "The lightning is personified as the pilot which sits upon the towers of the cloud, while underneath in the thick dark bank of the cloud turned towards earth, the thunder is held strugglingly captive."—*Ellis.*

Bowers means "chambers."

P. 214, l. 7.—**Genii.** Spirit.

P. 214, l. 15.—**Sanguine.** Blood-red. **Meteor-eyes.** Dazzlingly bright.

P. 214, l. 16.—**Burning plumes.** Shafts of light shooting upwards.

P. 214, l. 17.—**Rack.** The drifting cloud.

P. 214, l. 18.—**Dead.** Struck by the sunrise.

P. 214, l. 24.—**Ardors.** Burnings, referring to the fires of sunset.

P. 214, l. 29.—**Orbed maiden.** The Greeks personified the moon as the virgin goddess Artemis or Diana.

P. 215, l. 3.—**Woof.** Texture.

P. 215, l. 13.—**The volcanoes, etc.** "When whirlwinds cloud over the sky with flying mists, the flame even of volcanoes is dimmed, and as they whirl across the heavens, the stars seem to be in a sea of vapor, and to move with its movement."—*Ellis.*

P. 215, l. 15.—**Cape to cape.** From one point of land to another.

P. 215, l. 16.—**Torrent.** Raging.

P. 215, l. 19.—**Triumphal arch.** As conquerors march through arches erected in their honor.

P. 215, l. 28.—**Change.** Water is taken up by evaporation; it becomes cloud; it falls in rain upon the earth; it is taken up again, and so the process goes on endlessly.

P. 215, l. 31.—**Convex.** Arched.

P. 216, l. 1.—**Cenotaph.** An empty tomb. The sky being perfectly clear, it would seem as if the cloud had gone forever.

P. 216, l. 2.—**Caverns.** Where the rain has hidden itself.

THE PLAINS OF ABRAHAM.

This selection is taken from Chapter XXVIII. of *The Seats of the Mighty.* With this account, colored as it is by the imaginative element, should be compared Book IV., pages 213-220. A more complete account of the enterprise is given in Parkman's *Montcalm and Wolfe*, Vol. II., Chapter XXVII. Consult notes on Book IV., page 213.

Robert Moray, an English officer, had been captured and taken to Quebec, where he was allowed his liberty on parole, within the limits of the city. During the three years he had remained there he had been welcomed to the house of Seigneur Duvarney, whose life he had saved some years before. Duvarney had a daughter named Alixe, with

whom Moray fell in love, and who returned his attachment. Moray was arrested on a false charge of being a spy, at the instigation of Doltaire, who was in love with Alixe, and wished to remove his rival from his path. In addition Moray was the possessor of a secret of the gravest state importance, which Doltaire had tried in vain to wring from him. But imprisonment and ill-treatment did not shake the constancy of the captive, who was consoled in his prison by frequent messages from Alixe, managed adroitly by Voban, the barber. Gabord, the jailer, also proved kind, and did much to render his captivity bearable. An attempt to escape having been frustrated by the vigilance of Doltaire, Moray induced Gabord to bring Alixe to his cell. They were married there and that same night Moray, with Clark and three others made good their escape. They reached the English forces in safety, and proved very useful to Wolfe during the summer. After the capture of the city Moray was at liberty to begin his search for Alixe, whom he finally found hidden among the mountains, where she had fled to avoid the persecutions of Doltaire.

The novel gives us a very complete and graphic description of the condition of affairs in Quebec during the last days of the French occupation.

P. 216, l. 5.—**Clark.** A ship carpenter, who was a fellow-captive of Moray's and escaped with him.

P. 216, l. 6.—**Forlorn hope.** Parkman says these 24 volunteers were chosen a few hours before the boats embarked.

P. 216, l. 15.—**Midshipman.** John Robinson, afterwards Professor of Philosophy in the University of Edinburgh.

P. 216, l. 22.—**Verses.** See Book V., page 193.

P. 217, l. 3.—**Thirty-two pounders.** The British batteries were worked all night in order to deceive the French as to the real nature of the attack.

P. 217, l. 10.—**Doltaire.** The natural son of Louis XIV., and the agent of La Pompadour, who was resolved to obtain from Moray the secret of which he was possessed. Doltaire was killed in an explosion shortly after the battle on the Plains.

P. 217, l. 25.—**Lancy.** An officer of the household of the Governor, Vaudreuil, who had done his best to make Moray's captivity unpleasant.

P. 218, l. 24.—**Admiral Saunders.** The commander of the British Fleet.

P. 219, l. 12.—**Coureurs de Bois.** See Book IV., page 282.

P. 219, l. 19.—**Vaudreuil.** The last French Governor of Canada.

P. 219, l. 31.—**Amherst.** One of the Brigadier-Generals sent out with Wolfe to Canada. He was born in 1717, and entered the army in 1731. After the capture of Quebec he was commander-in-chief of the British army in America until 1763, when he was appointed Governor of Virginia. He was afterwards raised to the peerage, made a Field-Marshal, and appointed Commander-in-chief of the British army. He died in 1797.

P. 221, l. 10.—**La Pompadour.** The favorite of Louis XV. and the most powerful personage in France next to the king. She was born at Paris in 1721. In 1741 she married a publican named d'Etiolea, but soon attracted the attention of the king, who created her Marquise de Pompadour. Her influence over the king was marvellous and continued until her death in 1764. Moray had obtained possession of a secret, which La Pompadour was determined to possess. According to the story of *The Seats of the Mighty*, this determination was the moving cause of the war which resulted in the capture of Quebec.

P. 222, l. 29.—**Mêlée.** Conflict.

P. 222, l. 31.—**Gabord.** The jailer of Moray during his imprisonment.

P. 223, l. 16.—**Juste Duvarney.** The brother of Alixe, but devoted heart and soul to Doltaire.

P. 223, l. 25.—**Au diable.** To the devil.

P. 224, l. 16.—**Mathilde.** A crazed woman who plays a subordinate part in the narrative.

P. 224, l. 24.—**Canadians.** The French-Canadian natives.

ODE TO AUTUMN.

In the autumn of 1819 Keats was very much impressed with the beauty of the autumn fields at Winchester. One Sunday in particular, he was especially delighted with the scene, and to commemorate it wrote the *Ode to Autumn*. The poem was published in 1820.

"A poem full of wonderful pictures and of a rich solemn music. It leaves us with a sense of the joy of autumn, labor ended, perfection attained; and the sadness of autumn, the passing away of beauty and of life, the tears that come unbidden to the eyes in gazing at 'the happy autumn fields.'"—*Fowler.*

P. 225, l. 7.—**Gourd.** General name covering such vegetables as melon, pumpkin, squash, etc. **Plump** is "to fill out."

P. 225, l. 15.—**Winnowing.** Separating the wheat from the chaff.

P. 225, l. 17.—**Poppies.** Opium is obtained from the poppy.

P. 225, l. 25.—**Barred clouds.** Bars of clouds. **Bloom.** Flush.

P. 225, l. 28.—**Sallows.** Willows.

P. 226, l. 1.—**Hilly bourne.** Surrounding hills.

P. 226, l. 2.—**Hedge-cricket.** Probably the grasshopper.

P. 226, l. 3.—**Garden croft.** A small piece of enclosed land adjoining a dwelling.

THE HAPPY VALLEY.

This selection is a portion of Chapter I., of *The History of Rasselas, Prince of Abyssinia.* It is purely descriptive, and may be studied without reference to its context.

THE VISION OF SIR LAUNFAL.

This poem appeared at the Christmas season of 1848. It was written in about 48 hours, during which the poet scarcely ate or slept. As Lowell explains in the introductory stanza, he hardly knew what he intended to write about when he began, but allowed the poem to write itself as it went along.

"The contrasted pictures of summer and winter that form the preludes to the two parts of the poem are inimitable in their magic word-painting; and the high moral purpose of the exquisite allegory shows the true and enduring source of Lowell's poetical inspiration, the deep religious instinct united to a fervent, sincere love for humanity that runs like a silver thread through all his writings."—*Brown.*

The Holy Grail was the vessel out of which Christ drank at the last supper with His disciples. It was given to Joseph of Arimathea, who had it with him at the cross, and with it caught some of the blood that flowed from the side of Christ. Joseph was imprisoned by Herod on a charge of being concerned in the stealing of the body of Christ, and sentenced to be walled up in a dungeon beneath the Castle. Here he remained for 40 years, being miraculously fed from the Holy Grail, or sacred vessel. When Jerusalem was destroyed by Titus and Vespasian, Joseph was released, and wandered westward as far as Britain. He

was kindly received and given land on which to erect a monastery at Glastonbury. Here the Grail was kept, doing much good by its marvellous healing powers. The keepers of the vessel were sworn to observe blameless purity of life and conduct, but one of them broke the vow, and the Grail was taken away to heaven. It was supposed that the Grail could still be achieved, so that it became the custom of the knights to ride on a quest in search of the holy vessel. It is one of these quests that is referred to here.

In general the search for the Grail is the search for truth, light, the higher life, an ideal Christ-likeness. Sir Launfal attains the ideal by a simple, humble act of unselfish sympathy at his own castle gate. The thought is a beautiful one, and becomes still more so, if we consider the knight, not as an individual but as a type. The same thought is set forth in the chapter on "Ideals" in Beatrice Harraden's *Ships that Pass in the Night*.

It would be well to read in connection with *Sir Launfal*, Tennyson's *Sir Galahad, St. Agnes, Merlin and the Gleam, The Voyage* and *Ulysses*. Tennyson's *Holy Grail* is almost the exact opposite of this poem, both in conception and treatment. It is too long to read in class, but the story might be told, and the thoughts of the two poems compared.

P. 228, l. 1.—**Musing organist.** He sits at his instrument with a vague feeling which he would make definite and express in music. His first attempts at expression are aimless enough, but they assist his feelings and give a greater definiteness. This leads to more definite expression. Thus feeling and expression assist each other, until at last they become completely unified. The bridge is built connecting the two. What was first felt dimly is now clearly perceived. So is it in poetical composition.

P. 228, l. 7.—**Auroral.** Dawning, from the east.

P. 228, l. 9.—**Not only.** Compare Wordsworth's lines in *The Intimations of Immortality*.

> Heaven lies about us in our infancy!
> Shades of the prison house begin to close
> Upon the growing Boy,
> But He beholds the light and whence it flows,
> He sees it in his joy;
> The youth who daily farther from the east

Must travel, still is Nature's Priest,
And by the vision splendid
Is on his way attended;
At length the Man perceives it die away,
And fade into the light of common day.

P. 228, l. 12.—**Sinais.** The mountain in the north-western part of Arabia, on which God talked with Moses and gave him the Ten Commandments. The meaning is "We stand face to face with God."

P. 228, l. 17.—**Druid.** The double idea of "ancient" and "mysterious." A reference to the Druids, the priests of the Britons, who performed their mysterious rites within the shelter of the groves of trees which formed their temples.

P. 228, l. 18.—**Benedicite.** Blessing.

P. 229, l. 3.—**Cap and bells.** The distinguishing marks of the professional fool or jester, during the Middle Ages.

P. 229, l. 4.—**Bubbles.** That burst when we touch them.

P. 229, l. 6.—**For the asking.** *Matthew* xi., 28.

P. 229, l. 22.—**Chalice.** Cup.

P. 230, l. 21.—**Chanticleer.** The cock.

P. 231, l. 15.—**Rushes.** The floors of the houses and castles during the Middle Ages were spread with rushes.

P. 231, l. 25.—**The castle.** "The castle, symbolic of feudal times, when sharp lines marked the divisions of society and chilled the feeling of the brotherhood of man, even as in winter nature is cold and unresponsive, stands as an outpost of whatever remains that would separate man from his neighbor; observing with jealous glance the enemy which it sees in the tendency to break down caste, figured in the lavish generosity and blending of the summer life."—*Willard.*

P. 231, l. 27.—**North Countree.** The northern part of England.

P. 232, l. 5.—**Pavilions.**—**Tents** (line 8). Trees.

P. 232, l. 13.—**Maiden knight.** In the double sense of "untried" and "pure."

P. 235, l. 1.—**Made morn.** Lightened up.

P. 235, l. 6.—**Yule-log.** The large log placed with customary ceremonies upon the fire at Christmas.

P. 235, l. 23.—**Seneschal.** The governor of the castle.

P. 236, l. 14.—**Surcoat.** The long outer coat, worn over the armor.

The Cross. The sign of the Crusader, or one engaged in any expedition for the sake of Christ.

P. 237, l. 7.—**Desolate horror.** The leprosy, besides being a loathsome disease, cuts off its victim from all communication with mankind.

P. 237, l. 9.—**Tree.** The cross.

P. 237, l. 14.—**Mild Mary's son.** Christ, the son of the Virgin Mary.

P. 238, l. 6.—**Beautiful gate.** The gate which led from the court of the Gentiles into the women's court in the Temple at Jerusalem. *Acts* iii., 2.

P. 238, l. 7.—**Gate.** *John* x., 7 and 9.

P. 238, l. 14.—**Afraid.** *Matthew* xiv., 27.

P. 238, l. 19.—**This crust, etc.** See *John* xv., 12-13.

P. 238, l. 27.—**Swound.** Swoon.

P. 239, l. 13.—**Hall and bower.** The whole castle.

SUGGESTIVE QUESTIONS.

GENERAL.—Get the story clearly in your own mind. Toward this end write out an analysis showing the movement. Tell the story in your own words. Contrast the picture in Prelude I. with that in Prelude II. Contrast the Sir Launfal of Part I. with the Sir Launfal of Part II. How is each Prelude related to the story which follows?

PRELUDE TO PART I.—In the introduction who is meant by the organist? What is meant by building a bridge from Dreamland? Would you infer that the poet had no conception of his theme when he began to write? In this connection read Lowell's *Incident in a Railroad Car.* Explain the figure in lines 7 and 8. Does this introduction seem to add any beauty or meaning to the poem? Read it so as to bring out the thought of a feeling gradually shaping itself into thought.

What is meant by heaven being around us in our infancy? What is meant by climbing Sinai? Why does heaven seem to be so far away in adult life?

By what natural forces is the weakness of man stimulated? What does each speak to *you?* Why should the Druid wood utter the *benedicite?*

Compare the things we purchase with those we receive freely. What seems to be the relation of the thought of each of the first four stanzas to the central thought of the poem?

In the poet's mind what relation exists between earth and heaven? What is meant by "climbs to a soul?" Compare the two birds.

Why is the word "dumb" used? What human relationship is suggested in the last line of this stanza?

Discuss the value of the figures employed in this stanza? Do they add clearness, force or beauty?

In what ways is man influenced by nature? Compare with *The Cathedral*, Stanza 5. In what other poems do you find this thought? Note how the last two lines explain the purpose of the Prelude.

PART FIRST.—What preparation did Sir Launfal make for his journey? Had he any preconceived notions as to the conditions under which the Grail was to be found? *What new light will the vision give him?*

Why should summer morning be chosen for the departure? What are the pavilions of summer? Why is the gloomy castle presented in this picture? What does it typify? In what respects does Sir Launfal resemble (1) the castle, (2) summer?

Get a clear picture of Sir Launfal. Is he consistent with the Sir Launfal of Stanza 1? Read this stanza so that Sir Launfal will be seen? *In what spirit and with what motive did he set out on his quest?* What figure of speech is employed in lines 1 and 2. Take note of the use of this figure throughout the poem. What is its peculiar value? Read lines 1 and 2 to show this.

What is the purpose of the repetition of the thought of Stanza 2 in Stanza 4? Why is the castle so prominent? How did Sir Launfal "make morn?" How did the leper affect him? Why? (See lines 9 and 10). Is the simile in lines 7 and 8 a helpful one? *In what spirit does Sir Launfal make the gift?* Would you expect this from what you know of his character? Once more answer the last question under Stanza 2?

Why does the leper refuse the gift? Compare it with the gift he valued. What is the difference between giving from a sense of duty and giving because of that which unites all? What is it that unites all? *Was Sir Launfal lacking in the feeling of brotherhood?* What similes and metaphors of previous stanzas suggest this? Read this stanza to express the meaning.

PRELUDE TO PART II.—Why is the picture here so different from that in the Prelude to Part I.? Why is the summer picture given in the ice picture?

Why is the picture of joy and merriment given? By what means is the picture made vivid? Why is Christmas chosen? Can you see any

reason for turning from the merriment to the description in the last four lines?

What words in this stanza command your sympathy for the returning traveller? What contrasts to Stanza 2 bring the misery of Sir Launfal into prominence? What contrasts within the stanza itself have the same effect?

PART SECOND.—Compare this picture with that in Stanza 2, Part I. Show how the difference is paralleled by a difference between the departing and returning Sir Launfal.

Why did not Sir Launfal grieve over the loss of his kingdom? Does the picture of misery in Stanza 3 of Prelude assist us in understanding Sir Launfal's attitude on his return? Describe his dress on his return. *In what spirit does he return? What now seems to be his life motive?*

Why did Sir Launfal seek shelter in the light and warmth of long ago? By what means is the picture of the little spring made so attractive? Why is it made so attractive?

How is he awakened from his reverie? Compare the leper with the leper of Part I. Why so hideous here? State the attitude of Sir Launfal to the leper? *What change in character does it indicate?* Explain the beauty of the simile in the last two lines.

Whom does Sir Launfal perceive in the leper? *Is he now lacking in the feeling of brotherhood?* Is he now giving from a sense of duty or to that which is out of sight?

What alms did he give this time? Should he have given all the bread? As he gave it what other picture flashed before his mind? How did he regard his old self? How did the leper value the alms? (In appearance we have a leper, a crust, water; in reality we have Christ, wheaten bread, red wine.)

What was the reward or consequence of the deed of love? Explain the references in this stanza.

How is the feeling of brotherhood and unity through love expressed in lines 1 and 4? What peculiar aptness do you find in the words in line 6? *What is the central truth in the message to Sir Launfal?* Is there any significance in the fact that he found the Grail at his own gate? Show how in real Christian giving one feeds "himself, his hungering neighbor and me?" Does Lowell's teaching seem to harmonize with the teachings of Christ? (*John* xv., 12, 13.) Would any other service than the giving of alms have suited the poet's purpose?

What did Sir Launfal mean by "stronger mail?"

Was the revelation to Sir Launfal effective in changing his life? What changes accompanied the change of heart? Is the lesson of *brotherhood* and *unity through love* fully learned?

GENERAL.—Do you find any need for the teaching of this story in your own experience? How much of it seems to be so beautiful that you wish to commit it to memory? Have you seen any Sir Launfals in your time? Can you give incidents in Christ's ministry, of helpfulness, self-sacrifice, love to men? How does Sir Launfal compare with Sir Galahad, and all the seekers of Arthur's Court? Can you read this poem or parts of it to show your appreciation of its beauty of form and sentiment?

THE FIERY FURNACE.

This selection forms the third chapter of *Daniel*.

THE RAVEN.

This poem was written during the winter of 1844-45 and published in *The American Review* for February, 1845, signed "Inarlas." Its authorship was soon made known. Poe received ten dollars for the poem, but was more than paid by the fame it immediately brought him.

Many interpretations of *The Raven* have been attempted. The value of this kind of work in school is very doubtful. It is very much better to treat the poem as a dramatic monologue, discussing nothing but what is within the poem itself. To those who wish to go into the matter, however, Poe's own interpretation entitled *The Philosophy of Composition*, W. F. Gill's really admirable *Analysis of The Raven*, and a well-written and thoroughly impartial life of the poet, will be found in the edition of Poe's *Poems*, published by Ward, Locke & Co. Ingram's *Life and Letters of Poe*, (Ward, Locke & Co.) also discusses the matter at length. One thing should be said. A large number of writers take it for granted that this poem is an expression of the remorse of the poet for the death of his child wife whom he had ill-treated. Apart from the fact that there is no evidence of such ill-treatment, the poem was written a year before his wife died.

"No poem in our language presents a more graceful grouping of metrical appliances and devices. The power of peculiar letters is evolved with a magnificent touch; the thrill of the liquids is a char-

acteristic feature, not only of the refrain, but throughout the compass of the poem; their 'linked sweetness long drawn out,' falls with a mellow cadence revealing the poets mastery of those mysterious harmonies which lie at the basis of human speech."—*Shepherd.*

P. 245, l. 11.—**Pallas.** Pallas Athene. See Book IV., page 23.

P. 245, l. 17.—**Plutonian.** Pluto was the god of the lower world, the abode of darkness and gloom.

P. 247, l. 2.—**Seraphim.** One of the higher orders of angels.

P. 247, l. 4.—**Nepenthe.** The dew sprinkled upon the souls of the heroes when they reached the Elysian fields; the effect was to make them forget all their former trials and sorrows. The word is applied to any potion or draught for this purpose.

P. 247, l. 11.—**Balm in Gilead.** *Jeremiah* viii., 22.

P. 247, l. 15.—**Aidenn.** The Arabian form of the word "Eden."

A MAN'S A MAN FOR A' THAT.

"Burns had too good an idea of his own powers to have been serious in his depreciation of this fine song. He says: 'A great critic on songs says that love and wine are the exclusive themes for song-writing.' The following is on neither subject, and is consequently no song; but will be allowed, I think, to be two or three pretty good prose thoughts invested with rhyme."—*Rossetti.*

P. 248, l. 10.—**Hoddin-grey.** A coarse cloth of undyed wool.

P. 249, l. 1.—**Birkie.** "Proud and affected fellow."

P. 249, l. 4.—**Coof.** Fool.

P. 249, l. 6.—**Riband, Star.** The Insignia of the order to which he belongs.

P. 249, l. 12.—**Maunna fa' that.** Must not try that.

P. 249, l. 12.—**Bear the gree.** Bear the palm, as the reward of merit.

THE DEATH OF NELSON.

This selection consists of extracts put together from Chapter IX. of Southey's *The Life of Nelson.* The whole chapter, however, should, if possible, be read by the student. The description of the battle is very graphic, while the language used is beyond praise. The volume is an English classic, which should be in every school library.

Nelson was born September 29, 1758. He entered the navy at the age of 13, served in the East Indies, and through the American war, was made a Post Captain in 1779, took part in the battle of St. Vincent, and was made an Admiral in 1797. In the same year he lost his right arm during an attack on Teneriffe. In 1798, he won the battle of the Nile, and was raised to the peerage. In 1799 he was employed in Mediterranean Service, and in 1801 won the Battle of the Baltic. In 1803 he was employed on blockading service in the Mediterranean. In 1805 he chased Villeneuve, the French admiral to the West Indies but missed him. He retired on his return to England, but again resumed command in September. On October 21, 1805, he attacked, with 27 battle ships and 4 frigates, at Trafalgar, the combined fleets of France and Spain under Villeneuve, with 40 ships. He won a complete victory, but was himself killed during the conflict. See *Nelson* by Clarke Russell, in the *Heroes of the Nations*, (Putnams), and by J. K. Laughton in *English Men of Action*, (The Macmillan Co.).

Nelson's flag-ship, the *Victory*, commanded by Captain Hardy, had been in the thick of the action throughout, and had attached itself to the *Redoubtable*. The French ship had its masts lined with riflemen and sharpshooters, who shot down the British officers and seamen at their leisure during the action. It was in this way that Nelson was wounded.

Fitchett's *Deeds that Won the Empire*, contains a good description of the operations leading up to the battle and the battle itself. Read also Grant's *British Battles by Land and Sea*, (Cassel), Vol. II., Chapter LXXX., and *Trafalgar and the Death of Nelson* in *English Historical Tales*, by Morris, (Lippincott). Wordsworth's *The Happy Warrior*, which is founded in part on the character of Nelson should be carefully studied.

P. 250, l. 14.—**Secretary.** Scott, who was killed by a cannon ball.

Hardy. (1769-1839). Hardy distinguished himself at St. Vincent and Trafalgar, and was made a rear-admiral soon after the latter battle. He held various commands, was a Lord of the Admiralty and Governor of Greenwich Hospital.

P. 250, l. 24.—**Stars.** During the engagement Nelson wore his naval uniform. On the breast of his frock coat glittered the stars of the four orders with which he was invested.

P. 250, l. 28.—**Cockpit.** The apartment under the lower gun deck.

P. 252, l. 5.—**Mr. Beatty.** The surgeon, a personal friend of Nelson.

P. 252, l. 27.—**Collingwood.** (1750-1810). Collingwood entered the navy at the age of 11, served under Lord Hawke and took part in the battle of Cape St. Vincent. He was second in command at Trafalgar under Nelson, was raised to the peerage, and for some years commanded the Mediterranean fleet. He died at sea.

P. 254, l. 9.—**Posthumous rewards.** "His brother was made an earl, with a grant of £6,000 a year; £10,000 were voted to each of his sisters, and £100,000 for the purchase of an estate. A public funeral was decreed and a public monument. Statues and monuments also were voted by most of our principal cities. The leaden coffin in which he was brought home, was cut in pieces, which were distributed as relics of St. Nelson—so the gunner of the *Victory* called him; and when at his interment his flag was about to be lowered into the grave, the sailors who assisted at the ceremony with one accord rent it in pieces, that each might preserve a fragment while he lived."—*Southey.*

P. 255, l. 1.—**Chariot.** *II. Kings* ii., 11.

THE BURIAL MARCH OF DUNDEE.

This selection is one of Aytoun's *Lays of the Scottish Cavaliers.* It should be read in connection with *Killiecrankie* on page 187.

In the introduction to this poem in the *Lays*, Aytoun explains fully the circumstances attending the incidents here recorded and in the appendix to the volume he combats the opinion held by Macaulay in regard to the character of Dundee. This poem is an attempt to express in verse the feelings of the Highlanders to Dundee, and the enthusiasm with which they followed him to battle. Nothing of the kind here related can be gathered from the pages of Macaulay's *History of England.* To get the most out of this poem the reader should try to put himself in the place of one of Dundee's Highlanders, and view the matter throughout from that one standpoint. The Scottish ballad *Bonnie Dundee* might be read in this connection. A number of references here are explained in the notes to *Killiecrankie.*

P. 256, l. 7.—**Douglas.** Sir James Douglas, who commanded the left wing at Bannockburn, and was afterwards entrusted with the duty of bearing the heart of King Robert, the Bruce, to the Holy Land, to be there buried. On the way thither he was killed in an engagement with the Moors. See *The Heart of the Bruce* in Aytoun's *Lays of the Scottish Cavaliers.*

P. 256, l. 8.—**King Robert.** Robert Bruce.

P. 256, l. 15.—**Traitors.** The adherents of William were traitors in the eyes of the Highlanders.

P. 257, l. 4.—**King and country.** James and Scotland.

P. 257, l. 14.—**Cameronian rebels.** Not to be confused with the Camerons, who were fighting along with the other Highland clans. The Cameronians were a religious sect, founded by Richard Cameron, one of the Scotch clergymen, who had resisted most vigorously the efforts of Charles II. to fasten Episcopacy upon Scotland. He was killed in a fight with the king's troops in 1680. See *Richard Cameron*, by John Herkless in *Famous Scots* (Oliphant).

P. 257, l. 16.—**Claver'se.** The full name of Dundee was John Graham of Claverhouse, Viscount Dundee.

Montrose. James Graham, Earl of Montrose, who on two occasions raised the Highlands in favor of the Stuarts. The first time he very nearly succeeded, but on the second occasion, during the Commonwealth, he was unsuccessful in raising the clans, was captured, sentenced to death and beheaded on May 20, 1650. See Sir Walter Scott's *Legend of Montrose* and *The Execution of Montrose* in Aytoun's *Lays of the Scottish Cavalier*.

P. 257, l. 19.—**Another.** Dundee and Montrose both belonged to the family of the Grames or Grahams.

P. 257, l. 21.—**Royal Martyr.** King Charles I.

P. 257, l. 22.—**Magus Muir.** James Sharp, Archbishop of St. Andrews, who was looked upon as a tool of Charles II. for the purpose of forcing Episcopacy upon Scotland, was assassinated on Magus Muir, St. Andrews, in 1679.

P. 258, l. 4.—**Covenanting traitors.** The Covenanters were the supporters of the "Solemn League and Covenant," who had bound themselves together to resist the introduction of Episcopacy into Scotland.

P. 258, l. 4.—**Argyle.** The first Duke of Argyle, son of the ninth earl of the same name. He came over from Holland with William, and was an enthusiastic supporter of the revolution. He is called false, as being the head of the Campbell clan, he should have been with the Highlanders. He died in 1703.

P. 258, l. 6.—**Convention.** After the flight of James, Scotland was governed by a "Convention" of the estates of the realm.

P. 258, l. 8.—**Foreign gold.** English. The *Prince* is William, Prince of Orange.

P. 259, l. 11.—**Yule.** Christmas.

P. 259, l. 15.—**Schehallion.** A mountain near Killiecrankie.

THE TRIAL OF WARREN HASTINGS.

This selection is taken from Macaulay's *Essay on Warren Hastings.* Hastings was born in 1732, educated at Westminster, and entered the service of the East India Company in 1750. He rapidly rose in his employment, until in 1761, he became a member of the Council of Bengal. Three years later he resigned and returned to England. In 1768 he again became a member of the Council, and in 1772 became its President. In 1773 he was appointed Governor-General of India. He then entered upon that career which ended in his being impeached by the House of Commons, for mismanagement, extortion and cruelty. The trial began before the House of Lords in 1788. The proceedings lasted until 1795, when Hastings was acquitted. He died in 1818.

The whole of Macaulay's Essay should be read in connection with this selection. The Cambridge Press edition of the Essay, edited by A. D. Innes, has a very complete and impartial introduction. A good life of Hastings is that by Sir Alfred Lyall in *English Men of Action* (The Macmillan Co.). See also *Men Who Have Made the Empire*, by Geo. Griffith, (Pearson).

P. 261, l. 1.—**Preparations.** Impeachment had been decided on two years before.

P. 261, l. 6.—**Westminster.** The ancient palace of Westminster. All that remains at present is used as the vestibule to the new Palace.

P. 261, l. 14.—**William Rufus.** William the Red, the second Norman King of England.

P. 261, l. 16.—**Bacon.** (1561-1626). Francis Bacon, Lord Verulam was Lord Chancellor of England during the reign of James I. He was accused of accepting bribes, confessed his guilt and was sentenced to a fine of £40,000 and imprisonment during the king's pleasure. No punishment was, however, inflicted. He was imprisoned for two days, the fine was remitted and a pension of £1,200 a year granted him for life.

P. 261, l. 17.—**Somers.** (1650-1716). Lord Somers, Chancellor of England, one of the most able of the Whig statesmen after the Revolution of 1688. He was impeached in 1701 by the Tory majority

in the House of Commons, for his share in the "Partition Treaties," but was acquitted by the House of Lords.

P. 261, l. 18.—**Strafford.** (1593-1641). Thomas Wentworth, Earl of Strafford, the author of the policy called "Thorough," was one of the principal advisers of Charles I. He was impeached for treason by the Long Parliament, but made such an able defence of his actions, that the Commons were forced to abandon the impeachment and proceed by Bill of Attainder. This was passed, Charles gave a reluctant assent, and Strafford was executed.

P. 261, l. 20.—**Charles.** Charles I.

P. 261, l. 22.—**Sergeants.** Parliamentary officers.

P. 262, l. 10.—**Mens æqua, etc.** A mind serene amidst difficulties.

P. 262, l. 11.—**Proconsul.** Book V., page 293.

P. 262, l. 13.—**Pitt.** (1708-1778.) William Pitt, Earl of Chatham.

P. 262, l. 16.—**Lord North.** (1730-1792). The English Prime Minister, under whose administration the war with the American Colonies took place. He was far more successful as a debater than as a statesman.

P. 262, l. 23.—**Fox.** (1749-1806). Charles James Fox, son of Lord Holland, was one of the most eminent statesmen of the 18th century. His history is bound up with that of England from 1768, when he entered Parliament, until his death in 1806.

P. 262, l. 24.—**Sheridan.** See *Biographical Sketches.*

Demosthenes. (385 B.C.-322 B.C.) The great Athenian orator, the opponent of Philip of Macedon, against whom he delivered his famous Philippics.

P. 262, l. 25.—**Hyperides.** The contemporary and friend of Demosthenes. He was put to death by Antipater in B.C. 322, the same year in which his friend Demosthenes poisoned himself to avoid a similar fate.

Burke. See *Biographical Sketches.*

P. 263, l. 1.—**Windham.** (1750-1810). Windham entered Parliament in 1783, and at once attached himself to the fortunes of Burke. He filled many important offices and took an active interest in public affairs until his death.

P. 263, l. 19.—**Earl Grey.** (1764-1845). Grey entered Parliament in 1786 and at once became a follower of Fox. He became leader of the House of Commons, and carried through the bill for the abolition of slavery. In 1830 he became Premier and two years later the Reform

Bill of 1832 became law. Before he resigned in 1833, colonial slavery had been abolished and India had passed under the control of the crown.

P. 263, l. 26.—**Amiable poet.** Cowper. See *Biographical Sketches.*

P. 264, l. 8.—**Company.** The Honourable East India Company.

P. 264, l. 11.—**Chancellor.** Lord Thurlow, who presided at the trial, was an old schoolmate of Hastings and entirely friendly to him.

P. 264, l. 19.—**Mrs. Sheridan.** The wife of Richard Brinsley Sheridan.

P. 264, l. 20.—**Irish oak.** The hall of William Rufus was rebuilt during the reign of Richard II. The roof, which is 68 feet wide, without pillars, is made entirely of Irish oak and is said to be the finest in the world.

P. 264, l. 22.—**Oppressor of all.** The exact words of Burke are as follows: "Therefore it is with confidence, that, ordered by the Commons, I impeach Warren Hastings, Esquire, of high crimes and misdemeanors. I impeach him in the name of the Commons of Great Britain in Parliament assembled, whose Parliamentary trust he has betrayed. I impeach him in the name of all the Commons of Great-Britain, whose national character he has dishonored. I impeach him in the name of the people of India, whose laws, rights and liberties he has subverted, whose properties he has destroyed, whose country he has laid waste and desolate. I impeach him in the name and by virtue of those eternal laws of justice which he has violated. I impeach him in the name of human nature itself, which he has cruelly outraged, injured, and oppressed, in both sexes, in every age, rank, situation and condition of life."

THE SKYLARK.

"The bird that occupies the second place to the nightingale in British poetical literature is the skylark, a creature of light and motion, the companion of the ploughman, the shepherd, the harvester, whose nest is in the stubble and whose tryst is in the clouds. Its life affords that kind of contrast which the imagination loves, one moment a plain pedestrian bird, hardly distinguishable from the ground, the next a soaring, untiring songster, revelling in the upper air, challenging the eye to follow him, and the ear to separate his notes. The lark's song is not especially melodious, but lithesome, sibilant and unceasing. Its type is the grass, where the bird makes its home, abounding, multitu-

dinous, the notes nearly all alike and all in the same key, but rapid, swarming, prodigal, showering down as thick and fast as drops of rain in a summer shower."—*John Burroughs.*

These three poems on the skylark afford an excellent opportunity for comparative work. The use made of the bird in each case, the attitude of the poet towards the bird, and the lesson drawn should be carefully noted. A number of ideas are common to the three poems; these should be studied in their context. The form in which the poems are cast is of secondary importance, except as indicating the mood of the poet.

In this poem Hogg is evidently enthusiastic over the song of the bird; its happiness impresses him, he longs to fly away and be with it, that he may be a sharer in its happiness.

P. 265, l. 13.—**Sheen.** Bright.

P. 265, l. 19.—**Gloaming.** Twilight.

TO THE SKYLARK.

This poem was written in 1826 and published in 1827. In the poem, while Wordsworth is delighted with the song of the bird, the obvious intention is to impress the lesson contained in the last two lines, all the details being arranged with this idea in view. Wordsworth said, "I wish to be considered a teacher or nothing." In this poem he definitely instructs.

P. 266, l. 1.—**Ethereal minstrel.** Heavenly singer.

Pilgrim. Wanderer.

P. 266, l. 3.—**Aspire.** Carry thee upward.

P. 266, l. 4.—**Dewy.** Early in the morning.

P. 266, l. 5.—**Drop.** The skylark flies until it comes directly over its nest, which is always in the open, when it drops suddenly in a perfectly straight line.

P. 266, l. 7.—**Last point of vision.** As far as the eye can see.

P. 266, l. 12.—**Independent.** Other birds are affected by the beauty of their surroundings, but this has no effect upon the skylark.

P. 266, l. 13.—**Her.** It is the male bird that sings.

Shady wood. The nightingale is a very shy bird, and prefers to frequent some solitary grove. It sings during the night.

P. 266, l. 14.—**Privacy.** The skylark secures her privacy in the boundless reaches of sky.

P. 266, l. 16.—**Divine.** Both skylark and nightingale sing beauti-

fully, but the former mounts towards the heavens, while the latter is content to remain upon the earth.

P. 266, l. 17.—**Type, etc.** "The wise, while they do not neglect the lowlier duties of everyday life, cultivate at the same time higher and holier interests. They harmoniously combine the two inter-related aims."—*Webb.*

TO A SKYLARK.

The poem was written and published in 1820. "In the spring we spent a week or two near Leghorn, borrowing the house of some friends, who were absent on a journey to England. It was on a beautiful summer evening while wandering among the lanes, where myrtle hedges were the bowers of the fire-flies, that we heard the carrolling of the skylark, which inspired one of the most beautiful of his poems."—*Mrs. Shelley.*

"This is not merely one of the most beautiful of Shelley's poems, but represents in miniature the very essence of Shelley's spirit and work. The skylark, as he watches it, becomes the incarnation of what he himself would fain be. Its flight heavenward typifies his yearning for some ideal world which would satisfy a spirit bruised amidst the hard and hateful realities of life. Its unpremeditated and impetuous music is like Shelley's own song, except, alas! that the lark's strain seems the expression of undiluted joy, a joy, therefore, that does not belong to men, in whose cup there is ever something of bitterness mingled. The lark, therefore, thinks the poet, is master of the secret of the universe, for which Shelley's whole life was a search, and the solution of which would explain, or reconcile us to its defects."—*Alexander.* See *Chosen English*, by Adele Ellis, (The Macmillan Co.).

P. 267, l. 8.—**Cloud of fire.** This modifies "springest." The bird is already in the clouds.

P. 267, l. 9.—**Blue deep.** The sky.

P. 267, l. 11.—**Lightning.** The sun rays shooting upwards.

P. 267, l. 14.—**Float and run.** "In its spiral motion upwards the lark appears to balance itself for a while, and then suddenly to dart obliquely onwards."—*Ellis.*

P. 267, l. 15.—**Unbodied.** Spirit. See line 1.

P. 267, l. 16.—**Even.** Generally taken to mean "morning." This is not at all certain. Shelley wrote the poem after hearing the lark sing in the evening.

P. 267, l. 21.—**Arrows.** Beams. Diana the moon goddess, is represented as armed with a bow and arrows.

P. 267, l. 22.—**Silver sphere.** The moon. Here again critics take issue. Some refer this to the "star" in line 18. Which?

P. 268, l. 3.—**Bare.** Not a cloud in the sky.

P. 268, l. 13.—**Hymns.** Songs of praise.

P. 268, l. 13.—**Unbidden.** Spontaneously. Perhaps Shelley was here thinking of his own case.

P. 269, l. 1.—**Vernal.** Spring.

P. 269, l. 6.—**Sprite.** Spirit.

P. 269, l. 11.—**Chorus hymeneal.** Marriage song.

P. 269, l. 16.—**Fountains.** Sources.

P. 269, l. 25.—**Satiety.** "Filling to repletion."—*Webb.*

P. 269, l. 28.—**True and deep.** The lark must have penetrated more deeply than Shelley into the sad secrets of humanity, otherwise it could not sing so joyously.

P. 270, l. 5.—**Saddest thought.** Ellis quotes a stanza from the German :—

> Born of deep pain is the poet's art,
> And the song that alone is true,
> Is wrung from a throbbing human heart
> That sorrow is burning through.

P. 270, l. 11.—**Measures.** Music.

P. 270, l. 18.—**Harmonious madness.** "Strains of exalted poetry."—*Sykes.*

REWARD.

This selection is a portion of Chapter XII. of the third book of *Past and Present.*

P. 271, l. 5.—**Kepler.** (1571-1630). A famous German astronomer and mathematician. He is known as the discoverer of the three great laws that govern the periods and motions of the planets.

P. 271, l. 6.—**Newton.** (1642-1727). The great English astronomer and mathematician, who discovered the law of gravitation.

P. 271, l. 8.—**Bloody sweat.** *Luke* xxii., 44.

P. 271, l. 20.—**Spartan mother.** The complete story is told here.

P. 272, l. 24.—**Mammon gospel.** The gospel of wealth.

THE IMPEACHMENT OF WARREN HASTINGS.

This selection is the final paragraphs of the speech delivered by Burke, in closing the Impeachment proceedings. Burke's speech occupied nine days, the last words being spoken on June 16, 1794. The trial had commenced February, 1788. (See Book V., page 261.)

P. 273, l. 20.—**Lordship's bar.** Before the House of Lords, sitting in a judicial capacity.

P. 273, l. 21.—**Twenty-two years.** The Commons had been fighting for the liberties of India for twenty-two years.

P. 274, l. 12.—**Moral earthquake.** The French Revolution. Burke was an almost fanatical opponent of the French Revolutionists.

P. 275, l. 2.—**Machines of murder.** The guillotine, a machine used for severing the head from the body.

Kings. Queens. During the progress of the Revolution Louis XVI., and his Queen, Marie Antoinette, were put to death on the scaffold.

P. 275, l. 19.—**Parliament of Paris.** The chief court of justice in France, instituted by Philip Augustus II. in 1190. It was suppressed by Louis XV. in 1771, but restored by Louis XVI. in 1774. It was finally suspended by the National Assembly, November 3, 1789.

P. 275, l. 26.—**Comte de Mirabeau.** (1749-1791). One of the greatest statesmen and orators, as well as one of the greatest patriots that France has produced. Burke, who could see no good in the French Revolution, had nothing but abuse for Mirabeau. The verdict of history is exactly the reverse of that passed by Burke. Mirabeau was the guiding spirit of the assembly from 1789 to 1791, when he died. Had he lived it is possible that he might have stayed the progress of events and saved France years of bloodshed and misery. See Carlyle's Essay on Mirabeau in Vol. III. of his *Collected Essays.*

P. 275, l. 31.—**Lash.** Mirabeau's early career was one long conflict with the law as it then existed.

SPEECH AGAINST WARREN HASTINGS.

The fourth charge in the Impeachment of Hastings, that relating to the plundering of the Begums or Princesses of Oude, was intrusted to Sheridan, who had previously delivered a speech on the same subject

in the House of Commons, said to be the most telling speech ever delivered before that body. Hastings was accused of having forced the Nabob of Oude to seize the lands and immense treasures which had been left to his mother and his grandmother by the late Nabob. The charge, written by Burke, is very circumstantial and contains 87 articles. Sheridan occupied two days in delivering his speech. Read Macaulay's *Essay on Warren Hastings*.

P. 277, l. 1.—**Public.** Among the letters put in as evidence was a letter of Middleton's to Hastings, relating to the matter in hand, intended to be made public, but this was followed by a private letter which threw much light upon the public one.

P. 277, l. 5.—**Middleton.** The English resident at the court of the Nabob of Oude, who was accused of being the tool of Hastings in his cruel extortions.

P. 279, l. 2.—**Impey.** The Chief Justice of India during the administration of Hastings. He is accused of having used his high position to assist Hastings in his schemes. He was recalled in 1782, impeached in 1788 and died in 1812.

P. 279, l. 4.—**Great figure.** Warren Hastings.

THE CHAMBERED NAUTILUS.

This poem is found in Chapter IV. of *The Autocrat of the Breakfast Table*. The introduction to the poem is as follows: "I will read you a few lines, if you do not object, suggested by looking at a section of one of these chambered shells to which is given the name of Pearly Nautilus. We need not trouble ourselves about the distinction between this and the Paper Nautilus. The name applied to both shows that each has long been compared to a ship. . . . . If you will look into Roget's *Bridgewater Treatise*, you will find a figure of one of these shells and a section of it. This last will show you the series of enlarging compartments successively dwelt in by the animal that inhabits the shell, which is built in a widening spiral. Can you find no lesson in this?"

P. 280, l. 5.—**Siren.** Sea-nymphs, who inhabited an island in the midst of the ocean. Their singing was so beautiful that if a sailor heard it, he would immediately throw himself into the sea in his haste to reach the maidens who were singing the wonderful song, invariably perishing in the attempt.

P. 280, l. 7.—**Sea-maids.** Mermaids.

P. 280, l. 14.—**Irised.** Iris, in the ancient mythology, was the goddess of the rainbow.

Crypt. A subterranean cell, usually under a church.

P. 280, l. 26.—**Triton-wreathed.** See Book V., pages 312 and 399.

THE FIGHT WITH THE DRAGON.

This poem is taken from *German Ballads*, translated by Elizabeth Craigmyle, (Walter Scott Co.). The ballad was written in the famous year of ballads, and dates August, 1798. There is no historical basis for the poem, but the time is said to be about 1330, A.D.

This ballad, with its ringing, stirring verse, has always been considered one of the best of Shiller's, ranking with *The Diver*. The lesson taught by the poem should be insisted on, namely, "obedience is better than sacrifice."

P. 281, l. 3.—**Rhodus.** One of the islands of the Grecian Archipelago. It was the headquarters of the Knights of St. John of Jerusalem, who for 214 years held the island against the Turks. The Knights finally abandoned the island on January 1, 1523, being granted an honorable departure. Since then the Turks have held Rhodes.

P. 282, l. 3.—**Hospitallers.** See Book IV., page 134.

P. 282, l. 10.—**Devoir.** Service, duty.

P. 282, l. 16.—**Our Lady.** The Virgin Mary.

P. 282, l. 28.—**Bear the Cross.** To belong to an order whose chief duty was to defend Christianity, the religion of the Cross. The Hospitallers wore a black robe, with a white cross.

P. 283, l. 26.—**Avatar.** The incarnation of the Hindoo dieties, their appearance on earth in a shape in which they may be seen by men.

P. 283, l. 30.—**Minotaur.** See Book IV., page 223.

P. 284, l. 2.—**Paynim.** Pagan, heathen.

P. 285, l. 7.—**Salamander.** A fabulous animal, supposed to be capable of living in fire, this being its native element.

P. 285, l. 12.—**Urus** The European wild ox.

P. 286, l. 28.—**Three Kings.** See Book V., page 67.

P. 288, l. 13.—**Basilisk.** A fabulous being supposed to have the power of rendering powerless any creature that looked into its eyes.

P. 288, l. 17.—**Selle.** Saddle.

P. 288, l. 15.—**Chapter.** The members of the brotherhood.

THE ERUPTION OF VESUVIUS.

The eruption of Vesuvius here referred to took place on November 23, A.D. 79, not on August 23. Excavations are still going on at Pompeii, most valuable discoveries being made from time to time. These are for the most part deposited in the museum at Naples.

P. 291, l. 1.—**A town.** Pompeii, a Campanian town on the Bay of Naples, at the foot of Mount Vesuvius. It was partly destroyed by an earthquake A.D. 63, but was afterwards rebuilt. It was finally destroyed A.D. 79.

P. 291, l. 2.—**Brighton.** A fashionable summer resort in England, situated on the Sussex coast, about 50 miles from London.

Hastings. On the Sussex coast, about 65 miles from London.

P. 291, l. 22.—**Belgravia.** The fashionable quarter of London.

P. 291, l. 25.—**The stately homes, etc.** The title of a poem by Mrs. Hemans.

P. 291, l. 28.—**Household gods.** Gods peculiar to the household, usually the images of the ancestors of the family. Great veneration was paid to these divinities, who were very much consulted in matters respecting the welfare of the family.

P. 292, l. 3.—**Patron, Clients.** See Book V., page 427, line 25.

P. 292, l. 11.—**Syrian.** The finest woven stuffs and dyed fabrics came from Phœnicia and Syria, the latter generally including the former.

P. 292, l. 14.—**Peristyle.** A range of columns.

P. 292, l. 24.—**Beware the dog.** *Cave Canem.* A common inscription on the entrance to Roman houses.

P. 292, l. 26.—**The Parting of Achilles, etc.** At the sack of Chryse during the Trojan war, two beautiful maidens—Chryseis and Briseis—were captured by the Greeks. In the division of the spoils Chryseis fell to the share of Agamemnon, the Commander-in-chief, and the latter to Achilles, the bravest of the warriors. The father of Chryseis, a priest of Phœbus Apollo, came to ransom his daughter. Agamemnon refused, and drove the old man from the camp with insults. Apollo, to avenge the treatment of his priest, sent a plague upon the Greeks. A council of the Greeks was called, at which Calchas, the soothsayer, explained the reason of the plague. Achilles accused Agamemnon of thinking more of his own pleasure than of the good of the army. The Commander-in-chief finally agreed to give up Chryseis, but stated that as compensation for his loss, he would take

Briseis away from Achilles. Heralds were sent to the tent of Achilles and Briseis removed. This is the parting referred to in the text. See Church's *Story of the Iliad*, (The Macmillan Co.).

P. 292, l. 27.—**The seizure of Europa.** Europa was the daughter of Agenor, King of Phœnicia. Zeus fell in love with her and resolved to carry her off. He accordingly assumed the shape of a bull, and mingled with the herds of Agenor. Europa, happening to pass through the meadow where the cattle were grazing, noticed the beautiful animal. She caressed him, and finally had the courage to mount upon his back. Zeus immediately ran away with the maiden and carried her to Crete. Here she was afterwards married to the king of that country. The continent of Europe received its name from her.

P. 292, l. 28.—**The Battle of the Amazons.** There are several battles with the Amazons recorded in classical story. Probably the battle referred to is the contest with Hercules. The Amazons were a nation of warlike women inhabiting a district in Asia Minor. Hercules was sent by his brother, Eurystheus, to obtain the girdle of Hippolyte, the queen of the Amazons. The queen was quite ready to let the hero have the girdle, but her followers thought that Hercules had come to carry away Hippolyte herself. They attacked him savagely, so that in self-defence he was obliged to kill them all. He took the queen away with him and gave her in marriage to Theseus.

P. 293, l. 2.—**Arabesques.** Fanciful forms, floral designs, etc., inlaid in some other material.

P. 293, l. 7.—**Libation.** The ceremony of pouring out wine or some other liquid in honor of one of the gods. The wine was generally poured on the ground or on the victim prepared for the sacrifice.

P. 293, l. 7.—**Bacchus.** The god of wine, the Dionysos of the Greeks, the son of Zeus and Semele. His worship was almost universal throughout the ancient world, frequently being accompanied by scenes of drunken excess. He is generally represented as an effeminate young man, crowned with vine and ivy leaves.

P. 293, l. 15.—**Horace.** Quintus Horatius Flaccus (B.C. 65, B.C. 8), the famous Roman lyric poet. He lived in Rome during the palmy days of Roman literature. His works consist principally of *Odes*, *Epistles* and *Satires*.

P. 293, l. 16.—**Anacreon.** See Book V., page 203.

P. 293, l. 25.—**Consuls.** This word was wrongly printed "counsels" in the first edition of Book V. See Book IV., page 361.

Pro-consul. A consul who had completed his term of office, and was still in the service of the state.

P. 294, l. 27.—**Plain.** This is somewhat exaggerated. Pompeii was not completely buried at this time, nor until a great many years later, when continuous eruptions gradually hid it from sight.

P. 294, l. 30.—**The sleep.** The second line of the song sung by Helen Douglas in the first canto of *The Lady of the Lake*, Section XXXI.

AS SHIPS, BECALMED AT EVE.

Clough's title for this poem is *Quo Curnum Ventus*—"*Whither the Wind Carries.*" The poem deals with a very common and very sad experience in human life. Two men, who have been close friends and companions, find themselves, after an interval of absence, entirely separated in their opinions and their manner of looking at things. The consolation, however, is to be found in the thought contained in the last three stanzas. Note the skill with which the metaphor of the two ships is maintained throughout. Compare Longfellow's *The Fire of Driftwood.*

THE TEMPEST.

This selection is taken from *Tales Founded on the Plays of Shakespeare*, by Charles and Mary Lamb, published in 1807.

It would be well to read portions from Shakespeare's play, *The Tempest*, while studying this selection. The play should certainly be read by the teacher, even if no reference to it is made in class.

TO NIGHT.

Archbishop Trench says: "It is not a little remarkable that one to whom English was an acquired language, who can have had little or no experience in the mechanism of English verse should yet have left us what Coleridge does not hesitate to call 'the finest and most grandly conceived sonnet in our language,' words, it is true, which he slightly modifies by adding 'at least it is only in Milton and in Wordsworth that I remember any rival.'" The sonnet is usually entitled *Night and Death.*

P. 312, l. 7.—**Hesperus.** The Evening Star. See Book V., page 393.

THE WORLD IS TOO MUCH WITH US

This sonnet was published in 1807. "The idea of the poem is that when once we lose touch with nature, and have no eye and ear for her beauty and grandeur, we have no spiritual life, and our religion is but a sham. Better the old Greek's deification of the powers of nature than the empty materialism of modern days. Better a living faith in Pantheism than the dead and callous formalism of the worldly man's Christianity."—*W. T. Webb.*

P. 312, l. 1.—**World.** Worldliness and worldly pursuits.

P. 312, l. 2.—**Powers.** Higher energies.

P. 312, l. 4.—**Sordid boon.** "A mean, mercenary bargain."—*Webb.*

P. 312, l. 7.—**Up-gathered.** At rest.

P. 312, l. 8.—**Out of tune.** At discord.

P. 312, l. 9.—**Great God.** A prayer or invocation rather than an exclamation.

P. 312, l. 10.—**Pagan suckled.** Brought up as a heathen.

P. 312, l. 13.—**Proteus.** A sea deity, the son of Oceanus and Tethys. He was possessed of all knowledge, but to avoid communicating it, he was accustomed to change himself into innumerable shapes. If, however, the questioner held him until he resumed his original form, he would reveal the secret.

P. 312, l. 14.—**Triton.** See Book V., page 399.

Wreathed horn. Spiral shell, used as a trumpet.

THE POETRY OF EARTH IS NEVER DEAD.

This delightful nature sonnet, generally entitled *The Grasshopper and the Cricket*, was written in a friendly competition with Leigh Hunt. The poem expresses an appreciation of nature, quite as keen as that of Wordsworth. Leigh Hunt's sonnet is as follows :—

THE GRASSHOPPER AND THE CRICKET.

Green little vaulter in the sunny grass,
  Catching your heart up at the feet of June—
  Sole voice that's heard amidst the lazy noon
When even the bees lag at the summoning brass ;
And you, warm little housekeeper, who class

With those who think the candle come too soon,
Loving the fire, and with your tricks and tune,
Nick the glad, silent moments as they pass!
O sweet and tiny cousins, that belong,
One to the fields, the other to the hearth,
Both have your sunshine; both, though small, are strong
At your clear hearts; and both seem given to earth
To sing in thoughtful ears this natural song,
Indoors and out, summer and winter, mirth.

WAPENTAKE.

This sonnet is addressed to Alfred Tennyson, Poet Laureate of England, and was published in *The Atlantic Monthly* for December, 1877. Longfellow had from the beginning been a great admirer of the poetry of Tennyson, and had visited him at Farringford eight years before. In the sonnet he bears cheerful testimony to the superiority of Tennyson as a poet and specially commends one feature of his poetry, its sanity. *Wapentake* means literally, a weapon-taking or touching, from the ancient feudal custom of touching the arms of a superior in token of fealty.

P. 313, l. 4.—**Defiance.** See Book IV., page 134.

P. 313, l. 9.—**Howling dervishes.** The dervishes belong to a religious order among the Mohammedans. Part of their worship consists in twisting the body into various shapes and uttering unearthly sounds.

P. 313, l. 12.—**Laurel leaves.** It was customary at the Greek festivals to crown the victor in the poetic and other contests with laurel. Here Longfellow means that Tennyson is properly the Poet-Laureate of England.

FROM DAWN TO DAWN IN THE ALPS.

This selection is taken from Chapter IV. of the 3rd section of the 1st volume of *Modern Painters.*

Modern Painters was written in the first place to prove the superiority of Turner as a landscape painter. Ruskin maintained that "all the more striking features of mountains, storm and cloud beauty here described are to be found in Turner's landscapes, and not in the paint-

ings of any of his predecessors." At the close of each paragraph in the original is inserted, "Has Claude given this?" The Claude referred to being Claude Lorrain, the famous landscape painter, (1600-1682). Of course the answer to the question with which the section concludes is "Turner." The whole description is a reminiscence of a storm and sunrise seen by Ruskin on the Rigi, a mountain peak in Switzerland, overlooking Lake Lucerne. From the Rigi a view of three hundred miles in circumference may be seen. The whole passage should be studied as an example of magnificent description.

Joseph Mallord William Turner was born at London in April, 1775. He received but an ordinary education and spent most of his boyhood in London itself. In 1789 he began the study of art, exhibited a picture in 1790, was made an associate of the Royal Academy in 1799 and a Royal Academician in 1802. He made many visits to the continent for the purpose of study and to procure subjects for his paintings. He died in 1851, leaving a large number of his paintings to the nation.

P. 314, l. 11.—**Atlantis.** The mythical island in the Atlantic, supposed to have been swallowed up by the ocean.

TRIAL SCENE FROM "THE MERCHANT OF VENICE."

This Trial Scene occupies nearly all of the fourth act of *The Merchant of Venice*. Antonio had proved unable to pay the bond, Bassanio had arrived with money to assist him, but the Jew refused to receive a ducat, and demanded the penalty of the forfeited bond. The matter came before the Duke for settlement. It is at this point that the scene opens.

It is impossible to teach this scene properly without a thorough knowledge of the play as a whole. So much depends, as far as the character study is concerned, upon the first three acts that, while the pupil may get a great deal from the study of the scene alone, the teacher cannot teach it satisfactorily without the fullest knowledge.

"The background (of this scene) is the great hall of the High Court of Justice; in front is a throng of eager people—Antonio's merchant friends from the Rialto, Bassanio's companions-in-arms and magnificoes from the ducal court—all in dress of many colors; round the bench and near the prisoner stand ruffed halberdiers; aloft sits the Doge, in crimson velvet, with an upper garment 'of white cloth of silver, with

great massy buttons of gold'; a degree below him sit the senators, in red cloth tipped with white ermine; on the right, in earnest talk with Bassanio and Gratiano, stands Antonio, ready for any issue; and presently, on the left, enter, with bond and knife and scales, Shylock, alone."—*Withers.*

The whole scene should be pictured out as clearly as possible. The swift changes, the rising and falling hopes, give an admirable chance for this kind of work. The character of each personage should be studied, especially Portia, Shylock and Antonio. Note the manner in which the action is retarded, and the principle of suspense made use of. Have the whole selection read, each character being represented by a student.

At Belmont, in Italy, lived Portia, a wealthy heiress. Suitors came from all over the world in the hope of winning her hand, but she was not to be won, except by the lottery of the caskets. Her father, by will, had directed that her portrait should be placed in one of three caskets, one gold, one silver, and the third lead. The suitor was compelled to choose, but before choosing he had to swear that if unsuccessful, he would at once depart, and never more speak to woman in way of marriage. Many had tried and failed. At Venice lived Bassanio, a young nobleman of the court, who had wasted his fortune, and now stood indebted to his friend Antonio, a merchant of the city. He had been at Belmont, had there met Portia and wished to become a suitor for her hand. To obtain the money needed, he applied to Antonio, who was unable to help him as all his ventures were at sea. He, however, agreed to become security for his friend if the money could be borrowed. Bassanio found Shylock, a wealthy Jew and the deadly enemy of Antonio, and tried to borrow the money from him. The Jew agreed to lend 3,000 ducats, provided the merchant would sign a bond for the amount, the penalty, in the event of forfeiture being a pound of his flesh. Antonio, in spite of the remonstrances of Bassanio, treated the affair as a jest and signed the bond. Bassanio at once proceeded to Belmont, where he was successful in his choice of the caskets. In the midst of the festivities a messenger arrived, who announced that the bond had been forfeited, and that the Jew was determined to exact the penalty. Shylock's hatred of Antonio had been aggravated by the fact that his daughter Jessica had eloped with Lorenzo, a friend of Bassanio, and in her flight had robbed her father. Bassanio immediately set out for Venice to the assistance of his friend.

Portia hurried him away, but at once followed him to Venice, where, after receiving robes and advice from her cousin Bellario, she presented herself at the Court of Justice. Along with her went her companion Nerissa, who had been married to Gratiano at the same time that Portia had wedded Bassanio. The result is given in the selection in the text. The play concludes with a merry farce, caused by the ring which Portia had given to Bassanio, and with which he had sworn never to part, but which he had given to the judge at the trial.

The story of the play is very fully given in Lamb's *Tales from Shakespeare*. An excellent commentary on the play will be found in *Shakespeare as a Dramatic Artist*, by R. C. Moulton, (The Clarendon Press), and in *Shakespeare and his Predecessors*, by F. S. Boas, (Scribner's). The editions of the play edited by Withers, (D. C. Heath & Co.), and by Hudson, (Ginn & Co.), contain critical introductions and very suggestive notes.

P. 317, l. 5.—**Uncapable.** Incapable.

P. 317, l. 8.—**Qualify.** Mitigate, assuage, moderate.

P. 317, l. 9.—**Rigorous course.** The rigor of the course he is pursuing.

P. 317, l. 10.—**That.** Since.

P. 317, l. 11.—**Envy.** Malice, hatred.

P. 317, l. 14.—**Very tyranny.** "Utmost cruelty."

P. 317, l. 19.—**Fashion of thy malice.** You are but keeping up this appearance of malice until the last possible moment.

P. 317, l. 21.—**Remorse.** Pity, compassion.

P. 317, l. 25.—**Loose.** Remit.

P. 318, l. 2.—**Moiety.** Literally "a half," but here "a portion."

P. 318, l. 5.—**Royal merchant.** Indicating the position of Antonio among the merchants.

P. 318, l. 8.—**Turks and Tartars.** The symbol of all that was wild and savage.

P. 318, l. 11.—**Possess'd.** Informed. This is not the first conversation between the Duke and Shylock on this subject.

P. 318, l. 13.—**Due and forfeit.** That which is due to me by the forfeiture of the bond.

P. 318, l. 15.—**City's freedom.** The refusal to Shylock of what was rightfully his due would greatly endanger the credit of the city. It would mean that aliens, upon whom the Venetians largely depended,

would be refused justice in the courts whenever their rights clashed with those of a citizen of Venice. Shakespeare probably has in mind London, to which a royal charter was granted, but which charter was liable to be revoked at any time, "for an act of flagrant injustice." As Venice was a sovereign city, Shylock's threat in its present form would have little terror for the Duke.

P. 318, l. 19.—**My humor.** A mere whim.

P. 318, l. 26.—**For affection, etc.** "For a man's individual propensity, which is all powerful over his feelings, sways them hither and thither, towards what it likes, and from what it loathes."—*Deighton.*

P. 319, l. 11.—**Serpent sting.** Would you not kill a serpent lest it should have the chance to sting you a second time?

P. 319, l. 12.—**Think you.** Bear in mind that you are asking questions of the Jew.

P. 319, l. 14.—**Main flood.** The ocean flood.

P. 319, l. 19.—**Fretted.** Moved, agitated.

P. 319, l. 25.—**Judgment.** Let sentence be pronounced against me.

P. 320, l. 10.—**Force.** The laws of Venice are worthless.

P. 320, l. 12.—**Upon my power.** By the power vested in me.

P. 320, l. 14.—**Determine.** Cases of this kind were determined by Doctors of the Civil law, who interpreted the law bearing upon the point in question; decision was then given by the Duke in accordance with the ruling of the Doctor.

P. 320, l. 23.—**Tainted wether.** Sheep tainted with disease.

P. 321, l. 4.—**Envy.** Malice, hatred.

P. 321, l. 7.—**For thy life.** Let justice be arraigned for suffering thee to live.

P. 321, l. 9.—**Pythagoras.** A philosopher of Samos, who taught the doctrine of the transmigration of souls. He lived about 500 B.C.

P. 321, l. 18.—**Offend'st.** Injurest.

P. 321, l. 31.—**Loving visitation.** Friendly visit.

P. 322, l. 5.—**Reverend estimation.** Reverently esteemed.

P. 322, l. 14.—**Present question.** "The *controversy* for the deciding of which the present *inquiry* or *investigation* is held."—*Hudson.*

P. 322, l. 15.—**Throughly.** Thoroughly.

P. 322, l. 22.—**Impugn.** Oppose.

P. 322, l. 25.—**Danger.** Within his power to injure.

P. 322, l. 28.—**Unjust.** Shylock purposely misunderstands Portia's "must."

P. 322, l. 29.—**Strain'd.** Has nothing to do with compulsion, is not constrained or forced.

P. 323, l. 5.—**Attribute.** Outward sign.

P. 323, l. 6.—**Of.** Inspired by.

P. 323, l. 7.—**Sceptred sway.** "Power symbolised by the sceptre."—*Deighton.*

P. 323, l. 15.—**Prayer.** The Lord's Prayer.

P. 323, l. 18.—**Follow.** If you insist upon justice.

P. 324, l. 3.—**Daniel.** "Refers to a story in the Apocrypha in which Daniel is narrated to have delivered, by his shrewdness, a woman suffering under false accusation."—*Withers.*

P. 324, l. 16.—**To the tenor.** In exact accordance with the terms of the bond.

P. 324, l. 23.—**Intent and purpose.** The law governing contracts generally is fully applicable to this particular contract.

P. 325, l. 25.—**Speak me fair.** Speak kindly of me when I am dead.

P. 326, l. 12.—**Stock of Barrabas.** The descendants of the robber Barrabas, who was released by the Jews instead of Christ. Shylock's daughter Jessica had eloped with Lorenzo, a friend of Bassanio.

P. 327, l. 12.—**Just pound.** An exact pound.

P. 327, l. 21.—**No longer question.** To waste words further.

P. 328, l. 1.—**Alien.** A foreigner, one not a citizen.

P. 328, l. 6.—**Privy coffer.** The treasury.

P. 328, l. 8.—**All other voice.** The Duke alone has the power to pardon.

P. 328, l. 10.—**Manifest proceeding.** By the plainest actions.

P. 328, l. 12.—**Contriv'd.** Plotted.

P. 328, l. 14.—**Formerly rehears'd.** Above quoted or cited.

P. 328, l. 25.—**For the state.** Humbleness on the part of the Jew may secure the remission of the penalty as far as the state is concerned, but this does not apply to the portion escheated to Antonio.

P. 328, l. 27.—**The prop.** His wealth.

P. 328, l. 33.—**Quit.** Remit.

P. 329, l. 1.—**In use.** In trust.

P. 329, l. 2.—**Gentleman.** Lorenzo, who was then at Belmont, Portia's residence, with Jessica.

P. 329, l. 5.—**Presently.** Immediately.
P. 329, l. 19.—**Two more.** A jury of twelve men to condemn him.
P. 329, l. 25.—**Serves you not.** Will not permit you to accompany me.

THE GREAT CARBUNCLE.

This selection, which has for a sub-title "A Mystery of the White Mountains," is taken from *Twice-Told Tales*. Hawthorne says: "The Indian tradition on which this somewhat extravagant tale is founded, is both too wild and too beautiful to be adequately wrought up in prose. Sullivan, in his *History of Maine*, written since the Revolution, remarks that even then the existence of the Great Carbuncle was not entirely discredited."

It is evident this story has in it more than appears on the surface. The various characters represent types of humanity in their search for truth, happiness, honor, glory, wealth, or ideal existence. The seeker might say in the words of Malebranche: "If truth were a bird and I held it captive, I should let it go, that I might catch it again." The Cynic is well described in Tennyson's *Voyage*—

> And only one among us,—him
> We pleased not,—he was seldom pleased;
> He saw not far; his eyes were dim,
> But ours, he swore, were all diseased.

Pigsnort represents a class but too familiar, those possessed of the greedy, grasping instinct. The chemist—selfish like the rest, for all were selfish, except the young married pair—is of those who would use the highest and best things as means toward their own glorification. The poet is a dreamer, but he, too, is selfish; what he writes is not to teach and elevate mankind, but it is to bring name and fame to himself. The poor aristocrat is of those who place the golden age in the past rather than the future; his sympathies and aims are no wider than his own family circle. And as for Matthew and Hannah, they would make a legitimate use of truth; it would minister to their own happiness and the happiness of those around them. In daily life we constantly meet with those who remind us of the characters here pictured. There is a danger that, because of this, we may miss the universal applications.

P. 331, l. 26.—**Saco.** A river in Maine flowing into the Atlantic Ocean.

P. 332, l. 4.—**Alchemy.** The art of turning the baser metals into gold.

P. 332, l. 10.—**Selectman.** A member of a board chosen every year in the New England towns to manage various local concerns.

P. 332, l. 11.—**Mr. Norton.** (1606-1663.) A Puritan clergyman who emigrated to America and became pastor of a Boston church.

P. 332, l. 15.—**Pine-tree shillings.** See Book III., page 173.

P. 333, l. 29.—**Captain Smith.** (1579-1631.) Captain John Smith, the founder of Virginia, explored the New England coast in 1614.

P. 335, l. 14.—**Notch.** Separates the Franconia Mountains from the main group of the White Mountains.

P. 336, l. 32.—**Great Mogul.** Chief ruler of India.

P. 337, l. 29.—**Grub Street.** A street in London once famous for the number of literary men who resided there, and for the dire poverty in which they usually were.

P. 339, l. 12.—**Rerum natura.** Nature.

THE COTTER'S SATURDAY NIGHT.

This poem was written in 1785, and was published in the first or Kilmarnock edition of Burns' poems in 1786. Gilbert Burns, brother of the poet, says:—"Robert had frequently remarked to me that he thought there was something peculiarly venerable in the phrase, 'Let us worship God,' used by a decent, sober head of a family introducing family worship. To this sentiment of the author the world is indebted for *The Cotter's Saturday Night*. The cotter in the poem is an exact copy of my father in his manners, his family devotion and exhortations; yet the other parts of the description do not apply to our family." In the original the poem was dedicated to Robert Aiken, and was prefaced by the eighth stanza of Gray's *Elegy*.

"The language is partly Ayrshire, partly English. The more homely passages are written in the vernacular; in the more exalted he uses a less familiar tongue. No doubt he made this distinction deliberately; he feared to degrade his higher theme by colloquial associations."—*Hales*.

In its original sense the term "cotter" was applied to one who inhabited a small cottage dependent on a farm, but in its wider sense, as

here, it is used to denote a small tenant farmer of the class to which Burns' father belonged.

John Gibson Lockhart says of this poem: "Loftier flights he certainly has made, but in these he remained but a short time on the wing, and effort is too often perceptible; here the motion is easy, gentle, placidly undulating. There is more of the conscious security of power than in any other of his serious pieces of considerable length; the whole has the appearance of coming in a full stream from the fountain of the heart,—a stream that soothes the ear and has no glare on the surface."

P. 349, l. 1.—**Friend.** Robert Aiken, a solicitor of Ayr, with whom Burns became acquainted during the religious quarrels in which he was engaged. Aiken was one of Burns' earliest patrons and friends.

P. 349, l. 2.—**Mercenary bard.** An allusion to the once common practice of dedicating a volume to some man of wealth or influence, with the hope of obtaining either money or position in return for the dedication. This system of "patronage" had almost died out in the time of Burns.

P. 349, l. 3.—**Selfish end.** Burns denies that he had any selfish motive in dedicating the poem to Aiken.

P. 349, l. 4.—**Lowly train.** The humble peasants in the obscure parts of the country.

P. 350, l. 8.—**Deposite.** Note the accent on this word.

P. 350, l. 15.—**Anticipation.** Expectation.

P. 350, l. 24.—**Mind your duty.** Say your prayers.

P. 351, l. 25.—**Soupe.** "The milk, the liquid element in the entertainment."—*Hales.*

P. 351, l. 31.—**Sin' lint, etc.** Since the flax was in the bloom. The cheese was a year old at the last flax-blossoming.

P. 352, l. 4.—**The big ha' Bible.** The large Bible kept for family worship by the Scottish peasantry. This Bible was always kept in the "ha'," or chief room of the house. "Ha'" is not used in the English sense of "hall."

P. 352, l. 10.—**Simple guise.** The plain psalm tunes in contrast with the Italian trills.

P. 352, l. 12.—**Dundee, Martyrs, Elgin.** All well-known Scottish psalm-tunes, and may be found in almost any book of sacred music.

P. 352, l. 14.—**Beets the flame.** Supplies the flame with fuel.

P. 352, l. 21.—**Eternal warfare.** *Exodus* xvii., 8-16.
P. 352, l. 23.—**Royal bard.** David. II. *Samuel* xii., 16.
P. 352, l. 28.—**Christian volume.** New Testament.
P. 353, l. 2.—**He.** The apostle John, who was banished to Patmos.
P. 353, l. 3.—**Mighty angel.** *Revelation* xix., 17.
P. 353, l. 4.—**Bab'lon's doom.** *Revelation* xviii., 4-5.
P. 353, l. 7.—**Springs exulting, etc.** Quoted from Pope's *Windsor Forest.*
P. 353, l. 12.—**Society.** Social enjoyment.
P. 353, l. 18.—**Ravens clamorous nest.** *Luke* xii., 24.
P. 353, l. 19.—**Decks the lily.** *Luke* xii., 26.
P. 354, l. 2.—**Wallace.** Sir William Wallace, the national hero of Scotland. He was born in Ayrshire about 1270. Having slain the son of an English officer, he was obliged to flee to the woods. He soon gathered to himself a large number of patriotic Scotchmen, and with these he drove the English out of the north of Scotland. He next defeated the English at Sterling Bridge in 1297, and was appointed Regent during the captivity of Baliol. His continued success so irritated Edward that he took the field with a large army and defeated Wallace at Falkirk. Wallace carried on a desultory warfare along the border for some time, but was finally betrayed into the hands of the English, by whom he was hanged, drawn and quartered.

GLOSSARY.

amaist, almost.
ance, once.
artless, simple.
bairns, children.
beets, nourishes.
belyve, by and by, presently.
blate, shamefaced, sheepish.
braw, fine, handsome.
ca', drive.
cannie, trustworthy, requiring judgment.
carking, distressing.
certes, in truth.
chews, chews.
claes, clothes.
convoy, accompany.
conscious, tell-tale.
cood, cud.
cracks, converses.
craws, crows or rooks.
due, suitable.
eydent, diligent.
fall, tasty.
flichterin, fluttering.
gars, makes.
grace, honor.
haffets, temples; here "temple-locks."
haffins, half, partly.
halesome, wholesome.

hallan, partition.
hawkie, a white-faced cow.
ingle, fire.
jank, trifle, dally.
kebbuck, cheese.
kens, knows.
kye, cows.
laithfu', bashful.
lave, others.
lays, songs.
lint, flax.
lyart, gray.
matlocks, pick-axes.
meed, reward.
miry, soiled with mud.
moil, drudgery.
morn, morrow.
native, natural, in-born.
neebo[illegible], neighbor or neighboring.
penny fee, wages in money.
pleugh, plow.
prevent, keep back from.
rin, run.
sair won, hard earned.
shears, scissors.
spiers, enquires.
statcher, stagger.
strappan, tall and handsome.
sugh, a rough, broiling sound.
tentie, diligently or attentively.
towmond, twelvemonth.
uncos', news, uncommon incidents.
wales, selects, chooses.
weel hained, carefully kept.
ween, think or imagine.

VERRES DENOUNCED.

This selection is a translation of a portion of one of the famous orations of Cicero against Caius Verres. Only two of these orations were delivered, the remaining five being written out after the defence had abandoned their case.

Verres was City Praetor in Rome, 74 B.C. At the expiration of his term, he was sent to Sicily as Propraetor, where he was allowed to remain for three years, due to the fact that Rome was shaken to its foundations by the revolt of the slaves. These years were distinguished by the most disgraceful cruelties and extortions. At the close of his office, after his return to Rome, the Sicilians brought suit against him in the proper court for trying offenses of this nature, and employed Cicero as their advocate. The case against him, owing to the untiring industry of Cicero, was so overwhelming, that Verres, after exhausting every device and quibble, known to the law, abandoned his case and went into exile.

P. 355, l. 1.—**Fathers.** The jurors, who were trying the case.

P. 355, l. 14.—**Quaestorship.** Verres was Quaestor or paymaster in B.C. 82, with the consul Papirius Carbo. The consul belonged to

the Marian faction, but Verres, taking with him the money wherewith to pay the troops, went over to Sulla. Shortly after he was Quaestor with Dolabella, Praetor of Cilicia, and acted as his tool in his extortations. Dolabella being brought to trial for his exactions, Verres secured his own freedom by revealing all he knew about the Praetor's actions.

P. 355, l. 18.—**Quaestorship in Sicily.** Verres was not Quaestor, but Propraetor or Governor of Sicily.

P. 356, l. 4.—**Publius Gavius Cosanus.** Gavius had been unjustly imprisoned, but managed to escape and hid himself for some time. He, however, again came into the power of Verres, was accused of being a spy, condemned and crucified.

P. 356, l. 10. **I am, etc.** *Civis Romanus sum.*

P. 356, l. 11.—**Lucius Pretius.** This should be Lucius Raecius.

Panormus. Palermo.

HAROLD'S SPEECH TO HIS ARMY.

This selection is taken from Chapter VII., Book XII. of *Harold, the Last of the Saxon Kings.*

On September 25, 1066, Harold defeated his brother Tostig and Harold Hardrada, King of Norway, at Stamford Bridge, both the leaders of the invading force being slain. On September 27, William of Normandy landed at Pevensey, and on September 29, occupied Hastings. Harold marched to meet him, and occupied the hill of Senlac, near by, waiting the Norman attack. This speech was delivered just before the battle on October 14, 1066. The Saxons, in the excitement of the battle forgot the warning of their king, and suffered a crushing defeat.

P. 358, l. 3.—**Count of the Normans.** William, Duke of Normandy.

P. 358, l. 19.—**Outscourings.** The Norman army was filled with adventurers who were attracted to the expedition by the hope of plunder.

P. 359, l. 12.—**Scald and Scop.** Minstrel and poet.

THE SLEEP.

This poem is based on *Psalm* cxxvii., 2.

THANATOPSIS.

This poem was written by Bryant at the age of 17 and first appeared in *The North American Review* for September, 1817, six years after it was first written. The poem was found by the poet's father, while looking through his sons' desk, and sent by him, unknown to the author, to the editor of the magazine. The meaning of the title is, "A View of Death."

The magnificent verse of this poem has never been surpassed in America. The solemn and majestic music of the verse is in entire harmony with the thought expressed. The thought itself reaches a high elevation, closing with the impressive lesson of the poem. The student could not do better than commit the whole poem to memory.

P. 363, l. 6.—**Take the wings, etc.** *Psalm* cxxxix., 9.

P. 363, l. 7.—**Barcan desert.** A district in Africa, bordering on the Mediterranean Sea. The southern portion is a desert.

P. 363, l. 9.—**Oregon.** The Columbia. When this poem was written the Columbia was hopelessly distant from civilization.

P. 363, l. 22.—**Make their bed.** *Psalm* cxxxix., 8.

DREAM UPON THE UNIVERSE.

This selection was not composed by De Quincey, but is a translation made by him from Richter. De Quincey had written a biographical sketch of Richter for the *London Magazine*, and illustrated the article by translations of particular passages. He promised to follow these up by other passages illustrative of Richter's style and thought. This promise was kept in two articles which were published in February and March, 1824, under the title *Analects from Richter*. This selection appeared in the latter number. A sketch of the life of Richter will be found in the *Biographical Sketches*.

The thought upon which the dream is founded is given in the first paragraph of the original article: "Our sun, together with all its planets fills only the 31,419,460,000,000,000th part of the whole space between itself and the next solar body." The sixth lecture in Sir Robert Ball's *Star Land*, (Cassel & Co.), contains some very interesting facts which may be used with advantage in connection with this lesson. See also Flammarion's *Popular Astronomy*, (Appleton), Chapters V. and X.

P. 364, l. 1.—**Herschel.** Sir William Herschel, (1738-1822), the great astronomer. He was a German by birth, but at an early age removed to England, where he remained during the rest of his life.

P. 365, l. 5.—**Cordilleras.** The name is applied to parts of the mountain system on the west coast of both North and South America.

P. 365, l. 9.—**Sirius.** The dog-star, the brightest star in the sky. It is estimated that it is 2,688 times larger than the sun and that it has a diameter of 12,000,000 miles. It is about 58,000,000,000,000 miles from the earth.

P. 365, l. 22.—**Galaxy.** The milky way, which is composed of an infinitude of stars.

P. 367, l. 7.—**Aurora Borealis.** The Northern Light.

P. 367, l. 15.—**Zenith to Nadir.** From the spot directly above ones head to the spot directly below ones feet, top to bottom.

P. 367, l. 27.—**Zaarahs.** Saharas, deserts.

P. 368, l. 3.—**Euphrasy.** The herb, eye-bright, formerly used as a specific for diseases of the eye.

P. 368, l. 28.—**The veil of Isis.** Isis was one of the great deities of the Egyptians. She is usually represented as holding a globe in her hand with a vessel full of ears of corn, and covered with a veil. Her statues usually bore the inscription: "I am all that has been, that shall be, and none among mortals has hitherto taken off my veil." The word itself means "ancient." To raise the veil of Isis is to penetrate the mysteries of the universe.

P. 369, l. 8.—**Madonna.** The Virgin Mary.

BRUTUS AND ANTONY.

This selection forms the second scene of the third act of *Julius Cæsar*. Cæsar had been murdered by the conspirators, and the citizens were in a state of great excitement. Brutus, contrary to the advice of Cassius, had given permission to Mark Antony to deliver the funeral oration over the dead body, and had himself promised to address the people and to give them satisfactory reasons for the killing of Cæsar.

Brutus addresses the mob, and by means of his moral force and high character, convinces them, and they are apparently satisfied. Note that Brutus appeals to the reason of the fickle mob, treats them like reasonable beings, and advances arguments which are far beyond their conceptions. Antony follows him, and plays upon the feelings, the

passions of the already excited mob, so as to sweep away all recollections of what has been said by Brutus. The skill with which Antony handles the crowd is a splendid tribute to the genius of Shakespeare. The various steps in the speech of Antony should be followed, the tricks and devices he used noticed. This is also an admirable passage for oral reading. It is absolutely necessary that the student should identify himself with the characters and enter into their spirit before he can read this selection with any success.

The first two acts of *Julius Cæsar* are taken up with the efforts of Cassius to induce Brutus, one of the most high-minded of the citizens of Rome, to join the conspiracy. The co-operation of Brutus was considered necessary, as only by his influence could there be any safety for the assassins after the deed was done. Cassius, who was envious of Cæsar, worked upon the patriotic feelings of Brutus, by leading him to believe that Cæsar wished to assume the purple, until he had secured his co-operation. The assassination took place, followed by the incidents in the text. Antony now joined with Octavius, and together they defeated Brutus and Cassius at Phillipi, where the two latter meet their death. See Moulton's *Shakespeare as a Dramatic Artist*, (The Clarendon Press), Chapter VIII. and IX., and Ransome's *Short Studies in Shakespeare's Plots*, (The Macmillan Co.), pages 42-73. Excellent editions of the play are edited by Innes, (Heath & Co.), and by Hudson, (Ginn & Co.).

P. 370, l. 1.—**Satisfied.** In regard to the murder of Cæsar. The citizens are enraged and intimate that there will be trouble unless satisfactory reasons are given.

P. 370, l. 11.—**Severally.** Separately.

P. 370, l. 13.—**Till the last.** Until I am finished.

P. 370, l. 14.—**Lovers.** Friends.

P. 370, l. 16.—**Honor.** Honorable character. **Censure.** Judge.

P. 370, l. 17.—**Senses.** Intelligence.

P. 371, l. 9.—**Question of.** Reason for.

P. 371, l. 10.—**Extenuated, enforced.** Not lessened; not magnified.

P. 371, l. 15.—**A place.** Impossible while Cæsar lived.

P. 371, l. 21.—**Ancestors.** Brutus was descended from Lucius Junius Brutus, who expelled the Tarquins and was elected first Consul of Rome.

P. 371, l. 23.—**Better parts.** Brutus had all the virtues of Cæsar.

P. 372, l. 6.—**Public chair.** The pulpit.

P. 372, l. 8.—**For Brutus' sake.** Thanks to what Brutus has [illegible]

P. 373, l. 4.—**Sterner stuff.** Sterner than to weep over the sorrows of the poor.

P. 373, l. 7.—**Lupercal.** When the feast of the Lupercalia was held. The Lupercalia was one of the oldest Roman festivals, held annually on February 15 in honor of Lupercus, the God of Fertility.

P. 373, l. 8.—**Presented.** See *Julius Cæsar*, Act I., Scene II.

P. 373, l. 10.—**Brutish beasts.** The antithesis of *human* beasts.

P. 373, l. 33.—**Poor.** Humble in circumstances.

P. 374, l. 12.—**Napkins.** Handkerchiefs.

P. 374, l. 29.—**O'er shot.** Gone much further than I intended.

P. 375, l. [illegible]—**Hearse.** The bier upon which the body was carried.

P. 375, l. 17.—**Nervii.** A most telling stroke. Cæsar was their great military hero and the victory over the Nervii one of his greatest exploits. The Nervii were the most warlike tribe in Gaul, and were defeated by Cæsar, B.C., 58, with terrible slaughter.

P. 375, l. 18.—**Cassius.** The head and front of the conspiracy against Cæsar.

P. 375, l. 19.—**Casca.** Another of the conspirators. **Envious.** Malicious.

P. 375, l. 23.—**Resolved.** Informed.

P. 375, l. 25.—**Angel.** "His counterpart, his good genius, or a kind of better and dearer self."

P. 375, l. 32.—**Pompey.** A member with Cæsar and Crassus of the First Trumivirate. He afterwards took the part of the Republic against Cæsar, was defeated at Pharsalia, and fled into Egypt, where he was treacherously slain.

Ran blood. Blood was pouring down the base of the pillar.

P. 376, l. 5.—**Dint.** "The impression made by pity."—*Deighton.*

P. 376, l. 22.—**Private griefs.** Personal grievances.

P. 376, l. 24.—**Reasons.** The inference is that no reasons have as yet been given.

P. 377, l. 18.—**Drachmas.** Equivalent to about 14 cents. Cæsar left to each Roman what would be equivalent to $100 of our money.

P. 377, l. 30.—**Burn.** Cremate.

Holy place. The place devoted to the burning of the bodies of the dead.

P. 378, l. 4.—**Octavius.** The nephew and heir of the murdered Cæsar. He is better known as Augustus Cæsar, the first Emperor of Rome.

P. 378, l. 6.—**Lepidus.** A noble Roman, member of the Second Trimivirate with Antony and Octavius. His indolence undermined his influence and he died in obscurity.

KUBLA KHAN.

"In the summer of the year 1797, the author, then in ill-health, had retired to a lonely farm house. In consequence of a slight indisposition, an anodyne had been prescribed, from the effects of which he fell asleep in his chair at the moment he was reading the following sentence, or words of the same substance in *Purchas's Pilgrimage*: 'Here the Khan Kubla commanded a palace to be built, and a stately garden thereunto. And thus ten miles of fertile ground were enclosed with a wall.' The author continued for about three hours in a profound sleep, at least of the external senses, during which time he has the most vivid confidence, that he could not have composed less than from two to three hundred lines; if that indeed can be called composition in which all the images rose up before him as *things*, with a parallel production of the correspondent impression, without any sensation or consciousness of effort. On awakening, he appeared to himself to have a distinct recollection of the whole, and taking his pen, ink and paper, instantly and eagerly wrote down the lines that are here preserved. At this moment he was unfortunately called out by a person on business, and detained by him about an hour, and on his return to his room, found to his no small mortification, that though he still retained some vague and dim recollections of the general purport of the vision, yet, with the exception of some eight or ten scattered lines and images, all the rest had passed away."—*Coleridge.*

P. 378, l. 1.—**Xanadu.** The name given by Purchas to the place where the summer-palace of Kubla Khan was built.

Kubla Khan. The founder of the Mongol dynasty in China in the thirteenth century. He is said to have built Pekin.

P. 378, l. 3.—**Alph.** A mythical name for this subterranean river.

P. 378, l. 8.—**Sinuous.** Winding, meandering.

P. 378, l. 12.—**Greenery.** Verdure.

P. 379, l. 2.—**Demon lover.** A favorite theme with Coleridge, and with the old English ballad writers.

P. 379, l. 19.—**Measure.** Music.

P. 379, l. 23.—**Dulcimer.** A stringed musical instrument.

P. 379, l. 27.—**Mount Abora.** Probably Abba Yared in Abyssinia, a mountain nearly 15,000 feet high.

P. 379, l. 29.—**Symphony.** "Harmonious accompaniment."

P. 380, l. 3.—**Weave a circle.** The magic circle, outside of which the person within could not move, nor could any person from without enter.

P. 380, l. 5.—**Honey-dew.** No special meaning. A compound of "honey" and "dew."

PERSEUS.

This selection, complete in itself, is taken from *The Heroes or Greek Fairy Tales for my Children*, published by Macmillan & Co., in 1855. The volume contains also the stories of Theseus and of the Argonauts.

Kingsley's object in writing *The Heroes* was, as stated by himself in the preface, of a three-fold nature. In the first place he wished to introduce the young people to the mythology of Greece, to familiarize them with some of the great names of Grecian literature, to teach them something of the country itself, and to give them some conception of the ideals that governed the people, who, more than all others have influenced the modern world. In the second place, he wished to show the children that, although the Greeks were heathens, they were taught by God, and that their aspirations were always towards the highest good. In the third place, he wished to bring home to them the eternal truth, "Do right and God will help you."

In studying this selection, Kingsley's three objects should not be forgotten, although none of them should be obtrusively thrust forward. Neither should character-study, for which the hero, Perseus, affords a fine opportunity, be allowed to usurp the chief place. For school-room use the main point is to enter imaginatively into the various scenes as they are presented, to plunge heart and soul into the struggle along with the hero, to share with him his difficulties and his dangers, and to triumph with him in the successful result of all his labors. If the student carries away with him an entirely clear conception of *the story*, and has in addition gained at least some appreciation of the literary beauty of the selection, his study will not have been in vain.

P. 380, l. 1.—**Acrisius.** The son of Abas and Ocalea. His story is related in the text. The story usually told of his death is slightly different from that here related. Acrisius is said to have been drawn to Larissa, out of curiosity to see the hero about whom he heard so much and who was then the guest of the king of that city. While mingling with the crowd in disguise, the quoit accidently struck him and caused his death.

Proetus. His story is told in the text. There is, however, no well-known authority for the statement that he was killed by Perseus. He is said to have died a natural death, and to have been succeeded on the throne by his son.

P. 380, l. 3.—**Argos.** A very ancient city, founded about 1856, B.C., the capital of Argolis, situated about two miles from the sea. Its walls were said to have been built by the Cyclopes.

Hellas. Greece.

P. 380, l. 5.—**Lerna fen.** A beautiful piece of pasture land in Argolis. It was here that Hercules killed the Hydra. See Book IV., page 263.

P. 380, l. 12.—**Foreign princess.** Sthenobœa, the daughter of Jobates, king of Lycia, in Asia Minor. She afterwards fell in love with Bellerophon and, on being repulsed by that hero, killed herself.

P. 380, l. 14.—**Cyclopes.** Giants, the sons of Cœlus and Terra, who inhabited the western part of Sicily. They had but one eye, in the middle of the forehead. They were of immense size, brutal in their manners, and ate human flesh. They were employed by Hephaistos in his workshop, principally at forging the thunderbolts of Zeus. They were all destroyed by Apollo, in revenge for having forged the thunderbolts that killed Æsculapius. See Book IV., page 194.

P. 380, l. 18.—**Tiryns.** Tirynthus in Argolis. It was the walls of Argos, and not Tirynthus, that were built by the Cyclopes.

P. 381, l. 8.—**Danae.** Her story is told in the text.

P. 382, l. 11.—**Halcyone. Ceyx.** The usual story is as follows:—Ceyx, king of Trachines, the son of Lucifer, was married to Halcyone, the daughter of the wind-god Æolus. Ceyx went to Claros to consult the oracle, but was drowned on his way thither. Halcyone was informed of this by the gods in a dream. She immediately threw herself into the sea and was drowned. She and Ceyx were changed into birds. During the time that these birds are breeding, 14 days in all,

the nest floats on the perfectly calm waters of the Grecian seas. Hence the term "Halcyon days."

P. 383, l. 12.—**Trident.** Three-pronged spear.

P. 383, l. 26.—**More than mortal.** The father of Perseus was Zeus.

P. 384, l. 1.—**Seriphus.** A small island on the Ægean sea, about 60 miles from the coast of Greece, and about 125 miles from Argos.

P. 384, l. 2.—**Polydectes, Dictys.** Their story is fully told in the text.

P. 385, l. 6.—**Zeus.** See Book IV., page 22.

P. 386, l. 4.—**Samos.** An island in the Ægean sea near the coast of Asia Minor, about 120 miles from Seriphus.

P. 386, l. 29.—**Pallas Athene.** See Book IV., page 23.

P. 387, l. 12.—**Titans.** Gigantic beings of enormous strength, the sons of Cœlus and Terra. They made war upon Chronos and deprived him of his throne; many of them were afterwards severely punished for their daring.

Monsters. See Book V., page 393.

P. 387, l. 19.—**Two sorts of men.** Similarly Achilles was given his choice between a long life of ease and obscurity and a short life crowded with action. Hercules also was allowed to choose between a life of pleasure and ease and a life of duty and hardship. Achilles chose the short life and Hercules the life of duty.

P. 388, l. 11.—**Medusa.** The daughter of Phorcys and Ceto. She was so celebrated for her great beauty that Poseidon fell in love with her. This angered Pallas Athene, so that she changed Medusa into the horrible monster described in the text.

P. 393, l. 12.—**Hyperboreans.** A people who live in the uttermost parts of northern Europe. They live to the age of 1,000 years, and are continuously happy. The sun rises and sets but once a year in that region. The word means, "People who live beyond the North Wind."

P. 393, l. 13.—**North wind.** Among the ancients the winds were personified and worshipped as gods. Boreas is the god of the North Wind.

P. 393, l. 14.—**Gray Sisters.** The Graeas, the daughters of Phorcys and Ceto, and sisters of the Gorgons. From their birth they had gray hair and were provided with wings, but they had but one eye and one tooth among the three.

P. 392, l. 16.—**Nymphs.** Seven nymphs, daughters of Hesperus, the evening star; hence the name, the Hesperides. Their duty was to guard the golden apples given by Heré to Zeus as a wedding present. See Book IV., page 253.

Evening star. Hesperus, the son of Japetus, and the brother of Atlas. After death he was placed in the heavens as the Evening star.

P. 392, l. 17.—**Atlantic island.** The garden of the Hesperides was supposed to be situated on an island in the Atlantic ocean, west of Spain. Others place it near Mount Atlas in Africa.

P. 392, l. 26—**Winged horse.** Pegasus, the horse of the Muses. As soon as born, he flew to the top of Mount Helicon, where by striking his foot on the ground he produced the fountain Hippocrene. He was captured and tamed by Pallas Athene, who gave him to Bellerephon. After that hero had conquered the Chimæra, he was thrown by Pegasus and killed. The horse then flew up to heaven and was placed in the sky as a constellation.

P. 393, l. 27.—**Giant of the golden sword.** Chrysaor, the son of Poseidon and Medusa. His name means "golden sword." He was the father of Geryon, Echidna, and the Chimæra.

P. 393, l. 28.—**Echidna.** A monster, the daughter of Chrysaor, represented as a beautiful woman in the upper part of her body, but as a loathsome serpent below the waist.

Geryon. A monster, the son of Chrysaor, who was born with three heads, three bodies, and three sets of legs. He had large herds of cattle which he kept in the island of Gades, in the Atlantic, about 25 miles west of the Atlantic coast. These were guarded by the dog Orthes. Both Geryon and Orthes were killed by Hercules.

P. 393, l. 30.—**Gorgons.** Three monsters, daughters of the sea-god Phorcys and his sister Ceto, two of whom Stheno and Euryale were immortal. They had serpents instead of hair, teeth like a wild boar, hands of brass, and bodies covered with scales.

P. 393, l. 31.—**Queen of the Sea.** The Gorgons were not the daughters of Amphitrite, the wife of Poseidon and the Queen of the Sea, but of Ceto, who was the daughter of Pontus and Gaea.

P. 394, l. 9.—**Amalthea.** According to the fable, Amalthea was the daughter of Melissus, king of Crete, and fed Zeus with goat's milk when he was exposed as an infant on Mount Ida in Crete. Here Amalthea is represented as the goat that fed Zeus. She was taken up to Heaven after death and made a constellation.

P. 294, l. 10.—**Ægis holder.** Zeus. The Ægis is his shield; the word means goat skin. Zeus covered his shield with the skin of Amalthea, and afterwards gave the shield to Pallas Athene.

P. 294, l. 12.—**The Peak.** Mount Olympus. See Book IV., page [illegible].

P. 294, l. 21.—**Hermes.** See Book IV., page 25.

Argus slayer. A monster with 100 eyes sent by Herè to watch Io who had offended her. By order of Zeus, Hermes lulled Argus to sleep with the sound of his lute and then slew him. Herè placed the eyes of Argus in the tail of the peacock, the bird sacred to herself.

P. 294, l. 26.—**Sword.** Called "Herpe."

P. 295, l. 22.—**Ister fens.** The marshes of the Danube.

P. 296, l. 5.—**Cythnus, Ceos, Cyclades.** Islands in the Ægean sea.

P. 296, l. 6.—**Attica.** A division of Greece, of which Athens was the capital.

Thebes. The capital of Bœotia, on the banks of the Ismenus.

P. 296, l. 7.—**Copaic lake.** A lake in Bœotia, famous for its eels.

Cephisus. A river of Bœotia, flowing into the Copaic lake.

P. 296, l. 8.—**Œta.** A mountain between Thessaly and Macedonia. It was here that Hercules died.

Pindus. A mountain in Macedonia.

P. 296, l. 9.—**Thessalian plain.** A county in north-eastern Greece.

P. 296, l. 11.—**Thracia.** Corresponds roughly to modern Turkey.

P. 296, l. 12.—**Pæons.** A tribe in Macedonia supposed to be descended from the Trojans.

Dardans. A tribe in Mœsia, near the Macedonian border.

Triballi. A tribe of Thracia, conquered after some difficulty by Philip of Macedon.

P. 296, l. 13.—**Scythian plain.** The great Asiatic plain, lying east and north of the Caspian sea.

P. 297, l. 26.—**Giants.** The sons of Cœlus and Terra, beings of gigantic size, enormous strength and abnormal development. Some had 100 heads, others 100 hands. They were defeated and slain in the famous contest with the Immortals, who were assisted by Hercules.

P. 298, l. 20.—**Atlas.** One of the Titans, the son of Japetus. He assisted the giants in their wars against the gods, and was punished by being compelled to hold up the heavens. See Book IV., page 251.

Hesperides. Kingsley has mixed up two stories here. The Atlan-

tides were seven nymphs, the daughters of Atlas, and were sometimes spoken of as Hesperides after their mother Hesperis. The nymphs here referred to are the daughters of Hesperus, the brother of Atlas. See page 392, line 16 above, and page 399, line 28.

P. 399, l. 1.—**Tin Isles.** Britain.

Iberian shore. Spain.

P. 399, l. 7.—**Tritons.** Triton was a god of the sea, the son of Poseidon. He was very powerful and could even calm the ocean. He is usually represented as half man and half fish. The name is applied to various sea-deities, but here it means merely sea-nymphs.

P. 399, l. 8.—**Galatæa.** One of the nymphs of the sea, the daughter of Nereus and Doris. There does not seem to be any warrant for making her a queen over even the sea-nymphs.

P. 400, l. 1.—**Ladon.** Kingsley appears to have coined this name for the sleepless dragon with 100 heads and 100 voices, that guarded the golden apples. The dragon is said to have been killed by Hercules.

P. 400, l. 9.—**Heracles.** Hercules. See Book IV., page 247.

P. 401, l. 12.—**Hat of darkness.** During the war between the gods and the giants, the Cyclopes forged for Pluto, the god of the lower world, a helmet which rendered the wearer invisible. This was the helmet worn by Perseus.

P. 401, l. 17.—**Hades.** The infernal world, ruled over by Pluto.

P. 402, l. 11.—**Streams of ocean.** The ancients imagined the world to be round, like a plate, and around the outer rim, completely surrounding the world, flowed the Ocean Stream.

P. 404, l. 25.—**Poseidon.** See Book IV., page 22.

P. 404, l. 26.—**Bosphorus, Hellespont.** The former connects the Ægean Sea with the Propontis (the sea of Marmora), and the latter the Propontis with the Pontus Euxinus (the Black Sea). See Book IV., page 178.

P. 404, l. 27.—**Lestonian Land.** A land formerly existing in the Mediterranean, connecting Greece with Asia Minor. It is said that Poseidon became angry with Zeus and struck the land with his trident, leaving only as a remnant the islands which dot the Ægean Sea. Here the submerging of the land is part of a bargain made by Zeus.

P. 405, l. 2.—**Libyan shore.** According to the Greeks, Libya bordered on the Mediterranean Sea, and extended far to the southward, including the desert of Sahara.

P. 405, l. 10.—**Asps.** The blood that fell from the head of Medusa

is said to have produced the poisonous snakes that infest the desert of Sahara.

P. 405, l. 14.—**Psylli.** A people of the Libyan desert, very expert in destroying the snakes and curing their bites.

P. 405, l. 15.—**Dwarfs.** See Book IV., page 247.

P. 407, l. 31.—**Eos.** Aurora, the goddess of the dawn. The epithet "rosy-fingered" is always applied to her in the classical poets. It was her duty to open the gates of the East that the sun-god might pass through. It is she who pours the dew upon the earth and makes the flowers grow.

P. 408, l. 4.—**Obelisks.** Monumental rectangular columns, tapering towards the top.

P. 409, l. 2.—**Chemmis.** An island in Egypt, situated in the middle of a very deep lake.

P. 409, l. 11.—**Mount Casius.** Now Cape St. Cas, on the northern coast of Egypt.

P. 409, l. 12.—**Serbonian Bog.** Near Mount Casius, "about 125 miles in circuit, surrounded by knolls of shifting sand, which in high winds was swept into the lake till the water was hardly distinguishable from land."

P. 409, l. 15.—**Lacedæmon.** Sparta, the capital of Laconia, in Greece.

Tempe. A beautiful valley in Thessaly, between Mounts Olympus and Ossa. It was said to be the most beautiful spot on earth.

P. 409, l. 18.—**Wrath of King Poseidon.** In this story of Andromeda, Kingsley seems to have mixed up the details. Cepheus was king of the Æthiops, who were inhabitants of Africa. His wife, Cassiope, boasted herself fairer than the Nereides, and these nymphs, to avenge themselves, requested Poseidon to punish the offender. This he did by sending a flood and a sea-monster to ravage the land. Kingsley speaks here of the wrath of Poseidon, but afterwards substitutes Atargates, a Syrian goddess, for the Nereides, and Moloch for Poseidon himself. He also makes Cepheus king of Iope or Joppa, on the coast of Palestine. Pliny mentions a tradition that a rock in the sea near Joppa was the sea-monster whom Perseus changed into a rock. Apparently Kingsley founds his story upon this tradition, and changes the details to suit.

P. 411, l. 18.—**Cepheus.** One of the Argonauts. His story is told in the text.

Iope. Joppa, modern Jaffa, on the coast of Palestine.

P. 411, l. 19 and 20.—**Cassiope, Andromeda.** Their story is told in the text.

P. 411, l. 23.—**Atargates.** A Syrian goddess, usually identified with Astarte. Her worship was very widespread among the Greeks and even among the Romans. She was known as the Fish goddess and was also, like Aphrodite, fabled to have sprung from the foam of the sea, hence she was called the Sea-Queen.

P. 411, l. 25.—**Fire-king.** Apparently Moloch, the personification of destructive fire, is here meant. His worship was widespread throughout Asia Minor. His image was usually made hollow, with a fire burning within. Children who were offered to the idol were placed in the outstretched hands of the image, their cries being drowned by loud music.

P. 412, l. 17.—**Lords of Olympus.** The immortal gods.

P. 414, l. 29.—**Phineus.** In the original story, Andromeda was betrothed to Phineus himself. A bloody battle ensued which was ended only by Perseus using the head of the Gorgon.

P. 416, l. 27.—**Sacred lake.** At Ascalon, the chief seat of the worship of the Fish-goddess, Atargates, was a lake sacred to her, in which were kept fishes, carefully guarded by a special band of priests. These fishes were especially sacred and were not allowed to be killed or eaten. According to the Syrian story, which differs from the Greek, it was through this lake that the water of the Deluge disappeared within the earth.

Deucalion's deluge. Deucalion, king of Thessaly, was the son of Prometheus. Zeus became very angry at the impiety of mankind and resolved to destroy them utterly. Accordingly he sent a deluge, and Deucalion with his wife Pyrrha, who by the advice of Prometheus, had built a boat, were the only ones preserved. Deucalion, on asking the oracle how the earth should be repeopled, was told to cast behind him the bones of his mother. He interpreted this to mean the stones of the earth and did so. Those thrown by Deucalion became men, and those thrown by Pyrrha became women. The deluge is said to have happened 1500 B.C., and to have disappeared through a hole in the earth near the temple of Zeus at Olympia. Very many different accounts are given in the classical writers.

P. 416, l. 30.—**A strange nation.** The children of Israel.

P. 417, l. 5.—**Phoenicians.** The people of Phoenicia in Asia Minor. Its chief cities were Tyre and Sidon.

P. 419, l. 6.—**Larissa.** A city in Thessaly, on the river Peneus. It contained a magnificent temple to Zeus.

P. 419, l. 7.—**Pelasgi.** The most ancient nation in Greece, living chiefly in Thessaly and Epirus. They were so called for their first king, Pelasgus.

P. 419, l. 24.—**Hydrea.** An island a few miles from the mainland of Greece, opposite Argolis.

Sunium. Marathon. See Book V., page 201.

P. 419, l. 25.—**Euripus.** A narrow strait separating Bœotia from the island of Eubœa, now Negropont. The open space to the north of the strait is called the *Eubœan Sea.*

P. 419, l. 29.—**Teutamias.** All that is known of him is here related.

P. 420, l. 13.—**Four crowns.** Crowns of olive were usually given to the winners of contests at the Greek games.

P. 421, l. 14.—**Burnt.** Cremation was commonly practised among the Greeks. The body was placed on a funeral pyre and burned, the ashes were then collected, placed in an urn and buried.

P. 421, l. 15.—**Purified.** Among the Greeks it was necessary, when murder had been committed, whether intentionally or not, to go through certain religious ceremonies in the temple of one of the gods, before being allowed to again mingle with men.

P. 421, l. 21.—**Into the sky.** All four of the constellations here mentioned may be seen in any good "Atlas of the Stars," and may readily be identified in the sky. See *The Stars in Song and Legend*, by J. R. Porter, (Ginn & Co.).

THE BATTLE OF LAKE REGILLUS.

This is the second of the *Lays of Ancient Rome*, and is supposed to have been sung about 90 years after *Horatius*. After Tarquin had failed in the attempt to regain his throne by the aid of Lars Porsena, he took refuge with his son-in-law, Mamilius. By the help of Mamilius the sympathy of the thirty Latin cities was gained, and a League established. The confederate cities marched their forces against the Romans, whom they met at Lake Regillus, with the result related in the text.

For general introduction to the *Lays*, and teaching points, see notes on *Horatius*, Book IV., page 352. Several excellent annotated editions, with good introduction, have been issued—Webb, (The Macmillan Co.), Harden, (Bell & Sons), and Flather, (Cambridge Press).

P. 422, l. 1.—**Lictors.** Each consul was attended by twelve officers, called "Lictors," each of whom carried a bundle of rods, with an axe in the midst, indicating that the consuls possessed the power of scourging and of putting to death. The lictors walked before the consuls, it being their duty to clear the way for the magistrates, and protect them in the discharge of their duty.

P. 422, l. 2.—**Knights.** The Knights or Equites were a body of wealthy Patrician horse-soldiers, supposed to have been formed by Romulus. "It was ordained [by Fabius and Decius] that a grand muster and inspection of the equestrian body should be part of the ceremonial performed on the anniversary of the Battle of Regillus, in honor of Castor and Pollux, the two equestrian gods. All the knights, clad in purple and crowned with olive, were to meet in the temple of Mars in the suburbs. Thence they were to ride in state to the Forum, where the temple of the Twins stood."—*Macaulay.* Sometimes as many as 5,000 horsemen took part in the parade.

P. 422, l. 4.—**Castor, Mars.** The temple of Castor stood on the south side of the Forum, while that of Mars was without the city wall. Mars, as the god of war, was held in high repute among the Romans.

P. 422, l. 7.—**Yellow river.** The Tiber. See Book IV., page 360.

Sacred hill. The Mons Sacer, a mountain a few miles from Rome, to which the Plebs retired when they seceded from Rome. An altar to Jupiter was built there to commemorate the successful result of the secession, thus giving the mountain its name.

P. 422, l. 8.—**Ides of Quintilis.** The fifteenth day of July. Quintilis was the fifth month of the Roman year. The "Ides" divided the month into two nearly equal parts; in July they fell on the 15th. This was the anniversary of Regillus.

P. 422, l. 9.—**Martain Kalends.** The first day of March, the ancient Roman New Year's day, when the sacred fire was solemnly rekindled on the hearth of Vesta, and public rejoicings were held. The Kalends fell on the first day of each month.

December's Nones. The fifth day of December, on which was celebrated the festival called the Faunalia, in honor of Faunus or

Pan. The "nones" fell on either the fifth or the seventh day of each month, being nine days before the "Ides."

P. 422, l. 10.—**Whitest day.** Days of good omen among the Romans were marked with white chalk, while those of evil omen were indicated by marks made with charcoal.

P. 422, l. 11.—**Twin brethren.** Castor and Pollux, the fabled twin children of Jupiter and Leda. On arriving at maturity, they joined the Argonautic expedition under Jason and distinguished themselves by daring and bravery. They cleared the Grecian seas of pirates and performed many other beneficial exploits. After death they were placed in the heavens, as a constellation called Gemini. Their worship prevailed extensively both in Greece and Rome. They were generally represented mounted on two white horses, armed with spears and riding side by side, each having his head covered with a bonnet, on whose top glittered a star.

P. 422, l. 13.—**Parthenius.** A mountain in Arcadia about 30 miles north of Sparta.

P. 422, l. 14.—**Cirrha.** A town in Phocis, near Mount Parnassus.

Adria. The Adriatic Sea.

P. 422, l. 16.—**Lacedæmon.** Sometimes known as Sparta, was the birth place of Castor and Pollux. It was situated on the banks of the Eurotas in Laconia. After the Dorian conquest Lacedæmon was made the chief city of the Peleponnesus. It was ruled by two kings who belonged to the houses of Eurysthenes and Procles, sons of Aristodemus, a descendant of Hercules.

P. 422, l. 17.—**Lake Regillus.** The site of the battle is unknown. Macaulay adopts the opinion which places it near Monte Porzio about 10 miles from Rome.

Porcian height. Monte Porzio.

P. 422, l. 18.—**Tusculum.** A town in Latium, now Frascati, about 10 miles from Rome

P. 422, l. 19.—**Now.** At the time when the Lay was sung.

P. 422, l. 21.—**Corne.** "A hill near Tusculum, in which was a grove sacred to Diana and famous for its beautiful trees."—*Flather.*

P. 422, l. 22.—**Fair Fount.** A spring near Tusculum.

P. 422, l. 23.—**Angle.** Hook.

P. 423, l. 7.—**Thirty cities.** The original Latin league from which Rome was an offshoot. Under Tarquinius Superbus Rome became the head of this league, but after the expulsion of the Tarquins the

thirty cities combined, under the dictatorship of Octavius Mamilius, to compel the Romans to receive back their king.

P. 423, l. 10.—**Hoof-mark.** "One spot on the margin of Lake Regillus was regarded during many ages with superstitious awe. A mark resembling in shape a horse's hoof, was discernible in the volcanic rock; and this mark was believed to have been made by one of the celestial chargers."—*Macaulay.*

P. 423, l. 15.—**Years gone by.** Macaulay places the date of the Lay as A.U.C. 451; the battle of Lake Regillus was fought A.U.C. 258.

P. 423, l. 16.—**Virginius.** A member of the Patrician family of the Virginii.

Consul. See Book IV., page 361. The consuls alternately directed affairs for a month at a time, seniority being probably determined by age.

P. 423, l 17.—**Posthumian race.** One of the great Patrician families, founded by the Aulus here mentioned.

P. 423, l. 18.—**Gabii.** About 10 miles from Rome.

P. 423, l. 19.—**Eastern gate.** The Porta Esquilina by which one would enter the city coming from Gabii.

Latines. The Romans themselves were Latins, but they were now at war with the League.

P. 423, l. 21.—**Did his office.** Performed his duty.

P. 423, l. 23.—**The Tarquins.** See Book IV., page 359.

P. 424, l. 2.—**Eagle.** The eagle was afterwards adopted as the standard of Rome.

P. 424, l. 3.—**Fathers.** The Roman Senate, the governing body of the city.

P. 424, l. 10.—**Conscript Fathers.** "Patres (et) Conscripti, the formal designation of the Senators; 'Patres' were the Patrician members of the Senate, 'Conscripti' were the Plebeians enrolled in that originally Patrician body."—*Allen* and *Greenough.*

P. 424, l. 12.—**Dictator.** An officer appointed by the Romans in seasons of great difficulty and danger. He held office for six months, and during that time the whole executive power of the state was in his hands. The 24 lictors of the Consuls marched before him as a sign of his authority. He was commander-in-chief of all the forces of the Republic, and appointed a second in command, who was called the Master of the Knights.

P. 424, l. 12.—**Camerium.** One of the Latin cities. Its site is now unknown.

P. 424, l. 18.—**Abutius Rufus.** Nothing further is known about him.

P. 424, l. 21.—**Sempronius.** The consul of the preceding year.

P. 425, l. 3.—**Setia.** One of the Latin cities famous for its vineyards.

Norba. One of the Latin cities near the Volscian hills, now known as Norma. Its walls were supposed to have been built by the giants.

P. 425, l. 4.—**Tusculum.** The chief town of the Latins, situated on the side of a hill about 12 miles from Rome. See page 431, lines 15-18.

P. 425, l. 5.—**Witch's Fortress.** Circeii, a Latin town, south of the Pomptine Marsh. It was called after the enchantress Circe, who was accustomed by means of her spells to turn men into beasts.

P. 425, l. 6.—**Glassy lake.** Lacus Nemorensis, modern Lake Nemi, "a beautiful sheet of clear water, sheltered by the wooded sides of the extinct crater in which it lies."—*Fletcher.*

Aricia. A very ancient town in Italy, on the Appian Way, now known as Riccia. It was built by Hippolytus, son of Theseus, after he had been raised from the dead and transported into Italy. In a grove near the town was built a temple to Diana, where human sacrifices were offered. The priest of the temple was usually a fugitive slave. He obtained his position by killing the priest who held the office, and always went about armed with a dagger to prevent a similar attempt on his own life.

P. 425, l. 9.—**Ufens.** A sluggish river in the southern part of Latium.

P. 425, l. 12.—**Cora.** An ancient city of Latium, built on a spur of the Appennines. Its walls were of extraordinary strength and massiveness, and are fabled to have been built by the giants.

P. 425, l. 12.—**Never-ending fen.** The Pomptine marsh, lying between the Volscian mountains and the sea, about 30 miles long and 8 miles broad. It is a very unhealthy locality in warm weather, owing to the fogs that rise from the marsh.

P. 425, l. 13.—**Laurentian jungle.** The marsh and forest near Laurentinum, a coast town about 10 miles from the mouth of the Tiber.

P. 425, l. 14.—**Anio.** A river which rises in the Appennines, and

after a very rapid course, enters the Tiber about 5 miles from its mouth. Near Tivoli, during its course, is a series of beautiful falls.

P. 425, l. 15.—**Velitrae.** A city of the Latin League, on the south slope of the Alban Hills, famous as the birthplace of the Emperor Augustus.

P. 425, l. 17.—**Mamilius.** See Book IV., page 360.

P. 425, l. 21.—**Land of sunrise.** The East.

Syria. Tyre, famous in ancient days for its beautiful purple stuffs, was on the Syrian coast.

P. 425, l. 22.—**Carthage.** The most celebrated maritime power in the ancient world. Originally a Phœnician colony, it soon surpassed Tyre and Sidon, and maintained its supremacy until conquered by Rome, about 200 B.C.

P. 425, l. 23.—**Lavinium.** A city on the coast, a short distance south of Laurentum. It was built by Æneas, and named in honor of his wife, Lavinia.

P. 425, l. 24.—**Marsh.** See line 12 above.

Coast. The Latin cities on the coast.

P. 425, l. 25.—**Sextus.** See Introduction to *Horatius*, Book IV., page 359.

P. 425, l. 29.—**A woman.** Lucretia, the wife of Tarquinius Collatinus, who stabbed herself in the presence of her husband, on account of the crime of Sextus.

P. 426, l. 1.—**Spinning.** When Sextus came to visit the house of Collatinus, he found Lucretia spinning among her maidens.

P. 426, l. 5.—**Bleeding breast.** The wound made by her own hand, Sextus being the cause.

P. 426, l. 8.—**Tibur.** An ancient city of the Sabines, on the banks of the Anio, about 20 miles north of Rome, now known as Tivoli.

Pedum. Modern Gallicano, about 10 miles from Rome.

P. 426, l. 9.—**Ferentinum.** A Volscian city, east of Rome. It is famous for the remains of its gigantic walls.

Gabii. There was formerly a lake near Gabii, but it is now dried up.

P. 426, l. 10.—**Volscian succors.** Forces sent by the Volscians to the assistance of the Latins. See Book IV., page 360.

P. 426, l. 11.—**Ancient king.** The old king, Tarquinius Superbus. Many noble Romans followed the Tarquins into exile.

P. 426, l. 12.—**Mount Soracte.** A mountain in Etruria, about

2,200 feet high, 25 miles north of Rome and plainly visible from that city. Its top is frequently covered with snow.

P. 426, l. 16.—**Apulia.** One of the northern provinces of Italy, celebrated for its horses.

P. 426, l. 19.—**Targe.** Shield.

P. 426, l. 23.—**Pomptine fog.** See page 425, line 12 above.

P. 427, l. 1.—**Digentian rock.** A rock overhanging the river Digentia, a river of the Sabine hills flowing into the Anio. The famous farm of Horace was on this river.

P. 427, l. 2.—**Bandusia.** A fountain near the farm of Horace.

P. 427, l. 3.—**Herminius.** See Book IV., page 263, and Introduction.

Auster. Named for the south wind.

P. 427, l. 6.—**Crown.** The reward given by the army to a victorious general.

Fidenæ. A city on the Tiber, about 5 miles from Rome, finally conquered 438 B.C.

P. 427, l. 9.—**Calabrian brake.** The "heel" of Italy, very fertile, but infected with venomous reptiles. **Brake** means thicket.

P. 427, l. 10.—**Speckled snake.** The viper.

P. 427, l. 16.—**Among his elms.** His vines trained up to elm trees.

P. 427, l. 25.—**Clients.** Attached to each Patrician house was a body of retainers, called "clients." They were under the protection of the house to which they belonged, and rendered service in return.

P. 428, l. 2.—**Valerius.** "Manlius Valerius, the brother of Publius Valerius, who was surnamed 'Poplicola,' or 'Friend of the People,' on account of the laws he passed in their favor. Poplicola died a short time before the battle of Lake Regillus."—*Webb.*

P. 428, l. 12.—**Fabian race.** One of the most famous of the Patrician families. Caeso was their cognomen.

P. 428, l. 13.—**Juno's shrine.** There was a famous temple of Juno or Heré at Gabii.

P. 428, l. 14.—**Julian line.** One of the most ancient of the Patrician families, claiming descent from Iulus or Ascanius, the son of Æneas, and grandson of Anchises and the goddess Venus. Julius Cæsar belonged to this family.

P. 428, l. 15.—**Velian hill.** Part of the Palatine hill in Rome.

P. 429, l. 14.—**Consular.** All Roman citizens who had held the

position of consul were so termed. Valerius had been consul 9 years before the battle.

P. 429, l. 16.—**Caius Cossus.** A member of the Cornelian family.

P. 430, l. 1.—**Battle.** Division of the army.

P. 430, l. 13.—**Crest of flame.** See page 429, line 23, above.

P. 430, l. 20.—**Aufidus to Po.** Aufidus is a small river on the east coast of Italy, near the south, while the Po is in the north. The meaning is from north to south of Italy, or from one end of Italy to the other.

P. 431, l. 1.—**Mortal fray.** A contest, the issue of which would be death.

P. 431, l. 12.—**Southern mountains.** The Alban hills.

P. 432, l. 9.—**Furies.** Goddesses known under the various names of Erinnys, Eumenides, Furies, etc. They were the ministers of the vengeance of the gods. They were of frightful aspect, having serpents instead of hair; in one hand they carried a torch, and in the other a whip of scorpions. They are here represented as haunting Sextus to punish him for his crime.

P. 432, l. 14.—**Capuan hill.** Capua was the chief city of Campania and one of the richest and most luxurious cities in Italy. It was long the rival of Rome.

P. 432, l. 22.—**Princely pair.** Castor and Pollux.

P. 433, l. 6.—**Samothracia.** An island in the Ægean sea, about 32 miles from the coast of Thrace. The inhabitants were noted for their piety.

Cyrene. A very ancient and wealthy city of Lybia, in the north of Africa.

P. 433, l. 7.—**Tarentum.** A very wealthy and pleasure-loving city in Southern Italy, originally founded by the Greeks. It was subdued by the Romans about 2:0 B.C.

P. 433, l. 8.—**Syracuse.** A very powerful city of Sicily, situated on the sea-coast. It was one of the most important cities of the ancient world. **Portal towers.** The gateways of the temple.

P. 433, l. 9.—**Eurotas.** The river on which Lacedæmon was situated. See page 422, line 16 above.

P. 433, l. 14.—**Ardea.** A Latin city, about 24 miles from Rome.

P. 433, l. 16.—**Hearth of Vesta.** See Book IV., page 362, line 2.

Golden shield. See Book IV., page 360.

P. 433, l. 25.—**Long battle.** Wide-spread forces.

P. 433, l. 27.—**Celtic plain.** The basin of the Po, Gallia Cisalpina, or Gaul on this side of the Alps.

P. 434, l. 1.—**Adrian main.** The Adriatic sea.

P. 434, l. 2.—**Sire Quirinus.** Romulus, the founder of Rome, was snatched away to Heaven in a thunderbolt, by his father, the god Mars. Shortly afterwards he appeared in a vision to one of the Senators, and gave instructions that divine honors should be paid to him under the title of Quirinus. This was done, and Romulus was ranked among the 12 great gods of the Romans. He is called "sire," as the founder or father of Rome.

P. 434, l. 7.—**Lanuvium.** A town of Latium, on the Appian way, about 16 miles from Rome.

P. 434, l. 8.—**Nomentum.** A Latin town about 14 miles from Rome.

P. 434, l. 13.—**Anio's echoing banks.** Referring to the cascades on the river.

P. 434, l. 14.—**Arpinum.** A Latin town near Rome, famous as the birthplace of Marius and of Cicero.

P. 434, l. 15.—**Anxur.** A city sacred to Jupiter, which stood on a white cliff at the end of the Pomptine marsh.

P. 434, l. 25.—**The Twelve.** The twelve priests or Salii, who guarded the sacred shields.

P. 434, l. 26.—**High Pontiff.** Pontifex Maximus or chief priest among the Romans.

P. 434, l. 27.—**Etrurias' Colleges.** The Collegium was a body of priests to whom belonged the superintendence of all religious observances. The Etrurian priests were celebrated for their religious mysteries.

P. 435, l. 9.—**Asylum.** A place of refuge. When Romulus had founded Rome, finding it difficult to populate the city, he made it a City of Refuge for fugitives from justice and runaway slaves, and so secured a large population.

Hill-tops seven. Rome is built on seven hills: the Capitoline, the Palatine, the Aventine, the Caelian, the Esquiline, the Viminal and the Quirinal.

P. 435, l. 10.—**Burns for aye.** The sacred fire on the altar of Vesta.

P. 435, l. 19.—**Forum.** The open space enclosed by the Palatine, Capitoline and Quirinal hills. It was surrounded by the temples and public buildings of the city.

Laurel-boughs. The symbols of victory.

P. 426, l. 4.—**Dorians.** One of the great nations of Greece. Sparta, the centre of the Dorian power was the seat of the worship of Castor and Pollux or the Dioscuri, as they were called.

P. 426, l. 9.—**Sit-shining.** The electric light called St. Elmo's fire, was supposed to be an appearance of Castor and Pollux. It was considered a good omen to see this light.

P. 426, l. 11.—**Stately dome.** A magnificent temple to the Twin Brethren was erected on the spot occupied by the well, where they watered their horses. It stood on the south side of the Forum. Three columns remain standing at present.

PSALM XLVI.

This Psalm is printed from the revised version of the Old Testament, and the arrangement followed is that in *The Modern Reader's Bible*, edited by Moulton, (The Macmillan Co.).

Moulton says, "The form of XLVI. is a shout of refrain to which successive stanzas supply matter. The first refrain is parenthetic, the thought of the first stanza running over into the second. We have rocking mountains and swelling seas; in contrast, the quiet of a river, that embraces a city with God in its midst. Again, we have nations and kingdoms rising in a storm: a word from God and the very ground meets under their feet. The third stanza opens with a bold change of thought: Behold God as the destroyer: War is desolation, but Jehovah is the destroyer of war! As a climax, God speaks His own exultation over the nations."

PSALMS XLII. AND XLIII.

The text and arrangement here are similar to *Psalm* xlvi., on page 437 above.

Moulton says, "The poem is made up of three stanzas, with a refrain; the words of the refrain are unaltered, but with the movement of the poem its thought seems to change. The first stanza breathes unbroken despondency; we have trouble and longing, panting, thirsting, tears and taunts, with memories as a climax. With the opening of the second stanza the despondency deepens; when he would remember his God the Psalmist feels himself, as it were, thrust away to an un-

measurable distance, plunged deeper and deeper by some cataract as the echo of its fall goes down. Just in the centre of the poem there is a faint break in the despondency; we hear of songs in the night, reproaches to God who forgets the foe that is equally His own foe. From such reproach the third stanza rises to an appeal for judgment against the foes, who are then a nation opposed to God; the nascent hope has strengthened from songs in the night to the breaking out of light, and we regain the *leading* and pictured procession to the altar of God. The refrain can now be endued with a sense of pure hope."

LEAD, KINDLY LIGHT.

While travelling on the continent during the spring of 1833, Newman was attacked by a sudden illness which detained him for three weeks at Castro Giovanni. During this time he saw no one but the faithful servant who nursed him through his illness. By the end of May he was well enough, though weak in body and depressed in spirits, to go to Palermo. "Before starting from my Inn, I sat down on my bed and began to sob bitterly. My servant asked what ailed me. I could only answer, 'I have a work to do in England.' I was aching to get home, yet for want of a vessel I was kept at Palermo for three weeks. I began to visit the churches, and they calmed my impatience, though I did not attend any services. At last I got off in an orange boat bound for Marseilles. We were becalmed a whole week in the Straits of Bonifacio. Then it was that I wrote the lines *Lead Kindly Light*, which have since become well known."

THE POETICAL MEMORY GEMS.

BOOK III.

P. 31.—**If little labor, etc.** This couplet, complete in itself, and entitled *No Paine, No Gaine*, is taken from Vol. II. of the *Hesperides* of Robert Herrick.

P. 38.—**To me the world's, etc.** This quotation is the first stanza of a poem entitled *Poetry*, written by George P. Morris. The poem contains but two stanzas, of which the one here quoted is the first. The second stanza is as follows:

The flowers below, the stars above,
In all their bloom and brightness given,
Are, like the attributes of love,
The poetry of earth and heaven.
Thus Nature's volume, read aright,
Attunes the soul to ministrelsy,
Tinging life's clouds with rosy light,
And all the world with poetry.

P. 43.—**Tender handed, etc.** This quotation is taken from a poem by Aaron Hill, entitled, *Written on a Window in Scotland*. The stanza that follows in the original gives the application of the thought.

'Tis the same with common natures;
Use them kindly, they rebel;
But be rough as nutmeg graters,
And the rogues obey you well.

P. 107.—**Fancies, like wild flowers, etc.** This quotation is taken from a poem by Mrs. E. C. Kinney.

P. 118.—**So should we live, etc.** This six line stanza should be divided into two stanzas of three lines each. The poem from which it is taken is entitled *The Worth of Hours*, by Richard Monckton Milnes.

Lord Houghton. The poem, consisting of 11 three-line stanzas, may be found in *The Cambridge Book of Poetry*, (Crowell & Co.).

P. 123.—**But truth, etc.** This quatrain is taken from a poem by Charles Mackay, entitled *Eternal Justice*.

P. 178.—**If thou art worn, etc.** This quotation forms the last six lines of *Sunrise in the Hills*, by Longfellow. The whole poem contains 36 lines. It may be found in any edition of Longfellow's poems.

P. 252.—**Press on, etc.** This quatrain is taken from the poem entitled *Press On!* by Park Benjamin. The complete poem consists of 6 eight-line stanzas. Five of these stanzas are quoted in *The Cambridge Book of Poetry*, (Crowell & Co.).

BOOK IV.

P. 11.—**A kindly act, etc.** This quatrain, by John Boyle O'Reilly, is complete in itself. The title given to it in the collected edition of O'Reilly's poems is *Seed*.

P. 36.—**The purest treasure, etc.** This quotation is taken from the speech of Thomas Mowbray, Duke of Norfolk, in Act I., Scene I., of Shakespeare's Richard II.

P. 45.—**Teach me to feel, etc.** This quotation is the tenth stanza of *The Universal Prayer*, by Alexander Pope. The complete poem, which contains 13 stanzas, may be found in *Open Sesame*, (Ginn & Co.), Vol. III., page 81.

P. 52.—**He who has, etc.** This stanza, which in the original is a couplet, is a translation by Emerson from the Persian of Omar Khayyam. It stands by itself, without relation to any context. A somewhat similar sentiment is found in John Boyle O'Reilly's poem, *Distance*:

The world is large, when its weary leagues two loving hearts divide,
But the world is small when your enemy is loose on the other side.

P. 64.—**The world goes up, etc.** This quotation forms the first four lines of the first stanza of Charles Kingsley's *Dolcino to Margaret*. The complete poem consists of 2 six-line stanzas. It may be found in any edition of Kingsley's poems.

P. 66.—**Ye living flowers, etc.** This quotation forms lines 64 to 69 of Coleridge's *Hymn Before Sunrise in the Vale of Chamouni*.

The complete poem of 85 lines may be found in *Open Sesame*, (Ginn & Co.), Vol. III., page 119.

P. 120.—**Haste not, etc.** This quotation is the second stanza of Goethe's poem, *Haste Not, Rest Not!* The fourth stanza is given on page 2 of Book V. The complete poem consists of 4 stanzas, the first and third of which are as follows:

Without haste! without rest!
Bind the motto to thy breast;
Bear it with thee as a spell;
Storm or sunshine, guard it well!
Heed not flowers that round thee bloom,
Bear it onward to the tomb.

Rest not! Life is sweeping by,
Go and dare before you die;
Something mighty and sublime
Leave behind to conquer time!
Glorious 'tis to live for aye
When these forms have passed away.

P. 152.—**Some murmur, etc.** This quotation is the first stanza of a short poem by Archbishop Trench, entitled in some editions *Some Murmur when their Sky is Clear*, and in others *Different Minds*. The remaining stanza is as follows:

In palaces are hearts that ask,
In discontent and pride,
Why life is such a dreary task,
And all good things denied:
And hearts in poorest huts admire
How love has in their aid
(Love that not ever seems to tire)
Such rich provision made.

P. 156.—**Small service, etc.** This quatrain, complete in itself, is entitled *To a Child: Written in her Album*. The child referred to is Wordsworth's god-daughter, Rotha Quillinan.

P. 159.—**Life! we have been, etc.** This quotation is taken from Mrs. Barbauld's poem entitled *Life*. The complete poem contains 30 lines. A portion is quoted in Palgrave's *Golden Treasury of Songs and Lyrics*, (The Macmillan Co.).

P. 174.—**I remember, etc.** This quotation is the fourth stanza of the poem entitled *I Remember, I Remember.* The poem contains four stanzas. It is quoted in full in *Open Sesame*, Vol. I., page 82, and in *The Listening Child*, by Lucy W. Thacher, (The Macmillan Co.), page 202.

P. 242.—**Thanks to the human heart, etc.** This quotation forms the last four lines of Wordsworth's *Intimations of Immortality.* The lines here quoted contain the essence of Wordsworth's poetic creed. The complete poem of 203 lines is printed in *Open Sesame*, Vol. III., page 20.

P. 306.—**But pleasures, etc.** This quotation forms lines 59 to 62 of Burns' *Tam O'Shanter.* The remainder of the sentence is as follows:

> Or like the borealis race,
> That flit ere you can point their place;
> Or like the rainbow's lovely form
> Evanishing amid the storm.

P. 319.—**Darkness before, etc.** This quatrain, complete in itself, and entitled *Courage*, is taken from George Houghton's *Album Leaves.* Other quatrains from the same source may be found in *The Cambridge Book of Poetry*, (Crowell & Co.).

P. 329.—**The heights, etc.** This quotation is the tenth stanza of Longfellow's *The Ladder of St. Augustine.* The poem contains twelve [redacted]

BOOK V.

P. 2.—**Haste not, etc.** See Book IV., page 120.

P. 18.—**We live in deeds, etc.** This quotation, from Philip James Bailey's *Festus*, is put into the mouth of Festus in the dialogue with Lucifer, in the section entitled "Life." These lines are frequently quoted by themselves under the title, *The True Measure of Life.*

P. 183.—**We rise, etc.** This quotation is the third stanza of Josiah Gilbert Holland's poem, entitled *The Way to Heaven.* The complete poem of eight stanzas is given in *Open Sesame*, Vol. II., page 220.

P. 249.—**Good name, etc.** This quotation is taken from the speech of Iago in Vol. III., Scene 3, of Shakespeare's *Othello.*

P. 269.—**Come wealth or want, etc.** This quotation is the

ninth stanza of Thackerary's poem entitled *The End of the Play*. The complete poem of 11 stanzas is given in *Open Sesame*, Vol. III., [illegible]

P. 266.—**There is a tide, etc.** This quotation is taken from the speech of Brutus in Act IV., Scene 3, of Shakespeare's *Julius Cæsar*.

P. 270.—**My heart leaps up, etc.** This selection is a complete poem in itself. No title is given to it in the collected edition of Wordsworth's poems.

P. 279.—**Our birth, etc.** This quotation forms the first eight lines of the fifth strophe of Wordsworth's *Intimations of Immortality*. See Book IV., page 242. The remainder of the strophe is as follows:

Heaven lies about us in our infancy!
Shades of the prison-house begin to close
Upon the growing boy,
But he beholds the light and whence it flows,
He sees it in his joy;
The youth, who daily farther from the east
Must travel, still is nature's priest;
And by the vision splendid
Is on his way attended.
At length the man perceives it die away,
And fade into the light of common day.

This strophe may be compared with the second paragraph of the Prelude to the first part of *Sir Launfal*, Book V., page 228.

P. 290.—**What though in solemn silence, etc.** This quotation is the third and last stanza of Addison's hymn entitled *The Spacious Firmament on High*. The complete poem which originally appeared in No. 465 of *The Spectator*, is given in *Open Sesame*, Vol. I., page 117.

P. 295.—**Though the mills, etc.** This quotation, which should be printed as a couplet, is entitled *Retribution*, and stands by itself in a series of *Poetic Aphorisms* translated by Longfellow from the German of Friedrich von Logau.

P. 311.—**Beneath the rule, etc.** This quotation is from the speech of Cardinal Richelieu in Act II., Scene 2, of Bulwer Lytton's *Richelieu*.

P. 329.—**Truth crushed to earth, etc.** This quotation is the ninth stanza of Bryant's poem entitled *The Battlefield*. The complete poem, which may be found in any edition of Bryant's poems, contains 11 stanzas.

P. 354.—**Oh, may I join, etc.** This quotation forms the first paragraph of George Eliot's poem entitled *Oh May I Join the Choir Invisible.* The complete poem, 43 lines in all, is given in *Open Sesame*, Vol. III, page 1.

P. 357.—**Man is his own star, etc.** This quotation is taken from Fletcher's drama entitled *An Honest Man's Fortune.*

P. 369.—**It is not growing, etc.** This selection forms a complete poem in itself, and is entitled *The Noble Nature.*

BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCHES

OF

AUTHORS REPRESENTED IN THE VICTORIAN READERS.

The following books are recommended for use in connection with the study of the lives and literary merits of the authors represented in the *Victorian Readers*. The first three books mentioned are of special value to the teacher and the student.

Architects of English Literature, by R. Farquharson Sharp, (Sonnenschein), contains excellent biographical sketches of Shakespeare, Defoe, Pope, Johnson, Gray, Goldsmith, Cowper, Burns, Wordsworth, Scott, Coleridge, Byron, Shelley, Keats, Macaulay, Carlyle, Emerson, Longfellow, Thackeray, Dickens and Tennyson.

A Study of English and American Poets, by J. Scott Clarke, (Chas. Scribner's Sons), contains biographical sketches and critical estimates of Burns, Cowper, Keats, Shelley, Byron, Coleridge, Emerson, Bryant, Lowell, Longfellow, Browning, Whittier, Tennyson and Holmes.

A Study of English Prose Writers, by J. Scott Clarke, (Chas. Scribner's Sons), contains biographical sketches and critical estimates of Bunyan, Addison, Defoe, Johnson, Burke, Lamb, Scott, De Quincey, Macaulay, Thackeray, Newman, Carlyle, George Eliot, Dickens, Ruskin, Irving, Hawthorne, Emerson, Lowell and Holmes.

Famous English Authors of the Nineteenth Century, by Sarah K. Bolton, (Crowell & Co.), contains biographical sketches with portraits of Scott, Burns, Byron, Shelley, Carlyle, Tennyson, Dickens, Ruskin and Robert Browning.

Great Thinkers and Workers, by Robert Cochrane, (W. & R. Chambers), contains biographical sketches with portraits of Carlyle, Tennyson, Dickens, Thackeray, Ruskin, Kingsley and Browning.

Personal Sketches of Recent Authors, by Hattie T. Griswold, (A. C. McClurg & Co.) contains biographical sketches, with portraits, of Tennyson, E. B. Browning, Ruskin, Kipling, Thoreau and Bayard Taylor.

That Dome in Air by John Vance Cheney, (A. C. McClurg & Co.), contains critical essays on Emerson, Lowell, Whittier, Bryant, Longfellow, Cowper and Wordsworth.

Letters to Living Authors, by John A. Stewart, (Sampson Low), contains critical essays on Holmes, Ruskin, Lowell, Froude, Whittier, Andrew Lang and Mark Twain.

Poets of America, by Edmund Clarence Stedman (Houghton, Mifflin & Co.), contains critical studies of Bryant, Whittier, Emerson, Longfellow, Poe, Holmes, Lowell and Bayard Taylor.

Development of English Literature and Language, by A. H. Welsh, (S. C. Griggs & Co.).

A History of English Literature, by E. J. Mathew, (Macmillan Co.).

English Literature, by Stopford A. Brooke, (The Copp Clark Co.).

Addison, Joseph, was born at Milston, Wiltshire, May 1, 1672. He was educated at the Charter House and at Queen's and Magdalen Colleges, Oxford. In 1693 he gained the degree of Master of Arts, and from 1699 to 1711, held a fellowship at his college. His friends destined him for the Church, but after meeting with Halifax, he determined to enter political life. In 1699, a pension of £300 was granted to him, and he set out on his travels through France and Italy. On the fall of the Whigs in 1702, Addison lost his pension, and was obliged to return soon after to England. His poem on the battle of Blenheim, entitled, *The Campaign*, restored him to favor and secured for him an appointment in the government service. From this time he took an active interest in politics, filling various high offices, including Chief Secretary for Ireland and Secretary of State. In 1709 Steele began the publication of the *Tatler*, followed soon after by the *Spectator*. To these papers Addison contributed some of his best work; indeed three-sevenths of the *Spectator* was written by him. In 1713, his celebrated tragedy *Cato*, was produced. In 1716, he married the Countess of Warwick. In 1718, owing to ill-health, he retired from the public service, with a pension of £1,500. He died June 17, 1719, and was buried in Westminster Abbey. Addison is perhaps best known by his *Sir Roger de Coverley* papers, contributed to the *Spectator*. Green says: "His style, with its free, unaffected movement, its clear distinctness, its graceful transitions, its delicate harmonies, its appropriateness of tone; the temperance and moderation of his treatment, the effortless self-mastery, the sense of quiet power, the absence of exaggeration or extravagance, the perfect keeping with which he

deals with his subjects; or again, the exquisite reserve, the subtle tenderness, the geniality, the pathos of his humor—what are these but the reflection of Addison himself, of that temper, so pure and lofty, yet so sympathetic, so strong yet so lovable." See *Addison*, by W. J. Courthope, in *English Men of Letters*, (Macmillan & Co.).

Andersen, Hans Christian, was born at Odense, in the island of Fünen, April 2, 1805. His father, although a poor shoemaker, belonged to a once wealthy family, and consoled himself in his poverty by relating to his children tales of former grandeur. The child's youthful imagination was also stirred by the reading of La Fontaine's *Fables*, *The Arabian Nights* and Shakespeare. The father died when Hans was nine years old, leaving the family in very poor circumstances. On the advice of a fortune-teller, the mother resolved to send Hans to Copenhagen, where he endeavored to get work in the theatre, but was refused, owing to his small, thin appearance. He then tried singing for a time, but his voice failed. Fortunately the boy's undoubted talent attracted the attention of some powerful friends, who placed him in the University, where he was educated at the public expense, and afterwards procured for him a money grant from the king. In 1830 he published a volume of poems, and in 1833 went on an extensive tour through France, Germany and Italy. This was the beginning of a long series of travels undertaken by Andersen during his middle period. In 1835 appeared the first collection of his *Wonder Tales*, the books that have given him fame as "the Children's Friend." In addition to these he wrote many volumes of travels, dramas and miscellaneous poems. His last tales were written in 1872. In that year he met with an accident at Innsbruck, from which he never recovered. He died at Copenhagen, August 1, 1875. Wells says, "The starting point of his art is personification. To the child's fancy the doll is as much alive as the cat, the broom as the bird, and even the letters in the copy book can stretch themselves. On this foundation he builds myths that tease by a certain semblance of rationality—elegiac, more often sentimental, but at their best, like normal children, without strained pathos or forced sympathy." See *Life of Hans Christian Andersen*, by R. Nisbet Bain.

Alexander, Cecil Frances, was born in the county of Wicklow, Ireland, in 1818. She married the Rev. William Alexander, afterwards Bishop of Derry. Her life was spent chiefly in connection with religious and philanthropical works. She died at Londonderry, Octo-

ber 12, 1895. Her best known works are *Moral Songs*, *Hymns for Children* and *Poems on Old Testament Subjects*.

Argyll, John Douglas Campbell, Duke of, better known as the Marquis of Lorne, was born at London, August 6, 1845. He was educated at Eton and Cambridge. From 1868 to 1878 he represented Argyllshire in the House of Commons. In 1871, he was married to the Princess Louise, daughter of the late Queen Victoria. From 1878 to 1883 he was Governor-General of Canada. From 1895 to 1900 he was member of Parliament for South Manchester. In the latter year he succeeded his father as Duke of Argyll. He has written *Life of Palmerston*, *Psalms in English Verse* and *Canadian Pictures*. At present he is engaged in writing the official life of Queen Victoria.

Audubon, John James, was born at New Orleans, at that time the centre of the French colony of Louisiana, May 4, 1780. From his very earliest years he was interested in watching the habits and appearance of the birds he saw from day to day. At the age of 15 he was sent to Paris where he remained about two years, devoting a part of his time to art studies. On his return to America his father purchased for him a plantation in Pennsylvania, where he settled and soon afterwards married. He now began a series of expeditions into the wilds of the American forest, for the purpose of studying the birds. These excursions continued at intervals for about 15 years, until at last he set out for Philadelphia with about 200 plates, all drawn by himself from personal observation. Being compelled to leave Philadelphia for a few weeks, he deposited the sheets in a warehouse. When he returned he found that the ants had eaten the entire contents of his portfolio. The shock of this disaster threw him into a fever, from which he had no sooner recovered than he plunged into the woods again, and in three years had made good his loss. In 1826, he went to England, where he was received with the greatest kindness, and encouraged to bring out his work. *The Birds of America* was published in four large folio volumes, consisting of 435 colored plates, at a cost of $1,000 per copy to each subscriber. The letter-press to this monumental work appeared between 18[illegible] and 1839, in five volumes, entitled *The American Ornithological Biography*. During the years of publication of these two works, Audubon frequently visited the United States, and in 1839 returned to his native country to remain. The rest of his life was spent in further exploration, and in the preparation and publication of his *Biography of American Quad-*

rapede. He died at New York, January 27, 1851. See *John James Audubon*, by John Burroughs in the *Beacon Biographies*, (Small, Maynard & Co.), and *The Life of John James Audubon*, edited by his widow, (G. P. Putnam's Sons).

Aytoun, William Edmonstone, was born at Edinburgh, June 21, 1813. His early taste for ballad literature was implanted by his mother. He was educated at Edinburgh University, studied law, and was called to the bar in 1840. At the age of 17 he had published a volume entitled *Poland, Homer and Other Poems*. In 1841, together with Theodore Martin, he wrote the *Bon Gaultier Ballads*. In 1845 he became Professor of Rhetoric in his own University. In 1848 he published his *Lays of the Scottish Cavaliers*, his most successful work, and in the next year married a daughter of Christopher North. In 1852, he was appointed Sheriff of Orkney, but the duties attached to his position did not interfere seriously with his literary work. In 1854, *Firmilian*, a dramatic poem, his most brilliant work, appeared. He died at Blackhills, August 4, 1865. Other well-known works are *Ballads of Scotland*, *Norman Sinclair* and *Bothwell*.

Bailey, Philip James, was born at Nottingham, April 22, 1816. He was educated at the schools of his native town, and at Glasgow University. In 1840, he was called to the bar, but did not practise. In 1839, he published *Festus*, a poem of 25,000 lines, founded upon the Faust legend. This poem, on its appearance, created an extraordinary outburst of enthusiasm, and has since passed through eleven editions in England, and over thirty in America. Nothing that the author has written since has added to his reputation. Other works are *The Angel World*, *The Age of Satire* and *The Universal Hymn*. Bailey resides at present at Nottingham, See *Notes on Men, Women and Books*, by Lady Wilde, (Ward & Downey).

Barbauld, Anna Letitia, was born at Kibworth, Leicestershire, in 1743. At the age of 15 she removed with her parents to Warrington, where her father, Dr. John Aikin, had been appointed one of the masters in a small academy. She was an extraordinarily precocious child. She could read with ease at the age of three, and even as a child she had a scholarly acquaintance with French, German, Latin and Greek. In 1773, her first volume of poems appeared. In 1774, she married the Rev. Rochemont Barbauld, and removed with him to Palgrave, in Suffolk, where they established a school for boys. The school proved very successful, but owing to the state of Mr. Barbauld's

health, had to be given up in 1785. In 1802, after a year spent in travel and a short residence at Hampstead, they removed to Stoke Newington, where Mrs. Barbauld spent the remainder of her days. In 1808, her husband died, hopelessly insane. She died at Stoke Newington in 1825. Her best known works are *Hymns in Prose and Devotional Pieces*, *Early Lessons for Children*, and *Eighteen Hundred and Eleven*. See *Women Writers*, by Catherine J. Hamilton, (Ward, Locke & Co.).

Bates, David, was born at Philadelphia in 1810, and died at that city, January 25, 1870. In 1848, he published a volume of poems entitled *The Eolian*. A collected edition of his works, edited by his son, was published in 1870. His best known poem is *Speak Gently*, about the authorship of which a violent controversy raged for some time.

Benjamin, Park, was born at Demarara, British Guiana, August 14, 1809. At an early age he was sent to the United States for the purpose of receiving medical treatment, and to be educated. He spent two years at Harvard, and then went to Trinity. He graduated in 1829, and immediately began to study law. He was called to the bar at Boston in 1832, but soon entered upon journalism. In 1837, he removed to New York, where he became editor of *The American Monthly Magazine*. He was editor of various literary periodicals, including *The New York World*. He died at New York, September 12, 1864. His best known works are *Infatuation*, *The Nautilus* and *The Old* [redacted]

Bjornson, Bjornstjerne, was born in a lonely parsonage in north-western Norway, December 8, 1832. He received his early education at Molde, and in 1852 entered the University of Christiana, but did not complete his course. He worked as a journalist in Christiana, and then, from 1857 to 1859 had charge of the theatre at Bergen. For the next two years he resided abroad, but spent the following ten years in Norway engaged in theatrical and newspaper work. In 1880-81, he visited America on a lecturing tour. Since 1882 he has spent his winters abroad, but passes his summers on his farm, Aulestad, in the centre of Norway. His best known works are *Arne*, *The Fisher Lass*, *The Heritage of the Kurts*, and *The Bridal March*.

Brown, John, M.D., was born at Biggar, Scotland, September 22, 1810. He was educated at a private school and at the University of Edinburgh. He studied medicine, and in 1833 began the practice of

his profession. He found time amidst the busy life of a successful city practitioner to contribute to various magazines on subjects ranging from the animals he loved to the most abstruse philosophical speculations. These were collected and published in three volumes, under the title *Horæ Subsecivæ*, (*Spare Hours*). In 1876 he had a pension of £100 allotted to him from the Civil List. He died May 11, 1882.

Browning, Elizabeth Barrett, was born at Coxhoe Hall, Durham, March 6, 1806. She was a very bright child, full of animal spirits and very fond of out-door life. At the age of 8 she read Homer with ease, and at the age of 11 published an epic in four books, entitled *The Battle of Marathon*. At the age of 15, while trying to saddle her pony alone in a field, she fell, and so injured her spine that she was obliged to spend several years lying on her back. When she was 20 years of age her father sustained a severe financial loss, and the family were compelled to leave their beautiful home. They finally settled in London, where Elizabeth continued delicate, being obliged to remain in her own room sometimes for months at a time. At the age of 26, she published *Prometheus and Other Poems*. In 1846 she was introduced to Robert Browning, and was secretly married to him in the same year. The fifteen years of their married life were spent in Italy. She died at Florence, June 30, 1861. Her chief works are *Aurora Leigh*, *Sonnets from the Portuguese*, and *Lady Geraldine's Courtship*. See *Twelve English Authoresses*, by L. B. Walford, (Longmans, Green & Co.), and *A Study of Elizabeth Barrett Browning*, by Lilian Whiting, (Little, Brown & Co.).

Browning, Robert, was born at Camberwell, a suburb of London, May 7, 1812. His father, who was a clerk in the Bank of England, was a very scholarly man, and an enthusiastic book collector. The boy was brought up among books, being educated at home under the supervision of his father. After a time a private tutor was employed, and the boy was sent to travel in Italy. He knew nothing of public school or of university life, with the exception of two terms spent at the University of London, in the study of Greek. His ultimate study was the human soul, about which he says, "little else is worth study." In 1835, *Paracelsus* was published; this poem strikes the key-note of his subsequent thought. In 1846, he married Elizabeth Barrett, and until her death in 1861, the two poets resided in Italy. After the death of his wife, Browning lived in London, but paid an annual visit to the continent. He died at Venice, December 12, 1889, and was

buried in Westminster Abbey. Browning's poetry did not at once meet with that recognition which its merit deserved, indeed, it was not until the establishment of the Browning Society of London in 1881, that any public appreciation was shown. Since then his fame has continued to increase, and he has at last taken his rightful place among the great poets of England. His favorite form of verse was the dramatic monologue, a form in which the greater portion of this poetry is written. His chief works are *The Ring and the Book*, *Pippa Passes*, *Paracelsus*, *Luria*, *Ferishtah's Fancies*, *Saul*, and a large number of *Dramatic Monologues*. See *Robert Browning*, by Arthur Waugh in the *Westminster Biographies*, (Small, Maynard & Co.).

Bryant, William Cullen, was born at Cummington, Mass., November 3, 1794. He entered Williams College in 1810, studied law, and was called to the bar in 1815. He practised his profession successfully for ten years at Plainfield and at Great Barrington. In 1825 he married and removed to New York. In 1826 he became editor of the *Evening Post*, a position he continued to fill until his death. A collection of his poems was published in 1832. He made several visits to Europe, and published his impressions in *Letters of a Traveller*, a very successful work. He died at New York, June 12, 1878. Bryant was a very precocious writer, his first poems having been published before he was ten years of age. His principal works are *Orations and Addresses*, translations of the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey*, and a large number of miscellaneous poems. Christopher North says, "The chief charm of Bryant's genius consists in a tender pensiveness, a moral melancholy, breathing over all his contemplations, dreams and reveries, even such as in the main are glad, and giving assurance of a pure spirit, benevolent to all human creatures, and habitually pious in the felt omnipresence of the Creator. His poetry overflows with natural religion—with what Wordsworth calls 'the religion of the woods.'" See *William Cullen Bryant*, by John Bigelow in *American Men of Letters*, (Houghton, Mifflin & Co.).

Bunyan, John, was born near Bedford, England, in November, 1628. He first learned the trade of a tinker, then became a soldier in the Parliamentary army during the Civil war. He was married at the age of 20. After passing through several changes of religious opinions he finally joined the Baptists in 1653. He returned to Bedford in 1655, and two years later was recognized as a preacher, but continued at his trade. In 1660 he was put in prison for illegal preaching, and was kept

there until 1672. In 1675, he was again imprisoned. During this second imprisonment, he wrote *The Pilgrim's Progress*, published in 1678. The second part appeared in 1684. He continued to preach in the vicinity of Bedford, often at the risk of his life. In 1688 he caught a fever, when on a visit to London for the purpose of reconciling a father and son, and died there August 31. His other works are *The Holy War* and *Grace Abounding to the Chief of Sinners*, an own spiritual autobiography. See *John Bunyan*, by J. A. Froude in *English Men of Letters*, (The Macmillan Co.).

Burke, Edmund, was born at Dublin, January 12, 1729. He was educated privately, and afterwards at Trinity College, Dublin, where he devoted himself to the study of history, philosophy and the classics. After studying law in the Middle Temple, London, in 1751 he returned to live in Ireland. During the next few years he was engaged in literary work of various kinds. In 1759 he entered political life. A pension of £300 was conferred upon him, but finding that this interfered with his political independence, he gave it up. He was first elected to Parliament in 1765. In 1771 he was appointed agent of the Colony of New York. A short time afterwards he was offered the position of supervisor of the affairs of the East India Company, but declined the offer. In November, 1774, he made his famous speech on American Taxation. In 1782, he took office under the Marquis of Rockingham, but resigned in the same year. In 1783 he again assumed office. He continued to take an active part in politics until almost the close of his life. One of the most brilliant episodes in his career was his connection with the impeachment of Warren Hastings. He was again stirred to vigorous action by the outbreak of the French Revolution, but on this question he found himself opposed to the greater number of his countrymen. In 1794 he retired from Parliament and was granted a pension of £2,500. The King wished to confer upon him the title of Earl of Beaconsfield, but Burke, broken by the death of his only son, refused to accept the honor. He died July 8, 1797, and was buried in the little church at Beaconsfield. His chief works in addition to his speeches in the impeachment of Hastings are *A Vindication of Natural Society*, *Reflections on the Revolution in France*, *Letters on a Regicide Peace*, and *Letter to a Noble Lord*. See *Burke*, by John Morley in *English Men of Letters*, (Macmillan & Co.).

Burns, Robert, the son of a Scotch peasant farmer, was born near Ayr, January 25, 1759. His early life was one of toil and hardship;

at the age of 15 he was doing the work of an able-bodied man. This constant work, as well as poverty, prevented his attendance at school, so that he grew up to manhood comparatively ignorant of books, but knowing the life of the Scottish peasant through and through. At the age of 16 he had begun to write poetry, and had continued at intervals until 1786, when he had accumulated enough for a volume. At this time he had become hopelessly discouraged with farm life, and had resolved to emigrate to America. Fortunately, his publication venture turned out successfully, and Burns abandoned all thought of leaving his native land. He was invited to Edinburgh, where he was treated with distinguished courtesy by the men of letters there gathered. Shortly after the appearance of his second volume in 1787, he bought a farm near Dumfries, and married Jean Armour. In 1789 he obtained the position of excise officer. His last days were embittered by poverty and various distresses. He died July 21, 1796. His most important works, besides a multitude of songs, are *The Cotter's Saturday Night* and *Tam O'Shanter*. See *Burns*, by J. C. Shairp in *English Men of Letters*, (Macmillan & Co.).

Butler, Sir William Francis, was born at Tipperary, Ireland, in 1837, and educated at Dublin. He entered the 69th Regiment as an ensign in 1858, but did not see active service until 1870, when he joined the Red River Expedition under Sir Garnet Wolseley. After the capture of Fort Garry, Butler was sent as a special commissioner to the Indians of the Saskatchewan, a mission which he successfully accomplished. He now served in the Ashantee war, the Zulu war, and in the Egyptian wars of 1882 and 1884-5, distinguishing himself in all and rapidly winning promotion. From 1890 to 1893, he commanded the troops at Alexandria, from 1893 to 1898 he was in command of the South Eastern District, and in 1898 was sent to South Africa. On the outbreak of the Boer war, he was recalled and placed in charge of the Western District. Since 1900 he has been in command at Aldershot. In 1877 he married Elizabeth Thompson, the painter; in 1887 he was knighted, and in 1900 raised to the rank of Lieutenant-General. His best known works are *The Great Lone Land*, *The Wild North Land*, *Red Cloud, the Solitary Sioux*, and *Charles George Gordon*. See *Our Living Generals*, by Arthur Temple, (Melrose, London).

Byron, George Gordon Noel, was born at London, January 22, 1788. His father was a somewhat dissipated man, who first spent his wife's fortune and then deserted her. In 1790, Mrs. Byron took her

son with her to reside in Aberdeen. Here he lived, receiving his education at the grammar school, until he was ten years old, when he succeeded to the title and estates of his great-uncle, Lord Byron. The boy was then sent to a private school and afterwards to Harrow. In 1805 he went to Cambridge, but left without taking his degree. While at the University he published *Hours of Idleness*. The savage attack on this volume by Jeffrey in the *Edinburgh Review* irritated Byron, who replied in the biting satire, *English Bards and Scotch Reviewers*. In 1809, he set out on his travels, and was absent two years. On his return he published the first two cantos of *Childe Harold's Pilgrimage*. The poem was received with enthusiastic favor. In 1815, he married Miss Anne Millbanks, but soon after a separation was agreed upon. Byron quitted England in disgust at the unreasoning blame attached to him in connection with his domestic troubles. The next two years were spent wandering over Europe. In 1723, he became interested in the Greek fights for freedom, and went to that country, taking with him men and money to assist the patriots. In the midst of his heroic struggles, he contracted a fever and died at Missolonghi, April 19, 1824. His body was brought to England and buried at Newstead Abbey. His most important works, in addition to those already mentioned, are *The Corsair*, *the Gaiour*, *Lara*, *The Prisoner of Chillon*, *Manfred*, *Cain* and *Don Juan*. See *Byron* by John Nichol in *English Men of Letters*, (Macmillan & Co.).

Campbell, Thomas, was born at Glasgow, July 27, 1877. He was educated at the grammar school and at the University of Glasgow, which he entered at the age of 13. During his course he was obliged to support himself by private tuition. In 1797 he went to Edinburgh, where he at once engaged in literary work. In 1799 he published *The Pleasures of Hope*. In 1800 he spent some time upon the continent, a visit which resulted in some of his finest lyrics. In 1805 he married, and was soon in the direst distress. He was very improvident and was continually in difficulties. A pension of £200 a year, however, relieved him for a time. In 1809 *Gertrude of Wyoming* was published. In 1826, he was elected Lord Rector of Glasgow University. He became interested in the Poles, and spent a number of his best years in advancing their cause. He died at Boulogne, June 15, 1844, and was buried in Westminster Abbey. Other well known poems are *Theodoric*, *O'Connor's Child*, *Lochiel's Warning* and *The Last Man*. See *Literary Celebrities*, (W. & R. Chambers).

Campbell, William Wilfrid, was born at Berlin, Ontario, June 1, 1861. He was educated at the University of Toronto and at Harvard. In 1885 he entered the ministry of the Church of England, and took charge of a parish in the New England States. In 1888 he became rector of St. Stephens, N.B. In 1891, he retired from the ministry, and entered the Civil Service at Ottawa, where he still resides. He began to write at a very early age, and has contributed to various magazines. His principal works are *Lake Lyrics and Other Poems, Modred, Hildebrand* and *The Dread Voyage.*

Carey, Henry, is said to have been the son of the Marquis of Halifax. The date of his birth is unknown, but at the time of the publication of his first volume of poems in 1713, according to his own statement he was very young. Very few facts in regard to his life have been ascertained. He is known to have taught music in various boarding schools, to have been connected with the theatres in the writing of burlesques and occasional pieces, and is said to have put an end to his own life, October 4, 1743. His wife and four children survived him. He is credited with the production of over two hundred works. His best known poem is *Sally in our Alley.* He is also generally admitted to have been the author of *God Save the King.*

Carlyle, Thomas, was born at Ecclefechan, Scotland, December 4, 1795. His father was a Scottish peasant, a stone mason by trade. He was educated at Annan school and at Edinburgh University. In 1814, he became mathematical master at Annan and afterwards at Kirckaldy. In 1821 he was appointed tutor to Charles Buller, and his brother, and remained in this position for some time. About 1820 he had begun to contribute to various magazines. In 1823-24 his *Life of Schiller* appeared in the *London Magazine.* This was followed by various translations from and works based upon the German. In 1826 he married Jane Welsh, and after a short residence in Edinburgh removed to a solitary dwelling at Craigenputtock, in Dumfriesshire. In 1833 *Sartor Resartus* began to appear in *Fraser's Magazine.* In 1834, he removed to Chelsea, a suburb of London, where at No. 24 Cheyne Row, he resided for the rest of his life. His great books now followed one another rapidly. The best of these are *The French Revolution, Heroes and Hero Worship, Cromwell's Letters and Speeches, History of Frederick the Great,* and *Past and Present.* In 1866, while he was absent at Edinburgh delivering his inaugural address as Lord Rector of the University, his wife was found dead in her carriage in the streets of

London. He never recovered from the blow. He died February 4, 1881, and was buried in the little churchyard at Ecclefechan. See *Carlyle*, by John Nichol in *English Men of Letters*, (Macmillan & Co.), and *Thomas Carlyle*, by A. H. Guernsey, (D. Appleton & Co.).

Cicero, Marcus Tullius, was born at Arpinum, January 3, 106 B.C. He received a thorough education, especially in the Greek language and literature. After serving for a year in the army he began the practice of law. He took a great interest in politics, soon becoming one of the foremost orators and statesmen of Rome. He passed through the minor offices and was elected Consul for 63 B.C. During his consulship he defeated the celebrated conspiracy of Catiline. In 58, he was banished from Rome through the influence of a combination of his enemies, but in the next year returned in triumph. During the remainder of his life Cicero was mixed up in the affairs of Caesar and Pompey, Antony and Octavius, and did not seem to know what course to pursue. He was proscribed by order of the second Triumvirate, and assassinated December 7, 43 B.C. His works consist principally of orations, both legal and political.

Clark, S. H., was born at New York in 1861. He taught for five years at Queen's University, Kingston, Trinity College, Toronto, and McMaster University, Toronto. In 1892 he removed to Chicago, where he became head of the department of Public Speaking at the University there. He has published *How to Read Alone*, *How to Teach Reading in the Public Schools*, *Mental Technique*, *Practical Public Speaking*, and *Principles of Literary Interpretation and Vocal Expression*.

Clough, Arthur Hugh, was born at Liverpool, January 1, 1819. In 1823, he [illegible] with his family to Charleston, S.C., where he resided until 1828, when he returned to England. He was educated at Rugby, and afterwards at Oxford, where in 1842 he was chosen fellow of Oriel, and in the next year tutor in the same college. In 1848, he resigned his fellowship on account of religious scruples, and was appointed Principal of University Hall, London. In 1852, he resigned his position, and resolved to make his home in America. He resided for some time in the vicinity of Boston, enjoying the friendship of Longfellow, Lowell and the Cambridge group. In 1853, he returned to England, having been appointed examiner in the Education office. He died at Florence, November 13, 1861. His best known works are *The Bothie of Tober-na-Vouich*, *Dipsychus*, *Amours*

de Voyage, and a large number of shorter poems. See the *Memoir* prefaced to the *Poems of Arthur Hugh Clough*, (Crowell & Co.), and *Literary Essays*, by R. H. Hutton, (The Macmillan Co.).

Coleridge, Samuel Taylor, was born at Ottery St. Mary, in Devonshire, October 21, 1772. In 1791 he entered Cambridge, but two years later, in consequence of an unfortunate love affair, left without taking his degree. He enlisted and served some time in the Dragoons, but his friends procured his discharge. In 1794 he resolved to emigrate to America, and assist in forming an ideal republic there, but the project failed. His first volume of poems was published in 1796. From this time Coleridge was engaged in literary work, principally theology, metaphysics, poetry and criticism. In 1798, he joined with Wordsworth in the publication of the *Lyrical Ballads*. All his best poetical work was done before 1800. During an illness he contracted the opium habit, which sadly weakened his powers of work, and interfered with his literary success. He died at London, July 25, 1834. His best known works are his *Biographia Literaria* and the *Aids to Reflection*, while among his poems, *The Ancient Mariner*, *Christabel*, and *Kubla Khan*, are probably the best. See *Coleridge*, by H. D. Traill in *English Men of Letters*, (Macmillan & Co.), and *The Golden Book of Coleridge*, edited by Stopford A. Brooke, (J. M. Dent & Co.).

Cook, Eliza, was born at Southwark in 1818. She began writing at a very early age, and contributed to *The New Monthly Magazine* and other periodicals. In 1840 she published a volume of poems. From 1849 to 1854 she published *Eliza Cook's Journal*, but was in the latter year obliged, owing to ill-health, to discontinue its publication. In 1864 she published *New Echoes and Other Poems*. In the same year she was granted a pension of £100 from the Civil List. She died at Wimbleton, September 23, 1889. In addition to the poems mentioned the published *Melaia and Other Poems*.

Coolidge, Susan B., is the pen-name of Sarah Chauncey Woolsey, who was born at Cleveland, Ohio, about 1845. She lived for a number of years at Newhaven and afterwards at Newport, R.I. She has published *What Katy Did*, *A Guernsey Lily*, *A Little Country Girl* and several volumes of *Verses*.

Cooper, James Fenimore, was born at Burlington, N.J., September 15, 1789. He was educated at Albany, and entered Yale in his thirteenth year, the youngest student on the roll. In 1808 he entered the United States navy, but resigned his commission in 1811

and married Susan de Lancy. His first book was published in 1819. In 1826 he took up his residence in Paris, but returned to the United States in 1833. The remainder of his life was spent in political controversy and in the production of his novels. He died at Cooperstown, N.Y., September 14, 1851. His best known works are *The Last of the Mohicians*, *The Spy*, *The Prairie* and *The Water Witch*. See *James Fenimore Cooper* by W. B. S. Clymer in the *Beacon Biographies*, (Small, Maynard & Co.).

Cornwall, Barry, is the pen-name of Bryan Waller Procter, who was born at London, November 21, 1787. He was educated at Harrow and studied law, but did not attain to any eminence in his profession. His appointment as a Commissioner of Lunacy gave him leisure to continue his literary studies. He died October 5, 1874. His best works are *English Songs* and *Essays and Tales in Prose*. See *Memoirs of Bryan Waller Procter* by Himself, (Roberts Bros.).

Cowper, William, was born at Great Berkhampstead, England, November 15, 1731. His mother died when he was about 6 years old. The boy was of a shy retiring disposition which was not cured by his attendance at Westminster School. He was called to the bar in 1754, but did not practise. He received a Government appointment, but being called upon to appear at the bar of the House of Lords to undergo examination as to his fitness, he was so overcome with nervous horror that he attempted suicide. He was taken to a private asylum, where he remained until restored. He then took up his residence at Huntingdon, where he came under the influence of the new Evangelism, and met the Unwins. In 1767 he removed with Mrs. Unwin to Olney. Here he remained until his death, cheered by the society of a few faithful friends, including Mrs. Unwin, Lady Hesketh and Lady Austen. He was subject to partial fits of insanity, but on the whole happy and contented. The last few years of his life were spent in the gloom of insanity. He died April 25, 1800. His principal works are *Table Talk*, *John Gilpin*, *The Task*, a translation of *Homer* and the *Olney Hymns*. See *Cowper*, by Goldwin Smith in *English Men of Letters*, (Macmillan & Co.).

Craigmyle, Elizabeth, is a Scottish poetess and translator. She resides at present at Aberdeen. Her best known work is *German Ballads*, a series of ballads translated from the German.

Crompton, Sarah, is an English authoress who has written a number of books for children. The best known are *The Life of*

Christopher Columbus in Short Words, a Scholar's Book of Beasts and Tales of Life in Earnest.

Darnell, Henry Faulkner, was born at London in 1831. He was educated at Trinity College, Dublin, and at Queen's College, Cambridge. After spending two years in teaching, he was ordained as a clergyman of the Church of England in 1857. In 1860 he came to Quebec, where he was assistant in one of the city churches. Subsequently he was Principal of Hellmuth Ladies' College and Dufferin College, London, Ont. In 1874 he removed to the United States, and in 1883 settled in Avon, New York, where he still resides. He has contributed to various American and English Magazines. His best known works are *Songs of the Seasons, A Four-Leaved Clover, The Cross Roads* and *Songs by the Way.*

Dasent, George Webbe, was born at St. Vincent, W.I., in 1820. He was educated at Oxford, called to the bar in 1852, and appointed Civil Service Commissioner in 1870. He was for some time assistant-editor of the London *Times*, and in 1871 editor of *Fraser's Magazine.* He died June 11, 1896. His best known works are *Popular Tales from the Norse*, and *Tales from the Fjeld.*

De Foe, Daniel, was born at London in 1661. He was the son of a non-conformist butcher, and was educated at the dissenting academy at Stoke Newington. He was intended for the Church, but preferred a mercantile life. He is said to have taken part in Monmouth's rebellion, but of this there is no proof. He was an active supporter of William, in his struggle with James, and was on terms of intimacy with the king. In 1692 he failed in business with liabilities of £17,000. After this he was mixed up in the politics of his time, having a positive genius for political controversy and intrigue. On one occasion he was punished with the pillory, imprisonment and a heavy fine. He was one of the Commissioners appointed to bring about the union between England and Scotland. He died April 26, 1731. His most popular book is *Robinson Crusoe.* Other works are *The History of the Plague of 1665, Memoirs of a Cavalier, Moll Flanders*, and *Roxana.* See *Daniel De Foe*, by Wilfred Whitten in *The Westminster Biographies*, (Small, Maynard & Co.).

De Lisle, Rouget, was born in 1760. He was a soldier and served throughout the Revolutionary struggle. He was imprisoned during the Reign of Terror, and was wounded at Quiberon in 1795. He died near Paris in 1836. He produced nothing of great importance other than his famous revolutionary hymn.

De Quincey, Thomas, was born at Manchester, August 15, 1785. His father died a few days later, and the boy was left to the care of his mother and sisters. He was educated at the grammar school at Bath where he learned to speak Greek as his native tongue. He was then sent to the Manchester Grammar School from which he ran away. He spent some time wandering in Wales, and was finally found by his friends in London, where he had lived for some months in extreme poverty. He went to Oxford in 1803, and while there contracted the habit of eating opium. He became intimate with Wordsworth and Coleridge, and went to live near them at Grasmere. The latter years of his life were spent at Edinburgh, where he died December 8, 1859. The unfortunate habit of opium eating into which he had fallen affected his whole life and writings. His great work *The Confessions of an English Opium Eater* is largely autobiographical. His works are voluminous and embrace almost all known subjects. They consist principally of short papers and essays. See *De Quincey*, by David Masson in *English Men of Letters*, (Macmillan & Co.).

Dickens, Charles, was born at Landport, Portsmouth, February 7, 1812. His youth was passed in abject poverty, he himself being sent for two years to a blacking warehouse, where he was employed tying the covers on the pots of blacking. At the age of 12, he was sent to school for a while, was afterwards office boy to an attorney, studied shorthand, and obtained employment as a reporter. His first literary work was *Sketches of Life and Character*, published over the signature of "Boz." In 1837 he made his first great success with *Pickwick Papers*. In 1839 he married a daughter of George Hogarth the musical critic. His famous novels now followed one another in rapid succession. He visited America in 1841 and in 1867, on the latter occasion giving readings from his own works. He died at Gadshill, Kent, June 9, 1870, and was buried at Westminster Abbey. His best known novels are *David Copperfield*, *Oliver Twist*, *The Old Curiosity Shop*, *Nicholas Nickleby*, *Martin Chuzzlewit*, *Our Mutual Friend* and *A Tale of Two Cities*. See *Dickens*, by A. W. Ward in *English Men of Letters*, (Macmillan & Co.).

Doyle, Arthur Conan, was born at Edinburgh, May 22, 1859. He was educated at Edinburgh University and practised his profession of medicine at Southsea from 1882 to 1890. In the latter year he abandoned medicine for literature, and during the last ten years has written numerous works. In 1899-1900 he was engaged in hospital

work in South Africa. In 1900 he unsuccessfully contested Central Edinburgh for the House of Commons. At present he resides at Hindhead, Surrey. His best known works are *The Adventures of Sherlock Holmes*, *The Memoirs of Sherlock Holmes*, *The Refugees*, *The White Company*, *Micah Clarke*, *The Great Boer War*, and *The Hound of the Baskervilles*.

Doyle, Sir Francis Hastings, was born at Nunappleton, Yorkshire, August 21, 1810. After being sent to various private schools, he was entered in 1823 at Eton, where he remained until 1827. He was associated with Frederick Tennyson, Arthur Hallam and Gladstone. In 1829 he went to Oxford where he graduated from Christ Church College, and shortly afterward was elected a fellow of All Souls. He studied law, was called to the bar, and practised for a short time on the Northern Circuit. Shortly afterwards he was appointed a Revising Barrister, a position he held for many years. In 1867 he was elected Professor of Poetry at Oxford. He died in 1888. He wrote a large number of short poems, including some spirited patriotic verses. See *Reminiscences and Opinions of Sir F. H. Doyle* by himself, (D. Appleton & Co.).

Drummond, Lewis Henry, the son of one of the most eloquent Canadian lawyers of his day, was born at Montreal, October 19, 1848. His father was of Irish descent and his mother a French-Canadian, belonging to one of the oldest noble families in Canada. He was educated privately at home, then at the Montreal Collegiate Institute, and at St. Mary's College, Montreal, from which he graduated at the age of 16. In 1868 he entered the Society of Jesus. He taught Classics, French and English Literature for seven years in Montreal and New York. From 1873 to 1876 he took the Ph.D. course at Woodstock College, Maryland, but refrained from taking the degree. From 1880 to 1884 he studied the D.D. course at St. Berner's College, North Wales, but did not take the degree. In 1883 he was ordained and spent a year in priestly ministration in London. He came to St. Boniface College in 1885, and has remained there since that date with the exception of two years spent in Montreal as rector of St. Mary's College.

Edgar, Sir James David, was born at Hatley, Quebec, August 10, 1841. He was educated in the schools at Lennoxville and at Quebec, In 1864, he was called to the Ontario bar, and began to practice in Toronto. In 1872 he was elected to represent Monck in the House of

Commons, but lost his seat at the general election of 1874. In 1882, he was again defeated, but was elected in 1884 to represent West Ontario. In 1896, he was elected Speaker of the House of Commons, and shortly afterwards received the distinction of knighthood. He died July 31, 1899. In 1893 he published *This Canada of Ours and Other Poems.*

Eliot, George, is the pen name of Mary Ann Evans, who was born at Griff, Warwickshire, November 22, 1819. She received a sound education, under the supervision of her father, a man of unusual ability and strength of character. Her first publication was a translation of Strauss's *Life of Jesus*, in 1846. After the death of her father in 1849, she resided for a year in Geneva, and then settled in London as assistant editor of the *Westminster Review.* In 1854, she formed a union with George Henry Lewes, with whom she lived very happily until his death in 1878. It was Lewes who first encouraged her to write fiction. On May 6, 1880, she married John Walter Cross. She died at Chelsea, December 22, 1880. Her best known works are *Adam Bede, The Mill on the Floss, Felix Holt, Silas Marner, Daniel Deronda* and *Romola.* See *George Eliot*, by Clara Thompson in the *Westminster Biographies*, (Small, Maynard & Co.).

Emerson, Ralph Waldo, was born at Boston, May 25, 1803. He was educated at the public schools of Boston and graduated from Harvard in 1821. His course was not a specially brilliant one, although he gained prizes for philosophical essays, and for declamation, and was elected class-poet. He taught school for five years. In 1829 he was ordained into the ministry of the Unitarian Church, but in 1832 abandoned the ministry and visited Europe. In 1834 he began his long series of lectures in Boston. In 1835 he removed to Concord. His *Essays* were published in 1841, and his *Poems* in 1846. He was twice married and had two daughters and one son. He died at Concord, April 27, 1882. His writings are mostly of a philosophical and speculative character, and consist largely of essays. His best known works are, in addition to the *Essays, Representative Men, English Traits* and *The Conduct of Life.* See *Ralph Waldo Emerson*, by F. B. Sanborn in the *Beacon Biographies*, (Small, Maynard & Co.).

Ferguson, Sir Samuel, was born at Belfast, March 10, 1810. He was educated at Belfast and at Trinity College, Dublin, from which he graduated in 1826, receiving the degree of M.A. six years later. In 1838 he was called to the Irish bar, and in 1859 was made a Q.C. In

1867 he retired from practice to accept the position of Deputy Keeper of the Public Records of Ireland. So well did he act in this department that in 1878 he was knighted in recognition of his services. In 1864 Trinity College conferred upon him the degree of L.L.D., and in 1882 he was elected President of The Royal Irish Academy. He died August 8, 1886. Besides numerous volumes of *Poems*, he wrote *Lays of the Western Gael*, and an epic entitled *Congal*.

Field, Eugene, was born at St. Louis, Mo., September 2, 1850. He was educated at Williams and Knox Colleges, and at the University of Missouri. In 1871 he made a tour of Europe. From 1873 to 1883 he was connected with various newspapers in Missouri and Colorado, and after 1883 with the Chicago *Daily News*. He was very fond of children, and many of his best poems are dedicated to his little friends. *Little Boy Blue* in Book II. is from the pen of Field. He died at Chicago November 4th, 1895. His best works are *With Trumpet and Drum*, *Songs and Other Verses*, *A Second Book of Verse*, *A Little Book of Western Verse*, *Sharps and Flats*, and *Echoes from the Sabine Farm*. See *Eugene Field*, by Slason Thompson, (Chas. Scribner's Sons).

Fletcher, John, was born at Rye, in Sussex, December, 1579. His father, at the time of his son's birth, was minister of the parish, but was afterwards Bishop of London. At the age of 11 he entered Cambridge as a pensioner, and two years later was made one of the Bible-clerks. At the age of 16 his father died and he and his seven brothers and sisters were left destitute. Nothing is known of Fletcher's life until some years later, when he appears as the associate of Francis Beaumont, the dramatist. From this time the names of the two are so closely associated that it is impossible to separate them. They wrote their dramas together until the death of Beaumont in 1616. Fletcher survived his friend nine years, dying in 1625. The best known of Fletcher's own dramas are *The Pilgrim*, *The Loyal Subject*, and *The Lover's Progress*. See *Beaumont and Fletcher*, by J. St. L. Strachey in the *Mermaid Series*, (Unwin).

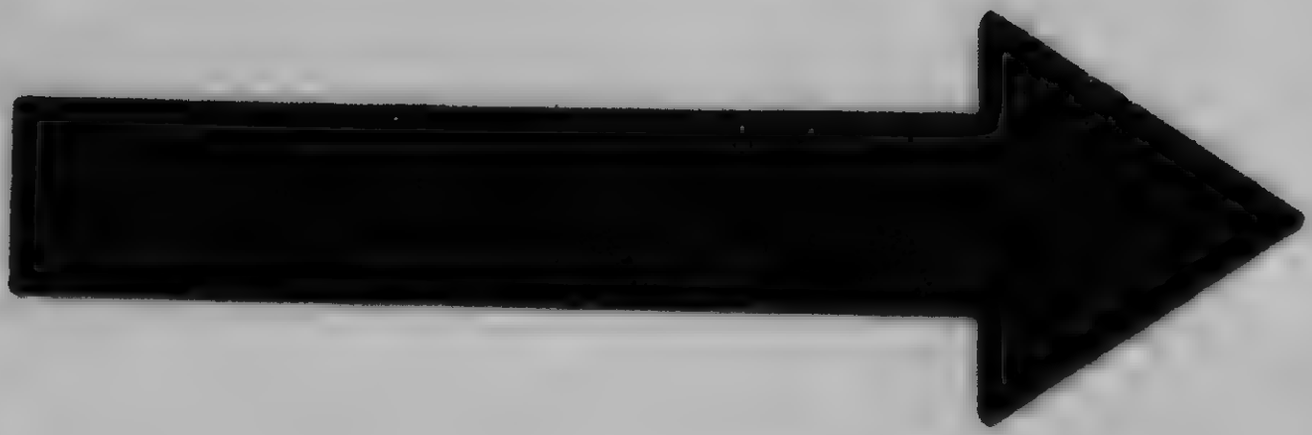
Froude, James Anthony, was born at Darlington, England, April 23, 1818. He was educated at Westminster and at Oriel College, Oxford. He graduated with high honors, and in 1842 became a fellow of Exter College. In 1845 he was ordained a deacon of the Church of England, but retired from the ministry owing to a dispute with his superiors on matters of religious controversy. He now turned his

attention to historical and general literature. In 1869 he was elected rector of the University of St. Andrews. In 1872-73 he lectured in the United States. In 1892 he succeeded Freeman as Regius Professor of History in the University of Oxford. He died at Salcombe, October 20, 1894. His great work *The History of England from the Fall of Wolsey to the Defeat of the Spanish Armada*, in 12 volumes, appeared between 1856 and 1870. Other important works are *Short Studies on Great Subjects*, *Cæsar*, *Oceana*, *Lectures on the Council of Trent*, *English Seamen in the Sixteenth Century*, and *The Spanish Story of the Armada*. See *Froude*, by John Oliver Hobbs, in *Modern English Writers*, (W. Blackwood & Son).

Gerok, Karl, a German Protestant pastor and poet, was born at Varhingen, in Würtemburg, January 30, 1815. His poems are chiefly religious and patriotic. He died in 1890. His best known works are *Palm Leaves* and *Flowers and Stars*.

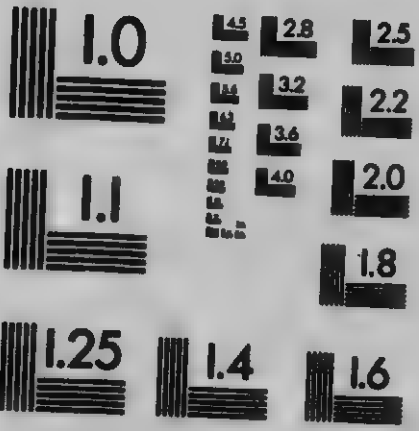
Gladstone, William Ewart, was born at Liverpool, December 29, 1809. He was educated at Eton and at Oxford, taking his degree in 1831. In 1832 he was elected to Parliament for Newark. In 1834 he was appointed one of the Lords of the Treasury, but retired on the fall of the ministry in 1835. In 1839 he married Miss Glynne. In 1841 he again took office, and from this time forward his life is closely connected with the history of England. In 1868 he became Prime Minister, and continued to hold that office at intervals until his retirement in 1894. He lived quietly, engaged in literary work, at Hawarden Castle until his death, May 19, 1898. His principal works are *Studies in the Homeric Age*, *Juventus Mundi*, and *Gleanings from Past Years*. See *Life of Gladstone*, by Justin McCarthy, (The Macmillan Co.), and *William Ewart Gladstone*, by James Bryce, (The Century Co.).

Goethe, Johann Wolfgang von, was born at Frankfort-on-the-Main, August 28, 1749. His education until he was 16 was carried on at home under the supervision of his father, a councillor of the Empire. In 1765 he began his studies at Leipsic, and continued them at the University of Strasburg. In 1771 he took his Doctor's degree, and began his literary career with the publication of *Gotz von Berlichingen*. In 1775 he was invited to the court of Charles Augustus at Weimar. In 1776 he was created a Privy Councillor, with a salary suitable to his position, and took up his residence with his friend and patron. In 1786 he visited Italy. From this time until his death



MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street
Rochester, New York 14609 USA
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

Goethe continued to live at Weimar, occasionally visiting other places for rest and change. He died at Weimar, March 22, 1832. His best known works are *Faust*, *Egmont*, *Iphigenia in Tauris*, *Tasso* and *Wilhelm Meister's Apprenticeship*. See *Goethe*, by James Sime in *Great Writers* Series, (Walter Scott).

Gould, Hannah Flagg, was born at Lancaster, Mass., September 3, 1789. In 1800 she removed to Newburyport, where she lived quietly until her death, September 5, 1865. She published volumes of poems at intervals, beginning in 1832. Her best known work was written in 1854, *Hymns and Poems for Children*.

Gray, Thomas, was born at London, December 26, 1716. He was sent to Eton and afterwards to Cambridge, where he attended Peterhouse College from 1734 to 1738. While at Eton he had made the acquaintance of Horace Walpole, whom in 1739 he accompanied on a tour through Europe. The association did not prove congenial, and Gray returned to England. In 1841 he took up his residence at Cambridge, where he continued to live until his death, with the exception of two years spent in London. In 1757 he declined the offer of the Poet Laureateship. In 1759 he was appointed Professor of Modern History at Cambridge. He died July 30, 1771. Gray was one of the most learned men of his time and has left behind him many scholarly works. His reputation depends, however, on the comparatively small number of poems which he wrote. The best known are the *Elegy in a Country Churchyard*, *Ode on a Distant Prospect of Eton College*, *The Bard*, and *The Descent of Odin*. See *Selections from the Prose and Poetry of Thomas Gray*, edited by W. L. Phelps, (Ginn & Co.).

Halleck, Fitz-Greene, was born at Guilford, Conn., July 8, 1790. His boyhood was uneventful, although during this period he wrote a number of poems, some of which gave promise of future excellence. In 1811 he removed to New York, and became a clerk in the house of Jacob Barker, where he remained for twenty years. He was afterwards in the employ of John Jacob Astor, who nominated him as one of the trustees of the Astor Library, and left him an annuity of $200. He paid a visit to Europe in 1822-23. He was a constant contributor to the newspapers and periodicals, writing both prose and poetry. In 1849 he returned to Guilford, where he remained until his death, November 19, 1867. His best known poems are *Marco Bozzaris* and *Burns*. See *The Life and Letters of Fitz-Greene Halleck*, by J. G. Wilson, (D. Appleton & Co.).

Harte, Francis Bret, was born at Albany, N.Y., August 25, 1839. In 1854 he went to California, where he tried gold digging, learned typesetting, was employed as a reporter, and finally became editor of *The Californian*, a literary weekly. In 1871 he removed to New York and shortly afterwards received a consular appointment in Germany. From 1880 to 1885 he was United States Consul at Glasgow. He died at London, May 5, 1902. Among his works are *Echoes of the Foot-Hills*, *A Phyllis of the Sierras*, *A Waif of the Plains* and *From Sandhill to Pine*. See *American Writers of To-Day*, by H. C. Vedder, (Silver, Burdett & Co.).

Hawthorne, Nathaniel, was born at Salem, Mass., July 4, 1804. He was educated at Bowdoin College, where he was a classmate of Longfellow. While at college he was subject to fits of deep depression, indeed this tendency to melancholy never entirely left him. After leaving college he spent some years at Salem, engaged in literary work for various magazines. In 1837 *Twice Told Tales* was published. In 1843 he married and went to Concord to live. In 1846 he was made Surveyor of the port of Salem, and in 1849 he was appointed to a position in the Boston Customs House. In 1853 he was appointed United States Consul at Liverpool, where he remained until 1857. During these years he travelled somewhat extensively on the continent. After he returned to the United States he resumed his literary labors. He died at Plymouth, N.H., May 19, 1864. His principal works are *The Scarlet Letter*, *The Marble Faun*, and *Mosses from an Old Manse*. See *Nathaniel Hawthorne*, by Mrs. J. T. Fields in the *Beacon Biographies*, (Small, Maynard & Co.).

Headley, Joel Tyler, was born at Walton, N.Y., December 30, 1813. He was educated at Union College and Auburn Seminary. He was pastor in charge of a church at Stockbridge, Mass., for two years, and was afterwards assistant editor of the New York *Tribune*. He was Secretary of State for New York in 1856-57. He died at Newburg, N.Y., January 16, 1897. His principal works are *Napoleon and his Marshals*, *Oliver Cromwell* and *Washington and his Generals*.

Hemans, Felicia, Dorothea, was born at Liverpool, September 25, 1793. Her father, George Browne, was a prosperous merchant, but in 1800 financial reverses compelled him to remove his family from Liverpool to Gwrych, in North Wales. Here Felicia was brought up amidst the mountains and within sight of the sea. Her education was

superintended by her mother, a woman of much natural ability. She was a very precocious child, and possessed a marvellously retentive memory. Her first poem was written at the age of eight. In 1808, at the age of 15, her parents allowed her to publish her first volume of poems. This was followed in the next year by *England and Spain*. In 1812 she married Captain Hem , an Irish gentleman, to whom she had been engaged for three years. In 1818 they separated, and never saw each other again. After this she resided in various parts of England and Ireland, living on friendly terms with almost all the well-known literary men and women of her time. She died at Dublin, May 16, 1835. In addition to a host of short poems, she wrote *The Vespers of Palermo*, *The Siege of Valencia* and *The Forest Sanctuary*. See *Twelve English Authoresses*, by L. B. Walford, (Longman's, Green & Co.).

Herbert, George, was born at Montgomery Castle, Eng., April 3, 1593. He was educated privately until he was twelve years of age, when he was sent to Westminster School, and in 1608 to Trinity College, Cambridge. He took his B.A. degree in 1611, his M.A. in 1616, and was made orator of the University in 1619. In 1625, he took holy orders and became prebendary of Layton Ecclesia. He afterwards removed to Bemerton, where he died March 1, 1633. He has written some of the sweetest religious lyrics in the language. His principal works are *The Temple* and *The Country Parson*. See *Memoir*, prefixed to *Riverside Edition of Poems*, (Houghton, Mifflin & Co.).

Herrick, Robert, was born at London in August, 1591. His father having died in the next year, Robert was brought up by his uncle, Sir William Herrick, a goldsmith. In 1607 he was bound apprentice to his uncle, but after working for six years he was sent to Cambridge, where he graduated in 1616, taking his M.A. degree four years later. In 1629 he took holy orders and was presented with the living of Dean Prior in Devonshire. In 1648 he was driven from his living by the Puritans, but was restored in 1662. He continued to live quietly at his vicarage until his death, October 15, 1674. His principal works are *Noble Numbers*, 1647, and *Hesperides*, 1648. See *Memoir*, prefixed to *Riverside Edition of Poems*, (Houghton, Mifflin & Co.).

Hill, Aaron, was born at London, February 10, 1685. He was educated at Westminster School, which he left at the age of 14 to reside with his relative, Lord Paget, the British Ambassador at Con-

stantinople. After travelling through the greater part of the East, he returned to England in 1703. His *History of the Ottoman Empire* appeared as the result of this and a subsequent tour. About 1[illegible] he began to take an interest in the theatre, and was appointed [illegible] of the Haymarket. The remainder of his life was spent partly in business, and partly in literary pursuits. Pope mentioned him in the *Dunciad*, but in a complimentary manner. Hill died in 1750, and was buried in Westminster Abbey. His best known work is his *Progress of Wit*. In addition to this, he wrote 17 dramas, now almost forgotten.

Hogg, James, was born in Etterick parish, Selkirkshire, January 25, 1772. He was first a shepherd and then a farmer, but met with very little success at either occupation. He had had very little instruction, but was a great reader, and at the age of 25 began to compose songs. In 1801 he published *Scottish Pastorals, Poems and Songs*. In 1810 he became editor of *The Spy*, a journal in Edinburgh. In 1817 the Duke of Buccleuch settled him on a farm at Altrive, but he was not at all successful as a farmer. He spent his time in literary work, varied by field sports, of which he was very fond. He died at Altrive, November 21, 1835. His best works are *The Shepherd's Calendar*, *Montrose Tales* and *Winter Evening Tales*.

Holland, Josiah Gilbert, was born at Belchertown, Mass., July 24, 1819. His early life was a constant struggle against poverty, but he persevered, and in 1844 graduated from the Berkshire Medical College. The practice of his profession not proving successful, Holland turned his attention to journalistic work, and became editor of *The Springfield Republican*. He held this position until 1866. In 1870 he assisted in founding *Scribner's Magazine*, and became its editor. Later, when *Scribner's* was changed to *The Century*, he edited the new magazine, and continued to do so until his death, October 12, 1881. His best known works are *Kathrina*, *Bitterswcet*, *Sevenoaks*, and *Arthur Bonnicastle*. See *Josiah Gilbert Holland*, by Mrs. H. M. Plunkett, (Chas. Scribners' Sons).

Holmes, Oliver Wendell, was born at Cambridge, Mass., August 19, 1809. He graduated at Harvard in 1829, and at once entered upon the study of law, but abandoned it for medicine. In 1833 he went to Europe for the purpose of continuing his medical studies. He returned to the United States in 1835, and took his degree of M.D. in 1836. In 1838 he was elected Professor of Anatomy at Dartmouth College, and later held a similar position in the Massachusetts Medical School. He

retired from active work in 1882, and continued to reside in Boston until his death, October 7, 1894. His principal works are the *Breakfast Table* series, *Over the Tea-Cups* and *Elsie Venner*. See *Life and Letters of Oliver Wendell Holmes*, by John T. Morse, (Houghton, Mifflin & Co.).

Hood, Thomas, was born at London, May 23, 1799. He received a very limited education, and at the age of 13, entered the office of a city merchant. The confinement proved too much for the already sickly boy, so he was sent to reside for some time with relatives at Dundee. In 1818 he returned to London and became apprentice to an engraver. After two years of this work he was appointed sub-editor of *The London Magazine*. In 1824 he married, against the wishes of his wife's family. The remainder of Hood's life was a constant struggle against debt and sickness. His business ventures were not successful, and for some time he was obliged, in order to avoid his creditors, to reside abroad. Throughout, Hood maintained his constant cheerfulness, and issued his humorous productions as if he had not a care in the world. In 1843 his wife received a pension of £100 from the Civil List. He died May 3, 1845. Hood's best known poems are *The Song of the Shirt*, *The Bridge of Sighs*, *Eugene Aram*, and a host of humorous poems. See *Popular Studies of Nineteenth Century Poets*, by J. M. Mather (Warne).

Houghton, George Washington Wright, was born at Cambridge, Mass., August 12, 1850. He followed the profession of a journalist, varying this with the writing of lighter verse. He was one of the incorporators of the "Sons of the Revolution," and acted as the secretary of the society for some years. He died at Yonkers in 1891. His best known works are *Songs from Over the Sea*, *St. Olaf's Kirk*, and *Niagara and Other Poems*.

Howe, Julia Ward, was born at New York, May 27, 1819. She was carefully educated by private tutors at home. In 1843 she was married to Dr. Samuel Howe, with whom she was soon associated in various literary undertakings. Before the outbreak of the Civil War they edited *The Commonwealth*, an anti-slavery journal. She has always taken a great interest in the cause of women, and in all philanthropic works. Her best known books are *Passion Flowers*, and *Words for the Hour*.

Howitt, Mary, was born at Coleford, Gloucestershire, March 12, 1799. Her father, Samuel Botham, was a prosperous Quaker of

Uttoxeter, in Staffordshire. On April 16, 1821, she married William Howitt, and from that time her life was bound up with that of her husband. In 1837 they removed to Esher, where she began the production of her long series of children's books. Her literary productions number 110 tales. In 1879 she was awarded a pension of £100 from the Civil List. She died at Rome, January 30, 1888. Her work includes poems, histories, stories, novels, travels, and translations from various foreign languages. Some of the best known of these are *Sowing and Reaping*, *Studies of Natural History*, *The First Minstrel*, and *The Book of the Seasons*. The last two of these were published jointly with her husband. See *Mary Howitt, an Autobiography*, edited by her daughter, (Isbister).

Hughes, Thomas, was born at Newburg, England, October 20, 1823. He was educated at Rugby, under the famous Dr. Arnold, and at Oriel College, Oxford. He graduated in 1835 and was called to the bar in 1848. He was twice elected to Parliament. He became Principal of a College near London, for working men and women. He was also the founder of the Rugby colony in Tennessee. In 1882 he became a County Court Judge. He died at Brighton, March 22, 1896. He led a most devoted, unselfish life, thoroughly carrying out in his life the principles he advocates in his two best books, *Tom Brown's Schooldays*, and *Tom Brown at Oxford*.

Hugo, Victor Marie, was born at Besancon, France, February 6, 1802. His father was an officer of the Empire, and military fortunes took him to various places, so that his education was left principally to chance reading. His regular school life, 1815-18, led him almost at once to his professional interest in writing. In 1817 he competed for the prize at the Academy, and received ninth place. In 1819 two of his *Odes* were crowned by the Academy of Toulouse. In 1822 he published a volume of poems, bought an annuity of 1,000 francs, and married Adèle Foucher. His sympathies were at this time entirely Catholic and Royalist. He now, by the production of *Marion de Lorme* and *Hernani*, caused the famous revolution which overthrew the classical tradition in the drama of France and ushered in the triumph of Romanticism. In 1841 he was elected, after three unsuccessful attempts, member of the French Academy. He now entered upon an active political life, and was made a peer in 1845. After this his sympathies became more and more democratic. He entered a violent protest against the *Coup d'Etat* of Napoleon III., and was obliged to

go into exile. From this time until his return to France, after the downfall of Napoleon, he lived in Jersey and Guernsey. He returned to Paris in 1870, and remained there during the siege. In 1876 he was chosen Senator. From this time until the close of his life he was the political idol of the French people. He died at Paris, May 22, 1885, and was honored with a magnificent state funeral. His principal works are, in addition to his dramas and miscellaneous poems, *Notre Dame*, *The Toilers of the Sea* and *Les Miserables*. See *Victor Hugo*, by Frank T. Marzials in *Great Writers*, (Walter Scott).

Irving, Washington, was born at New York, April 3, 1783. He left school in 1800 and began the study of law. In 1804 he made a voyage to Europe for the benefit of his health. He was called to the bar in 1806, but did not practice. His literary career began at this time by the publication of humorous tales and sketches. In 1810 he entered into partnership with his brothers in a large commercial enterprise. In 1815 he again went to Europe, where he remained for some years. In 1817 his firm failed, and he was obliged to turn to literature for support. After spending some time on the continent, he was sent to England as Secretary of the United States Legation. He returned to his native country in 1832. From 1842 to 1846 he was ambassador to Spain. He lived during his later years at Sunnyside on the Hudson, where he died November 28, 1859. His principal works are *The Sketch Book*, *Washington*, *Christopher Columbus*, *Goldsmith* and *The Alhambra*. See *Washington Irving*, by Charles Dudley Warner in *American Men of Letters*, (Houghton, Mifflin & Co.).

Jacobs, Joseph, was born at Sydney, N.S.W., August 29, 1854. He was educated at the Sydney Grammar School and at St. John's College, Cambridge. In 1888 he spent some time in Spain engaged in historical research. In 1896 he made a lecturing tour in the United States. He is a voluminous writer, and has contributed to the leading magazines of England and the United States. His work deals principally with history and with literary criticism. He resides at present in London. He is the author of *Celtic Fairy Tales* and *More Celtic Fairy Tales*.

Johnson, Pauline, was born at "Chiefwood" the reserve of the Six Nations, in the county of Brant, Ontario. Her father was chief of the Mohawks, and her mother an English lady. She was educated privately, and at the Brantford High School. In 1894 she visited England and published *The White Wampum*. She is a frequent con-

tributor to the press, and gives public recitations from her own works. Her Indian name is Tekahionwake. She resided for some time at Winnipeg.

Johnson, Samuel, was born at Litchfield, Eng., September 18, 1709. His father was a small bookseller of limited means. He attended Litchfield Grammar School, and read everything at home that came in his way. He entered Pembroke College, Oxford, but owing to the death of his father was compelled to leave without finishing his course. He first, in order to support himself, tried teaching, then newspaper work. In 1836 he married a widow nearly twice his age, who had £800. With this amount he opened a private school, but the project proved a failure. After this he went to London, where for years he lived a life of poverty and hardship, struggling to rise by means of literature. He did hack work for the publishers, edited *The Rambler*, and finally produced his *Dictionary of the English Language*. This work brought him fame and fortune. From this time until his death he was the literary dictator of England, and probably the most famous man in the country. His wife had died in 1752, and his mother in 1759. In order to pay his mother's funeral expenses, he wrote *Rasselas*, which passed through six editions in one week. In 1763 he met Boswell, his future biographer, and in 1773 accompanied him on a tour through Scotland. He died at London, December 13, 1784, and was buried in Westminster Abbey. Johnson was a man of great learning and strength of thought, but biased by extreme prejudices. His prolonged struggle against poverty, and an inherited scrofula somewhat embittered his life. The most pleasing trait in his character was his kindness to and sympathy with the poor and the distressed. His best known works are *London*, *The Vanity of Human Wishes*, *Rasselas*, and *The Lives of the Poets*. See *Samuel Johnson*, by Leslie Stephen in *English Men of Letters*, (Macmillan & Co.).

Jonson, Ben, was born at Westminster in 1573. He was educated at Westminster School, and spent a short time at Cambridge. For some years he followed the trade of his stepfather, a bricklayer. Not liking the occupation, he enlisted and served some time in the Netherlands. After a short stay he returned and betook himself to study. In 1592 he married, and in 1597 began to write for the stage. From this time his life is marked chiefly by the production of his plays, and by quarrels with his literary contemporaries. For the last three years of his life he was an invalid unable to leave his room. He died August

1637, and was buried in Westminster Abbey. His epitaph is "O rare Ben Jonson." His best works are *Every Man in His Humor*, *The Silent Woman*, *The Alchemist*, *Catiline*, and *Sejanus*. See *Ben Jonson*, by J. A. Symonds in *English Worthies*, (Longmans, Green & Co.).

Keats, John, was born at London, October 29, 1795. He was educated at Enfield and afterwards apprenticed to a surgeon at Edmonton. After completing his apprenticeship in 1815, he came to London to walk the hospitals, but soon drifted into literary work. His volumes, published at regular intervals, did not receive a very kindly welcome from the critics. Symptoms of consumption now began to appear. The melancholy into which he was plunged by his brother's death, and his hopeless passion for a young lady with whom he had become acquainted, complicated matters. He went abroad in the hope of benefiting his health, but died at Rome, February 23, 1821, and was buried in the little English cemetery there. His principal works are *Endymion*, *Lamia*, *Isabella* and *The Eve of St. Agnes*. See *Keats*, by Sidney Colvin in *English Men of Letters*, (Macmillan & Co.).

Keble, John, was born at Fairford, Gloucestershire, April 25, 1792. In 1806 he entered Corpus Christi College, Oxford, and graduated in 1811, with double first-class honors. In the same year he was elected to a fellowship at Oriel College. From this time until 1823, he continued to reside at Oxford, engaged in examining and tutorial work. In 1816 he entered the ministry of the Church of England. In 1825 he was appointed curate of Hursley. Several valuable livings were at this time offered to him, but he declined each in turn on account of the failing health of his father. In 1831 he was elected Professor of Poetry at Oxford and held the post for ten years. In March, 1836, he accepted the living of Hursley, where he lived for the next thirty years. He died at Bournemouth, March 29, 1866. His best known work is *The Christian Year*. See *John Keble*, by Walter Lock, (Houghton, Mifflin & Co.).

Kingsley, Charles, was born at Holme, Devonshire, June 12, 1819. In 1836 he entered King's College, London, but later removed to Magdalen College, Cambridge, and graduated with honors in 1842. He at first intended to study law, but changed his mind and entered the Church. He devoted himself to the relief and improvement of the working classes, thereby gaining the name "The Chartist Parson." In addition to this he greatly encouraged all the manly sports. His first publication was a book of *Village Sermons*. In 1850 he published

Alton Locke. In 1860 he was a chosen Professor of Modern History at Cambridge. In [illegible] he retired and became Canon of Chester and afterwards of Westminster. He became editor of *Good Words* in 1872, made a lecturing tour in the United States in 1873-1874, and was appointed chaplain to the Queen. He died at Eversley, January 23, 1875. His most important works, in addition to a large number of volumes on literary and historical subjects, are *Two Years Ago*, *Yeast*, *Hypatia*, and *Westward Ho!* See *Charles Kingsley*, by C. W. Stubbs in *Victorian Era Series*, (Blackie & Sons).

Kinney, Elizabeth Clementine, was born at New York in 1810. She began to write at an early age, and while a mere girl contributed poetry to various magazines. In 1830 she married R. B. Stedman, of Hartford, and after his death resided at Plainfield. In 1841, she married W. B. Kinney, who, some years later, was appointed United States Minister to the Court of Turin. She remained in Italy for fourteen years. While there she published *Felicita, a Metrical Romance*. During her residence at Florence, she was an intimate friend of the Brownings. In 1865 she returned to the United States. She died at Summit, N.J., in 1889. Other works are *Bianca Capello* and *Poems*, (1867).

Kipling, Rudyard, was born at Bombay, December 30, 1865. He was educated at United Service College, Westward Ho! Devon. He returned to India and from 1882 to 1889 was employed on various Indian newspapers. In 1892 he married Caroien Balestier and lived for some time afterwards at Brattleboro, Vermont. He was made an LL.D. of McGill University in 1899. He lives at present at Rottingdean, Eng., although he is constantly wandering from place to place. His best known works are *Departmental Ditties*, *Ballads and Barrack Room Ballads*, *The Seven Seas*, *The Jungle Books*, *Captains Courageous*, *The Day's Work*, *Stalky & Co.*, and *Kim*.

Lamb, Charles, was born at London, February 10, 1775. He was educated at Christ's Hospital, where he formed an intimacy with Coleridge. After holding a clerkship in the South Sea House for a short time, he entered the service of the East India Company, where he remained for 33 years. At the end of this time, he retired on a pension of £450 per annum. He died December 27, 1834. During his life, Lamb assumed the care of his sister Mary, who in her lucid moments was a very bright and intellectual companion. But the care of the invalid was a heavy burden, borne, however, by Lamb with

cheerfulness and patience. His most important works are *Essays of Elia*, *Last Essays of Elia*, and *Specimens of the English Dramatic Poets*. See *Charles Lamb*, by Alfred Ainger in *English Men of Letters*, (Macmillan & Co.).

Lamb, Mary, the elder sister of Charles Lamb, was born at London, in 1764. The family were not in good circumstances and Mary was forced to do needlework to help support them. The father was old and feeble, the mother a chronic invalid and Charles was earning a bare living. On September 22, 1796, Mary, irritated at the behavior of a little apprentice girl, snatched up a knife and pursued the child around the room, and ended by stabbing her own mother, who had interfered on behalf of the little girl. The jury returned a verdict of insanity, and Mary, by special favor, was given over to the charge of her brother Charles. She was subject during the remainder of her life to occasional fits of insanity, and was never well, but during her lucid moments she collaborated with her brother in some of his best work. Together they wrote *Tales from Shakespeare*. She survived her brother for thirteen years, dying May 20, 1847.

Lang, Andrew, was born in Scotland, March 31, 1844. He was educated at Edinburgh Academy, St. Andrew's University, and Balliol College, Oxford. He is an honorary fellow of Merton College, Oxford. He is one of the most versatile of modern writers, writing on all subjects from Scottish history to old China and the mysteries of folk-lore. He is a poet, novelist, historian, scientist, literary critic and scholar. He resides at present at London. His best known works are *Ballads in Blue China*, *Custom and Myth*, *Letters on Literature*, *Angling Sketches*, *Homer and the Epic*, *Pickle the Spy*, *A History of Scotland* and a number of volumes of *Fairy Tales*.

Lingard, John, was born at Winchester, February 5, 1771. In 1782 he entered the English College at Douay, and after a brilliant course in arts, entered upon the study of theology in 1792. In the next year he came back to England, where he engaged in tutorial work. In 1795 he was ordained a priest, and from that year until 1811 filled several educational appointments. In 1811 he became parish priest of Hornby, nine miles from Lancaster. He now began to produce his *History of England*, the volumes being published at intervals between 1819 and 1830. In 1839 he received a grant of £300 from the Privy Purse. He lived quietly at Hornby until his death, July 17, 1851.

Longfellow, Henry Wadsworth, was born at Portland, Maine, February 27, 1807. He graduated from Bowdoin College in 1825. After graduation he began to study law in his father's office, but soon after accepted the position of Professor of Modern Languages at Bowdoin College, and went abroad for three years to fit himself for the position. *Outre Mer*, a series of sketches of travel, was the result of this visit. In 1835 he was appointed to a similar position at Harvard, and again went abroad for purposes of study. He again visited Europe in 1841-1842 and in 1868-1869, receiving in the latter year the degree of D.C.L. from Oxford. He resigned his chair at Harvard in 1854, but continued to reside at Cambridge until his death, March 24, 1882. His best known works are *Evangeline*, *Miles Standish*, *Tales of a Wayside Inn*, *The Golden Legend* and *Hiawatha*. See *Henry W. Longfellow*, by G. R. Carpenter in the *Beacon Biographies*, (Small, Maynard & Co.).

Lover, Samuel, was born at Dublin, February 24, 1797. He entered the office of his father, a stock broker, but the occupation proving uncongenial, at the age of seventeen he abandoned it, and resolved to earn his living as a painter. In 1828 he was elected a member of the Royal Hibernian Academy, and two years later became its secretary. He had already written several songs and some prose sketches, when in 1831 he published *Legends and Stories of Ireland*. In 1833 he was one of the founders of *The Dublin University Magazine*. In 1835 he removed to London, where he met with great success both in art and literature. In 1837 he published his first novel *Rory O' More*. In 1844 the failure of his eyesight compelled him to abandon painting. In 1846 he visited the United States and Canada on a lecturing tour. In 1864 the failure of his health compelled him to give up writing. He died July 6, 1868. He wrote prose sketches, poems, dramas, parodies and novels. *Handy Andy* is probably his best known work.

Lowell, James Russell, was born at Cambridge, Mass., February 22, 1819. He was educated at Harvard and was admitted to the bar in 1841. He soon abandoned law, and devoted himself to literature. His first volume of poems was published in 1844. He now took an active part with both tongue and pen in the agitation for the abolition of slavery. In 1851 he visited Europe. In 1855 he was appointed to the chair of Modern Languages at Harvard in succession to Longfellow. In 1857 he became editor of *The Atlantic Monthly*. In 1877 he was

made Minister to Spain, and from 1879 to 1885 was Ambassador to Great Britain. During these years he received the degree of LL.D. from Oxford, Cambridge and Edinburgh, and was made Lord Rector of St. Andrew's University. In 1885 he returned to the United States and lived quietly at Cambridge until his death August 12, 1891. His principal poetical works are *The Cathedral*, *The Bigelow Papers*, *Sir Launfal* and the *Commemoration Ode*. He has also written many important works of literary criticism. See *James Russell Lowell*, by E. E. Hale, jr. in the *Beacon Biographies*, (Small, Maynard & Co.).

Lytton, Robert Bulwer, was born at Heydon Hall, Norfolk, May 25, 1803. His father, William Earle Bulwer, was a general in the regular army, and his mother, Elizabeth B. Lytton, a wealthy heiress. He was educated under the supervision of his mother, a woman of literary tastes, and then sent to Trinity College, Cambridge. He graduated in 1826, taking the Chancellors' prize for his poem on *Sculpture*. In 1831 he became editor of *The Monthly Magazine*, and entered Parliament as member for St. Ives. In 1841 he visited Italy and Germany for the sake of his health, which had been much impaired by continuous literary effort. He was made a baronet in 1838, and on his mother's death in 1844 assumed her maiden name, Lytton. In 1856 he was chosen Lord Rector of the University of Glasgow. He held the office of Colonial Secretary under Lord Derby and was raised to the peerage as Lord Lytton in 1866. He died January 18, 1873. His best known works are *Harold*, *Rienzi*, *The Last Days of Pompeii*, *The Caxtons*, *The Last of the Barons* and *My Novel*. He also wrote *Richelieu* and *The Lady of Lyons* two dramas which still hold the stage. See *Notes on Men, Woman and Books*, by Lady Wilde, (Ward & Downey).

Macaulay, Thomas Babington, was born at Rothley Temple, Leicestershire, October 25, 1800. He was placed under private tutors and in 1818 entered Trinity College, Cambridge. In 1819 he gained the Chancellor's medal for a poem on *Pompeii*. In 1822 he took his bachelor's degree and in the same year was elected a fellow of his College. He took his M A. degree in 1825, and in the next year was called to the bar. His brilliant essay on *Milton* appeared in the *Edinburgh Review* in 1825. In 1830 he entered Parliament as member for Calne. He at once took a prominent part in the debates of the House of Commons, especially distinguishing himself in connection with the Reform Bill. He held several minor offices under Government

until 1834, when he was sent to India as a member of the Supreme Council. He returned to England in 1838. In the next year he became Secretary of State for War. In 1846 he was appointed Paymaster to the Forces with a seat in the Cabinet. In 1847 he lost his seat for Edinburgh, but was returned for the same constituency in 1852, at the head of the poll, although he neither went near the city nor canvassed for a vote. In 1857 he was raised to the Peerage as Baron Macaulay of Rothley. He died December 28, 1859, and was buried in Westminster Abbey. His principal works are *Lays of Ancient Rome*, *Essays* and the unfinished *History of England*. See *Lord Macaulay*, by C. H. Jones, (D. Appleton & Co.).

McGee, Thomas D'Arcy, was born at Carlingford, Ireland, April 13, 1825. In 1842 he went to Boston, where he remained for some years engaged in newspaper work. In 1845 he returned to Ireland and threw himself with ardor into the Irish cause. In 1848 he was compelled to flee to New York, where he remained for some years as editor of various Irish-American papers. In 1857 he removed to Montreal, where he became a devoted loyalist, and advocate of the federation of the British Provinces in America. He held various offices in the Government of Canada. He was murdered at Ottawa, April 7, 1868. His chief works are *Canadian Ballads*, *History of Ireland*, and *A Catholic History of North America*.

MacKay, Charles, was born at Perth, Scotland, March 27, 1814. His mother having died young, the boy was brought up under the care of a nurse until 1828, when he was sent to school at Brussels. Here he became proficient in the modern languages. He was engaged as private secretary and tutor until 1834, when he entered upon journalistic work. In 1844 he removed to Scotland, and edited *The Glasgow Argus*. In 1846 he was made an LL.D. of Glasgow University. In 1852 he became editor of *The Illustrated London News*. In 1857 he lectured in the United States and Canada. In 1860 he established *The London Review*. From 1862 to 1865, the period of the Civil War, he resided in New York as the correspondent of the London *Times*. He died at London, December 24, 1889. Mackay published 14 volumes of poetry, and 17 volumes of prose, besides editing numerous anthologies. He is best known by his spirited lyrics and shorter poems. His most important publications are *Legends of the Isles*, *The Lump of Gold*, and *Gossamer and Snowdrift*.

Massey, Gerald, was born at Tring, England, May 29, 1828. As

his parents were very poor the boy was set to work at an early age in a silk mill. He was afterwards a straw braider, so that he received very little education. He went to London, and after trying various occupations, became editor of *The Spirit of Freedom*, and secretary of the Christian Socialists. In 1863 he received a pension from the Civil List, and retired from active work. He is an ardent believer in spiritualism, and has written much on that subject. He resides at present at South Norwood, Surrey. His poems are for the most part patriotic. His best known works are *Havelock's March and Other Poems*, *A Tale of Eternity*, *Voices of Freedom* and *My Lyrical Life*.

Milnes, Richard Monckton, was born at Pontefract, Yorkshire, June 19, 1809. He was educated at Cambridge, from which he graduated in 1831. In 1837, he was elected to Parliament from Pontefract, which he continued to represent as a supporter of the Conservative party until 1863, when he was raised to the peerage as Lord Houghton. He died at Vichy, August 11, 1885. His best known works are *Life of Keats*, *Poems Legendary and Historical*, and *Palm Leaves*.

Montgomery, James, was born at Irvine, in Ayrshire, November 4, 1771. His father was a minister of the Moravian Church, and James received his education in the schools of that sect. At an early age he was apprenticed to a baker, but not liking the occupation he resolved to run away. For a time he had employment in a general store. In 1792 he became bookkeeper in the office of *The Sheffield Register*. The name of the paper was soon after changed to the *Iris*, and Montgomery became its editor and proprietor. He continued to reside in Sheffield, engaged in newspaper, literary and philanthropic work until his death, April 30, 1854. In 1835, he had been granted a pension of £150 from the Civil List. His best known works are *The West Indies*, *The World before the Flood*, *Greenland* and *The Pelican Island*.

Moodie, Susannah, sixth daughter of Thomas Strickland, was born at Reydon Hall, Suffolk, December 6, 1803. She began writing when she was 16 years of age. She accompanied her husband to Canada and for some years they lived on a bush farm. In 1839 they removed to Belleville, and afterwards to Toronto, where she lived until her death, April 8, 1885. Her best known books are *Roughing it in the Bush*, *Life in the Clearing*, and *Enthusiasm and Other Poems*.

Moore, Clement Clark, was born at New York, July 15, 1779. His father was the Episcopal Bishop of New York. In 1798 he

graduated from Columbia College. In 1821 he became Professor of Biblical Learning in the Episcopal Theological Seminary at New York. He was afterwards Professor of Greek and of Hebrew in the same institution. He died at Newport, R.I., July 10, 1863. He was the author of *George Castriot, A Hebrew and Greek Lexicon*, and *Poems*, published in 1844.

Moore, Thomas, was born at Dublin, May 28, 1779. He was educated at a private school and in 1794 entered Trinity College, the prohibition against Roman Catholics having been removed the year before. In 1799 he removed to London, and entered upon the study of law. He soon became a great favorite in society. In 1803-04 he was employed in the Civil Service in Bermuda. In the latter year he visited the United States and Canada. He took part in political discussions on behalf of the Whigs, but was disappointed in his hopes of preferment. In 1833 he received a pension of £300. He died February 26, 1852. Moore was a brilliant conversationalist, a leader in society, and one of the most popular poets of his time. His literary work consisted of both prose and poetry. His best known works are *Irish Melodies, Lallah Rookh, Life of Byron*, and *History of Ireland*. See *Literary Celebrities*, (W. & R. Chambers), and *Notes on Men, Women and Books*, by Lady Wilde, (Ward & Downey).

Morris, George Pope, was born at Philadelphia, October 10, 1802. When quite young he removed to New York, where he became connected with the press. In 1823 he was appointed editor of *The New York Mirror*. From this time he was connected with various literary periodicals, but more particularly with *The Home Journal*, which he edited from 1845 until a short time before his death. He took an active interest in the politics of his state, more especially in military matters, and attained the rank of Brigadier-General of Volunteers. He died at New York, July 6, 1864. Morris wrote a large number of short poems, of which the best known is probably *Woodman, Spare that Tree*. His drama of the revolution, *Brier Cliff*, met with some success. A collected edition of his poems was published in 1860.

Newman, John Henry, was born at London, February 21, 1801. In 1821 he took the degree of B.A. from Trinity College, Oxford. In 1823 he was chosen fellow of Oriel, and in the next year took Anglican orders. In 1832-33 he visited Rome and Sicily. He took part with Keble and Pusey in originating the Oxford Movement. From 1828 to

1843 he was incumbent of St. Mary's, Oxford. In 1845 he joined the Roman Catholic Church. In 1849 he took up his residence at Edgbaston, where he founded a branch of the brotherhood of St. Philip Neri. In 1879 he was made a cardinal. He died August 11, 1890. His best known works are *Theory of Religious Belief*, *A History of Arianism* and *A History of my Religious Opinions*. See *Cardinal Newman*, by A. R. Waller in the *Westminster Biographies*, (Small, Maynard & Co.), and by R. H. Hutton, (Houghton, Mifflin & Co.).

Niebuhr, Barthold Georg, was born at Copenhagen, August 27, 1776. He studied law and philosophy at Kiel and Göttingen In 1798 he was appointed secretary to the Royal Library at Copenhagen. In 1798 he visited England. In 1799 he entered the civil service of the Danish Government, but soon passed over to that of Prussia. In 1810 he was appointed Professor of History at Berlin. From 1816 to 1822 he was Prussian Ambassador at the Papal Court. In 1823 he was appointed a Professor at Bonn. He died at that place, January 2, 1831. His works deal largely with ancient history and antiquities.

Omar Khayyam, or Omar, the tent-maker, the Persian poet, was a native of Naishapur in Khorassan. Through the favor of friends at court, the Sultan provided him with an annuity, which enabled him to pursue his scientific studies. He was appointed Astronomer Royal, and as such, instituted the reformed Persian calendar. He is said to have died A.D. 1123. His fame rests principally upon his *Rubaiyat* or *Quatrains*, introduced to the English speaking world in the translation of Edward Fitzgerald.

O'Reilly, John Boyle, was born at Castle Dowth, near Drogheda, Ireland, June 28, 1844. He began life as a printer, but soon became connected with the Fenian movement. In 1866, he entered the British army as a spy, was detected, convicted of high treason, and condemned to imprisonment for life. The sentence, however, was commuted to twenty years penal servitude. He escaped from Australia in 1869, and made his way to the United States. In 187-, he joined the staff of the Boston *Pilot*, a position he retained until his death, August 10, 1870. O'Reilly is known as a descriptive writer, a novelist and a poet. His principal works are *Songs of the Southern Seas*, *Moondyne*, *In Bohemia*, and *Stories and Sketches*. See *John Boyle O'Reilly*, by Jeffrey Roche, (The Mershon Co.).

Parker, Horatio Gilbert, was born at Camden East, Ontario, November 23, 1862. He was educated at the public school of his

native village and obtained a teacher's certificate at the Ottawa Normal School. He taught school for some years and in 1882 was ordained deacon in the Church of England. In the next year he entered Trinity University, where he remained for two years. He now taught for some time in the Deaf and Dumb Institute, Belleville. In 1886 he went to Australia, when he engaged in newspaper work. He then removed to England where he has remained ever since, with the exception of visits paid to Canada at regular intervals. In 1900 he was elected a member of the Imperial House of Commons. He resides at present at London. His best known works are *Pierre and His People, A Romney of the Snows, The Trail of the Sword, The Seats of the Mighty, The Battle of the Strong* and *The Right of Way.*

Parkman, Francis, was born at Boston, Mass., September 16, 1823. He was educated at Harvard, from which he graduated in 1844, and at the Dane Law School, where he completed his studies in 1846. He at once set out on his travels through the then unknown West. The hardships he endured on these wanderings gave rise to a painful disease, which constantly interfered with his work. *The Oregon Trail* was published in 1851. The immense amount of research necessary to the writing of his histories took him frequently to Europe. He died at Boston, November 8, 1893. His best works are *The Pioneers of France in the New World, Montcalm and Wolfe, The Conspiracy of Pontiac,* and *The Jesuits of North America.* See *American Writers of To-Day,* by Henry C. Vedder, (Silver, Burdett & Co.).

Poe, Edgar Allan, was born at Boston, January 19, 1809. His father and mother who belonged to the theatrical profession having died, Poe was adopted by John Allan, a wealthy citizen of Richmond, Virginia, who sent him to school for five years in England. In 1826, he entered the University of Virginia, but was removed within a year. In 1827 he went to Boston, where he published his first volume, *Tamerlane and Other Poems.* He was admitted as a cadet at West Point in 1830, but was dismissed in the next year. He then became editor of *The Southern Literary Messenger,* and married his cousin Virginia Clemm, then a mere child. In 1837 he quarreled with his publisher and removed to New York. From this time onward he led a precarious existence, writing, editing magazines, and flitting from one city to another. In 1847 he was so poor that an appeal to public charity was made for him. In the same year his wife died. He himself died at Baltimore, October 7, 1849. Poe is known principally by

his story *The Gold Bug* and his poem *The Raven*. See *Edgar Allan Poe*, by G. E. Woodberry in *American Men of Letters*, (Houghton, Mifflin & Co.).

Pope, Alexander, was born at London, May 22, 1688. He was educated at home and at private schools. Being a Roman Catholic, he was precluded from attendance at either Oxford or Cambridge. He was a very precocious child, and began to write at a very early age. His *Pastorals* was published in 1709. His life was marked principally by the publication of his works. In later years he lived for the most part in his beautiful villa at Twickenham, the undisputed literary dictator of his time. He died May 30, 1744. His best known works are *Essays on Criticism*, *Essay on Man*, *The Rape of the Lock*, *The Dunciad*, *Epistles*, and a translation of Homer's *Iliad* and *Odyssey*. See *Pope*, by Leslie Stephen in *English Men of Letters*, (Macmillan & Co.).

Prud'homme, Louis Arthur, was born at St. Urbain de Chateauguay, Quebec, November 21, 1853. He was educated at Montreal College, and called to the bar in 1879. In 1881 he removed to Manitoba and began to practice his profession. He was for some time engaged in newspaper work. In 1885 he was appointed a judge of the County Court, a position he still holds. He resides at present at St. Boniface. He has contributed to various French Canadian magazines, and has written *Notes Historiques sur la vie de P. E. de Radisson*.

Rand, Theodore Harding, was born at Cornwallis, Nova Scotia, February 8, 1835. He was educated at Horton College Academy and at the University of Acadia, from which he graduated in 1860. He taught for some time at Horton, and later in the Normal School, Truro. After the passing of the School Act of 1874, he was made Superintendent of Education for Nova Scotia and subsequently held a similar position in New Brunswick. In 1883 he became Professor of History in Acadia. He was afterwards Professor in McMaster and Woodstock Colleges. In 1892 he was appointed Chancellor of McMaster University, but resigned, owing to ill-health in 1895. In 1897 he published *At Minas Basin and Other Poems*. He died at Toronto in 1900.

Reade, Charles, was born at Ipsden House, Oxfordshire, June 9, 1814. He was educated at various private schools, and in 1831 entered Magdalen College, Oxford. He graduated in 1835 and in the same year was elected fellow of his College. He was successively scholar, bursar, Dean of Arts, and Vice-President of Magdalen. In 1847 he

received the degree of D.C.L. In 1843 he was called to the bar. He finally determined to become a writer, and with this object in view began to accumulate material. In 1851 his first drama, *The Ladies' Battle*, appeared, and in the next year his first novel, *Peg Woffington*, was published. From this time his life is marked by the production of his novels. He died April 11, 1884. His best works are *It is Never too Late to Mend*, *Hard Cash* and *The Cloister and the Hearth*.

Richter, Jean Paul Friedrich, was born at Wunsiedel, Bavaria, March 21, 1763. His father was a teacher and clergyman. In 1780 he entered the University of Leipsic. He was originally intended for the church, but his love of literature caused him to abandon all thoughts of that profession. During his University life he supported himself by teaching. After leaving the University in 1785, he lived for some years at home, then became a private tutor, and afterwards a teacher in a large school. He changed his place of residence constantly, and continued to publish his writings, which, at first looked upon with scorn, gradually became recognized as of the first importance. In 1801 he married and settled at Baireuth. In 1809 he was granted a pension of 1,000 florins. He died at Baireuth, November, 1825. His principal works are *Titan*, *Introduction to Æsthetics* and *Levana*. See *Notes on Men, Women and Books*, by Lady Wilde, (Ward & Downey).

Riley, James Whitcomb, was born at Greenfield, Ind., in 1852. He was successively a sign-painter, a strolling player, and an editorial writer on the Indianapolis *Journal*. He wrote dialect tales and poems, which soon became very popular. One of his best known books is his *Rhymes of Childhood*.

Roberts, Charles George Douglas, was born at Douglas, N.B., January 10, 1860. He was educated at the Fredericton Collegiate Institute, and at the University of New Brunswick. He taught school for some time and then became editor of *The Week*, published at Toronto. He gave up editorial work to take the position of Professor of English and French Literature at King's College, Windsor. In 1895 he resigned, and has since devoted himself to literature. He resides at present in New York, where he is connected with a number of periodicals. His most important works are *Orion*, *In Divers Tones*, *Songs of the Common Day*, *The Book of the Native*, *The Forge in the Forest*, *A Sister to Evangeline* and *The Heart of the Ancient Wood*.

Ruskin, John, was born at London, February 8, 1819. During his childhood his father, a wealthy wine merchant, was accustomed to

take him on excursions through the country. By this means he became familiar with the castles and ruins all over England. The boy was educated at home and at various private schools and then entered as a gentleman commoner at Christ's Church, Oxford. In 1839 he gained the Newdigate prize for an English poem, and graduated in 1842. In 1843 was published the first volume of *Modern Painters*. From this time onward Ruskin became known as a great art critic and later as a social reformer. He spent much time on the continent studying the architecture of the leading buildings and the works of the great masters in painting. He took a great interest in the working classes, and spent a great deal of time and money in his efforts for their benefit. In 1869 he was elected Slade Professor of Art at Oxford. During the latter years of his life he lived at Brantwood, where he died January 20,1900. His principal works are *Modern Painters*, *Stones of Venice*, *The Seven Lamps of Architecture*, *The Crown of Wild Olive* and *Sesame and Lilies*. See *John Ruskin, His Life and Work*, by Marshall Mather, (Frederick Warne & Co.), and *The Work of John Ruskin*, by Charles Waldstein, (Harper Bros.).

Russell, Sir William Howard, was born at Dublin, March 28, 1820. He was educated at the Rev. Dr. Geoghegan's Academy and at Trinity College, Dublin. He went to England in 1842, served on various papers, and finally joined the staff of the London *Times*. He acted as war correspondent for that paper during the Russian war, the Indian Mutiny, the Franco-Prussian war, the American Civil War, and the Egyptian war. He was private secretary to the Prince of Wales during his Indian tour in 1875-76. In 1860 he established *The Army and Navy Gazette*, which he still continues to edit. He was knighted in 1895. His principal works are *Letters from the Crimea*, *Diary of the Last Great War*, and *Diary in India*.

Sangster, Charles, was born at Kingston, July 16, 1822. In his early years he had to struggle with extreme poverty, so that he had none of the advantages that come from education and training. During the rebellion of 1837, he was a maker of cartridges, and was afterwards an orderly clerk. He then engaged in newspaper work. In 1868 he received a position in the Civil Service at Ottawa. In 1886 he was placed on the superannuated list and returned to Kingston. He died at Ottawa in 1893. His two volumns are entitled *The St. Lawrence and the Saguenay and Other Poems* and *Hesperus and Other Poems and Lyrics*.

Saxe, John Godfrey, was born as Highgate, Vermont, June 2, 1816. He graduated from Middlebury College in 1839 and after being admitted to the bar practised law for some years in his native state. In 1850 he became editor of the Burlington *Sentinel*. He filled the office of State Attorney for one year and on two occasions was the Democratic candidate for Governor of Vermont. During his later years his time was largely given to literature. He died at Albany, March 31, 1887. His best works are *The Money King*, *The Masquerade*, and *Leisure Day Rhymes*. His writings are for the most part humorous.

Schneckenburger, Max, was born at Thalheim, in Würtemburg, in 1819. He wrote his first poems while yet a small boy in his father's house. In 1833 he went to Berne to study mercantile life, and later travelled through France and England. In 1840 he wrote *The Watch on the Rhine*. He founded iron works at Burgdorf, Berne, married the daughter of the pastor and settled down to the life of a prosperous merchant. He died in 1849 at the age of thirty. In 1892 his remains were removed from Burgdorf to his native place and a magnificent monument erected over his grave.

Schiller, Johnann Christoph Friedrich von, was born at Marbach, November 10, 1759. He was educated at the Latin school at Ludwigsburg. After studying law for a time, he turned his attention to medicine, but his heart was in literature and the drama. In 1777 he wrote *The Robbers*. Shortly after this he went to Mannheim, where he took up his residence and became post to the theatre there. In 1789 he was appointed Professor of History at Jena. In 1799 he removed to Weimar, in order to be near his friend Goethe. He died May 9, 1805. Schiller's best works are *William Tell*, *Mary Stuart*, *The Maid of Orleans*, *Wallenstein*, *The Thirty Years' War*, and his *Ballads*. See *The Life of Friedrich Schiller*, by Thomas Carlyle, (Chapman & Hall).

Scott, Sir Walter, was born at Edinburgh, August 15, 1771. In childhood he was attacked by a fever, which left him permanently lame. He was educated at the Edinburgh High School and at the University in that city. In 1786 he entered his father's office in order to study law. He was called to the bar in 1792. In 1797 he married Miss Charlotte Carpenter and two years later obtained the office of Deputy-Sheriff of Selkirkshire. Some few poems had been published before this time. In 1802 he published two volumes of *The Minstrelsy*

of the Scottish Border. In 1805 *The Lay of the Last Minstrel* was published. This was followed by *Marmion* in 1808 and *The Lady of the Lake* in 1810. In 1806 he secured a clerkship in the court of Sessions at a salary of £1,200. In 1813 he was offered the Post Laureateship, but refused. In 1814 he began the publication of the *Waverley Novels* and in 1820 was made a baronet. He had in 1811 purchased Abbotsford to which he continued to add adjoining estates until he had spent £65,000 on the property. In 1826, owing to the failure of the Constables, Scott found himself cumbered with a debt of £117,000. He refused to take advantage of bankruptcy and set himself to pay off the debt. He did so, but the effort killed him. In 1830 he had a stroke of paralysis. In 1831 the British Government provided him with a war-ship and sent him to the Mediterranean for his health. He returned to Abbotsford in the next year and died there September 21, 1832. His best known novels are *Ivanhoe*, *Kenilworth*, *The Talisman*, *The Abbot*, *The Heart of Midlothian* and *The Antiquary*. See *Scott*, by R. H. Hutton in *English Men of Letters*, (Macmillan & Co.).

Shakespeare, William, was born at Stratford-on-Avon, May 3, 1564. He was educated at the Stratford Grammar School. Very little is known about the facts of his early life. In 1582 he married Anne Hathaway who was eight years his senior and three years later, after the birth of two children, he went to London. Here he is said to have held horses at the doors of the theatres. In 1592 we find him firmly established as a dramatist. From this date until almost the date of his death, his plays were produced in regular succession. In 1597 he purchased a place in Stratford. About 1613 he returned to his native place, where he died in 1616. The foregoing are almost all the facts known about the greatest writer of all time. His plays are very numerous and include tragedies, comedies, historical plays, poems and sonnets. The most famous of his dramas are *Hamlet*, *King Lear*, *Macbeth*, *Othello*, *The Winter's Tale*, *The Merchant of Venice* and *The Tempest*. See *William Shakespeare*, by Sidney Lee, (Macmillan & Co.).

Shelley, Percy Bysshe, the eldest son of Sir Timothy Shelley, was born at Field Place, Sussex, August 4, 1792. He was sent to Eton, but owing to his refusal to fag, led rather a hard life. In 1810 he entered Oxford, but was soon expelled because he insisted on forcing his peculiar religious views upon the heads of colleges. His father

took the side of the authorities and refused to receive his son. In 1811 he made a hasty marriage with Harriet Westbrook, who, he fancied, was being abused by her father. The marriage was unfortunate and they soon separated. In 1816 his wife drowned herself. The custody of his children was refused him by the courts on the ground that he was morally unsound. In the same year he married Mary Godwin. In 1818 he left England for ever. For the remainder of his life he lived in Italy. He was drowned in the Mediterranean July 8, 1822. His best known works are *The Revolt of Islam*, *Prometheus Unbound*, *The Cenci* and *Adonais*. See *Shelley*, by J. A. Symonds in *English Men of Letters*, (Macmillan & Co.).

Sheridan, Richard Brinsley, was born at Dublin, October 30, 1751. He was educated at Dublin and at Harrow. In 1775 he wrote *The Rivals*, and in 1777 *The School For Scandal*. In the next year he bought a half interest in Drury Lane theatre. He now became the intimate of the leading wits of the time, and in 1780 was elected to Parliament. Here he more than held his own in debate, even against Pitt himself. His great speech in Parliament against Warren Hastings was delivered in February, 1787. He afterwards took part in the Impeachment proceedings. In 1806 he became a Privy Councillor and Treasurer of the Navy. In 1809 he was ruined by the burning of Drury Lane. He died July 7, 1816, and was buried in Westminster Abbey. See *Sheridan*, by Mrs. Oliphant in *English Men of Letters* (Macmillan & Co.).

Sill, Edward Rowland, was born at Windsor, Conn., April 29, 1841. He was educated at Yale, taught school in Ohio, was principal of the Oakland, Cal., High School, and Professor of English Literature in the University of California from 1874 to 1882. In this latter year he returned to Ohio, where he died at Cleveland, February, 27, 1887. He wrote *The Hermitage and Other Poems* and *The Venus of Milo and Other Poems*.

Smith, Goldwin, was born at Reading, England, August 13, 1823. He was educated at Eton and at Oxford. He received the degree of B.A. in 1845, and in 1847 became a fellow of University College. In the same year he was called to the bar, but never practised. He held various appointments in educational matters from the Government, and from 1858 to 1866 was Regius Professor of Modern History at Oxford. He then removed to America, and from 1868 to 1871, was Professor of History at Cornell. In 1871 he removed to Toronto, where he has

resided ever since. He has always taken a keen interest in the political affairs of Canada and still contributes weekly articles to the Toronto *Sun*. His most important works are *Political History of the United States*, *Political History of England*, *Guesses at the Riddle of Existence* and *Bay Leaves*.

Socrates was born at Athens about 470 B.C. He was brought up to the trade of his father, a sculptor. Crito, a wealthy Athenian, noticing the zeal of the boy for learning, furnished him with means wherewith to obtain an education. During the Peloponnesian war he served three campaigns, and distinguished himself greatly for personal bravery. He held important offices in the state, in the discharge of which he proved his love of justice and his hatred of wrong. About 425 B.C. he began his life-work, and soon became known as the greatest teacher in Greece. He carried on this work for 25 years. In 400 B.C. he was condemned to death by the Athenian Assembly on a false charge of sacrilege and impiety. He drank the hemlock with a composure worthy of his life and teaching. All that is known of Socrates is from the pages of his disciples, Xenophon and Plato.

Southey, Robert, was born at Bristol, August 12, 1774. Being early left an orphan he was cared for by an uncle who sent him to Westminster School. In 1792 he entered Balliol College, Oxford, but left after two years. In 1794 he published his first volume of poems, and in the next year married Edith Fricker, whose sister married Coleridge. In 1796 he visited Portugal, where he remained six months. He was made Secretary to the Chancellor of the Exchequer for Ireland at a salary of £350, but resigned and went to live at Keswick, where he engaged in literary work. From being a strong radical Southey became an ultra-royalist. In 1807 he received a pension of £160, afterwards increased to £460, and in 1813 was made Poet Laureate. He died March 21, 1843. Southey's writings are voluminous. His best poems are *Joan of Arc*, *Thalaba*, and *The Curse of Kehama*. His best prose works are his *Life of Nelson* and *Life of John Wesley*. See *Southey*, by Edward Dowden in *English Men of Letters*, (Macmillan & Co.).

Spurgeon, Charles Hodgson, was born at Kelveden, England, June 19, 1834. He was educated at Colchester, and became usher in a school at Newmarket. He early joined the Baptist denomination and became minister of a chapel at Waterteach at the age of 18. In 1852 he removed to London, where he soon drew large crowds. In 1861 the

immense Tabernacle was built. He continued to engage in numerous religious and philanthropical works, until his death at Mentone, France, January 31, 1892. His publications consist principally of sermons.

Taylor, Bayard, was born at Kennett Square, Pa., January 11, 1825. In 1842 he was apprenticed to a printer, and in 1844 published his first volume, *Ximena and Other Poems.* In 1844-45 he made a pedestrian tour in Europe. In 1847 he joined the editorial staff of the New York *Tribune.* To this journal he contributed most of the letters which were subsequently published by him in book form as the result of his travels. He made many journeys to various parts of Europe, Asia Minor, China, India and Japan. In 1862-63 he was in charge of the United States Legation at St. Petersburg. In 1877 he was appointed United States Minister to Germany, and died at Berlin, December 19, 1878. His works consist principally of travels and descriptive sketches. His best known publications are *Poems of the Orient, The Masque of the Gods, Home Pastorals, Hannah Thurston,* and *Book of Romances, Lyrics and Songs.* See *Bayard Taylor,* by A. H. Smyth in *American Men of Letters,* (Houghton, Mifflin & Co.).

Taylor, Jane, was born at London, September 23, 1783. She was a very delicate child until the age of three, when the removal of the family to Suffolk caused a change for the better. She was a very vivacious, bright child, and early began to write both prose and verse. In 1804 she and her sister Ann published *Original Poems for Infant Minds.* The two sisters continued to work together until 1812, when the marriage of Ann broke up the literary partnership. *City Scenes, Rural Scenes,* and *Original Hymns for Sunday Schools,* were produced during this period. In 1816 Jane settled at Ongar, where she resided during the remainder of her life. She died April 13, 1824. Other works from her pen are *The Squire's Pew, Contributions of Q. Q.,* and *Display.*

Tennyson, Alfred, was born at Somersby, August 6, 1809. He was educated at home, and at Louth Grammar School. In 1827, together with his brother Charles, he published *Poems by Two Brothers.* In 1829 he entered Trinity College, Cambridge, where he met Arthur Henry Hallam for the first time. He joined the society of the "Apostles," which at that time contained some of the brightest minds of the University. In 1829 he obtained the Chancellor's gold medal for

his poem *Timbuctoo*. In 1830 he published his first volume of poems. In 1831, owing to the death of his father, he left Cambridge without taking his degree. In 1832 his second volume was published. The critics were not kind to this volume, and Tennyson remained silent for ten years. In 1833 Arthur Henry Hallam died. In 1842 the *Poems* in two volumes appeared. In 1847 *The Princess* was published. In 1850 he gave to the world *In Memoriam*, in remembrance of his dead friend, Hallam. In the same year he married Emily Selwood, and was made Poet Laureate. In 1853 he removed to Farringford, in the Isle of Wight. In 1855 *Maud* was published, followed in 1859 by four of *The Idylls of the King*. In 1868 he purchased another estate at Aldworth. In 1884 he was raised to the peerage. He died October 6, 1892, and was buried in Westminster Abbey. Besides the poems already mentioned he wrote *Enoch Arden*, *Locksley Hall*, *Queen Mary*, *Harold*, *Becket* and *The Foresters*. His last volume, *Akbar's Dream and the Death of Œnone* was published subsequent to his death. See *Lord Tennyson*, by H. J. Jennings, (Chatto and Windus), and *Tennyson*, by Stephen Gwynn, (Blackie & Sons).

Thackeray, William Makepeace, was born at Calcutta, July 18, 1811. In 1818, he was sent to England and placed in the Charter House. He entered Trinity College, Cambridge, but left without taking his degree. For the next few years he travelled on the continent, for the most part studying art. He spent a winter in Weimar, where he met Goethe and his circle. In 1837 he lost his fortune, and as a consequence was forced to devote himself seriously to literature. He contributed to the leading magazines, more especially to *Punch*, in which some of his best work appeared. He made his first great success in 1846 with *Vanity Fair*. His other works, *Pendennis*, *Henry Esmond*, *The Newcomes*, and *The Virginians*, followed in rapid succession. In 1852 and in 1856 he visited America on lecturing tours. In 1857 he was an unsuccessful candidate to represent Oxford in Parliament. In 1860 he became editor of *The Cornhill*. He died at London, December 24, 1863. See *Thackeray*, by W. H. Rideing, (D. Appleton & Co.).

Thaxter, Alice. In the first editions of the *Victorian Readers*, the poem *August*, in Book III., was attributed to Alice Thaxter. The poem was written by Celia Thaxter.

Thaxter, Celia, was born at Portsmouth, N.H., June 20, 1836. She was the daughter of Thomas B. Leighton, keeper of the White

Island lighthouse. She was married in 1851 to Levi L. Thaxter, of Watertown, Mass. She died on the island of Appledore, August 26, 1894. Her principal works are *Among the Isles of Shoals*, *Drift-Wood*, and *Poems for Children*.

Thoreau, Henry David, was born at Concord, Mass., July 17, 1817. He learned the art of pencil making, his father's business, while studying for college at Concord. In 1837 he graduated from Harvard, and for some years taught school in various places. From 1841 to 1848 he lived either with Emerson at Concord, or in his cabin by Walden Pond. From this time onwards he lived with his parents at Concord, where he died May 6, 1862. Thoreau was a very eccentric man. He was a profound classical scholar, and said to have been the best Orientalist in the United States. "He never went to church, never voted, and never paid a tax to the state." His works deal mostly with nature. His principal publications are *Walden*, *A Week on the Concord and Merrimack Rivers*, and *Excursions*. See *Henry David Thoreau*, by B. F. Sanborn in *American Men of Letters*, (Houghton, Mifflin & Co.).

Trench, Richard Chenevix, was born at Dublin, September 9, 1807. He was educated at Harrow and Cambridge. He graduated in 1829, and after a short visit to the continent in aid of the Spanish insurgents, took holy orders. After holding various curacies, he was presented in 1845 to the living of Itchenstoke. In 1847 he became a professor in King's College, London. In 1856 he was appointed Dean of Westminster, and in 1864 was made Archbishop of Dublin. He resigned his Archbishopric in 1884. He died March 29, 1886, and was buried in the nave of Westminster Abbey. His writings are mainly theological, but he published in all six volumes of verse.

Twain, Mark, is the pen name of Samuel Langhorne Clemens. He was born at Florida, Missouri, November 30, 1835. He learned the trade of a printer, became a pilot on the Mississippi in 1855, and in 1861 accompanied his brother to Nevada as his private secretary. He took up newspaper work in Virginia, Nevada, and followed the same profession in San Francisco and in Buffalo. In 1867 he removed to Hartford, where he still resides, varied, however, by long residences abroad. A short time ago he made a lecture tour around the world, for the purpose of raising money to pay the debts he had contracted as a member of the firm of Chas. L. Webster & Co. The debts have since been paid in full. His principal works are *Roughing It*, *Tom*

Sawyer, The Prince and the Pauper, The Innocents Abroad, and *Joan of Arc.* See *American Writers of To-day,* by Henry C. Vedder, (Silver, Burdett & Co.).

Uhland, Johann Ludwig, was born at Tübingen in 1787. He studied law and took the degree of LL.D. in 1810. He was a member of the Assembly in 1819, and in 1830 was appointed a professor in the University at his native place. He took a prominent part in politics, always on the side of the people. He died at Tübingen in November, 1862. His poems consist largely of patriotic lyrics.

Warner, Charles Dudley, was born at Plainfield, Mass., September 12, 1829. He graduated from Hamilton College in 1851 and in 1856 was called to the bar in Philadelphia. He practised law in Chicago until 1860, when he removed to Hartford to take up newspaper work. He has travelled a great deal, and has left many volumes dealing with his travels. He conducted the Editor's Drawer in *Harper's Magazine* from 1884 to 1892, when he became the conductor of the Editor's Study. In 1896 he edited *The Library of the World's Best Literature.* He died in 1900. His best known works are *My Summer in a Garden, In the Levant* and the *Golden House.* See *American Writers of To-day,* by Henry C. Vedder, (Silver, Burdett & Co.).

White, Joseph Blanco, was born at Seville, Spain, July 11, 1775. In 1799 he was ordained a priest, but abandoned the Roman Catholic religion in 1810, and removed to England. He became a private tutor, conducted a Spanish paper, became a Spanish political agent, took orders in the Church of England, was editor of the *London Review,* became a Unitarian, and died at Liverpool, May 20, 1841. In 1814 he had been granted a life-pension of £250 by the British Government in reward for services rendered in connection with Spain. His publications are largely political and religious.

Whittier, John Greenleaf, was born at Haverhill, Mass., December 17, 1807. His parents were Quakers and the child was brought up in that faith. He received the usual common school education in his native town and wrote his first poem at the age of 18. During his early years he was editor of several newspapers, and took a very prominent part in the anti-slavery agitation. On several occasions his office was sacked and he himself was in danger of his life. His poems did much to keep alive the sentiment against slave holding. He represented Haverhill in the Legislature in 1835. In the next

year he removed to Amesbury where he resided until his death. His life was a very stirring one, but the events in which he took part were for the most part of local importance. He died at Hampton Falls, September 7, 1892. His principal works are *Mogg Megone*, *The Tent on the Beach* and *Snow Bound*. See *John Greenleaf Whittier*, by Richard Burton in the *Beacon Biographies*, (Small, Maynard & Co.).

Wolfe, Charles, was born at Blackhall, Ireland, December 14, 1791. His father died when the boy was eight years old, and Charles was brought to England by his mother. He was educated at Bath and Winchester and matriculated at Trinity College, Dublin in 1809. In 1814 he graduated with the degree of B.A. He was ordained in 1817 and appointed to the curacy of Ballyclog, and afterwards to that of Donoughmore. The lady, for whose sake he had given up an academic career at his own University, rejected his addresses. This disappointment, together with a naturally weak constitution, broke down his health and in 1821, he was obliged to give up his work. He travelled to various places in the hope of regaining his health but in vain. He died at the Cove of Cork, February 21, 1823. He composed in all but fifteen poems, the best known of which is his *Burial of Sir John Moore*.

Wordsworth, William, was born at Cockermouth, April 7, 1770. From his seventh to his eighteenth year he went to school at Hawkshead. In 1787 he entered St. John's College, Cambridge, and graduated in 1791. He hailed with delight the beginnings of the French Revolution, and immediately crossed to France, where he remained for two years taking an active part in public affairs. The course of the Revolution bitterly disappointed him, and he returned to England very much depressed in spirits. The soothing influence of nature and of his sister Dorothy soon restored him. Poverty now stared him in the face and he turned to literature for support. The death of his friend Raisley Calvert secured him a legacy of £900, which relieved his immediate distresses. He lived with his sister at Racedown for some time; then, after a year spent in Germany, settled at Grasmere in the Lake district. In 1802 he married Mary Hutchinson. In 1813 he was made distributor of stamps. This secured him a competence so that he could now devote his time to poetry. In 1842 he received a pension of £300, and in 1843 was made Poet Laureate. He died at Rydal Mount, April 23, 1850. Among his longer poems are *Michael*, *The Prelude*, *The Excursion*, and *Peter Bell*. See *Wordsworth*, by F. W. H. Myers in *English Men of Letters*, (Macmillan & Co.).

SUGGESTIONS AS TO METHOD OF STUDY.

In all teaching method is determined by aim. In teaching the selections in these readers, at least the following aims should be sought:

(1) Pupils should acquire power and desire to get thought from the printed page.

(2) They should appreciate the thought and the literary beauty of the selections.

(3) They should be able to express in pleasing manner the thoughts they have acquired.

The gathering of thought from the printed page is attended with peculiar difficulties. In the junior grades where the words used in the readers express familiar ideas and where the phraseology is exceedingly simple, the chief difficulty is one of form—word-forms are not readily interpreted; in the senior grades, where the mechanical difficulties have been overcome and where unfamiliar terms and unusual phrases are found in every lesson, the chief difficulty is on the side of thought. A careful assignment of a lesson should have the effect of removing such difficulties as the pupil by his unaided effort cannot overcome; it should at the same time create a desire for study. (Note I.).

In their study of a selection with a view to getting the thought, pupils may first of all endeavor to grasp the central thought of the selection and catch the dominant feeling, (Note II.); they may seek to get clearer views of those partial pictures which go to make up the whole, (Note III.); or they may make a careful examination of particular words to grasp in detail the conception of the author, (Note IV.). As aids to these ends they may draw pictures or plans, (Note V.); make topical analyses, (Note VI.); find synonyms, (Note VIII.); examine sentence structure, (Note VII.); discuss the suitability of words and phrases, (Note IV.); contrast characters, (Note IX.); and the like.

In order that the thought and expression of any selection may be rightly appreciated, feeling must accompany understanding. Proper feeling is aroused when pictures are perceived or ideas grasped under

right conditions. One of the most important conditions is that the teacher be in right relation to his pupils and to the selection under consideration, (Note X.).

The expression of assimilated thought in pleasing manner necessitates clear articulation, a proper use of the vocal organs, good address; it is induced by sympathetic appreciation of an audience; it is based on clear perception and understanding and proper feeling, (Note XI.).

The following may be taken as a rough guide to the teaching of any selection. It is to be understood that in particular cases any of the steps suggested may be omitted or combined with others.

Assignment.
- Giving pupil necessary knowledge.
  - (a) Of Form.
  - (b) Of Thought.
- Creating a desire to study.

Preparation.
- Getting acquainted with the thought.
  - (a) Word-study.
  - (b) Topical analysis.
  - (c) Picture making.

Recitation.
- Testing the possession of thought.
  - (a) Questioning.
  - (b) Reproduction of thought.
- Expression of thought in the words of the book (oral reading).

Afterwork.
- Exercises on the Central Thought.
- Exercises on the Partial Pictures.
- Exercises on the Words.

In junior grades this might take the following form:

Assignment.
- Giving pupils necessary knowledge.
- Creating a desire for study.

Partial Preparation.
- Getting the central idea and chief details.

Class Work.
- Testing possession of thought.
- Filling in the picture by examination of partial picture and study of words.

Further Preparation.
- Pupils familiarize themselves with the text and prepare for oral reading.

Recitation. {Oral reading, coupled with supplementary instruction.

Seat-Work. As given in previous schedule.

I.—Assigning a Lesson.

The getting of thought from the page should be the work of the pupil, but in order that he may proceed expeditiously and intelligently it is frequently advisable to prepare the way by drill on word-forms, and by explanation of unusual terms and phrases. Where the context furnishes a key, where phonic synthesis will solve a difficulty, or where a dictionary can be employed, the pupil should be left to himself. Words that are unusual or unfamiliar as to meaning should be explained as far as possible by the context. In the junior grades new words may be presented, discovered by pupils and familiarized by drill previous to the study of the lesson, but even here only sufficient should be done to make it possible for the pupils to get the thought with some degree of ease. It is recognized that the chief difficulty with beginners in reading is a mechanical one. The best means of overcoming it is by demanding a fair amount of independent effort. The list of diacritically marked words at the end of Part II. is supposed to place the pupils in a position to get the thought of the reader without much assistance from the teacher. In senior grades pupils should be taught to use the dictionary. The teacher's work will then be limited to giving such information as is necessary to an understanding of the text. The notes in this volume supply such information in nearly every case. It is not expected that pupils will remember all the details, but the teacher will do better work who is prepared to furnish them.

The assignment should always be made at such time and in such a spirit that pupils will feel inclined to study the selections. In the case of such a lesson as "The Pickwickians on Ice," the introduction should be made in a manner that would naturally lead pupils to expect amusement from the study of the selection. In a lesson such as "The Burial of Moses" any words of introduction should prepare the way for the feelings of reverence, awe and majesty which should fill the minds of the pupils when they proceed with the study. This necessitates that before attempting to assign any lesson the teacher should be thoroughly acquainted with the text both in matter and in spirit.

II.—Central Thought or Feeling.

There is a difference between science readers and literary readers. The former look out upon the world and endeavor to give information regarding objects, phenomena and forces. The latter look in upon the soul, and endeavor to make it rich in all those qualities which are necessary to refined manliness. The study of each selection should contribute something to character-formation. Unless this result is attained, the teaching of the lesson is a failure. There are scores of lessons that instil patriotism, *e.g.*, Mariners of England, Horatius, Ballad of the Clampherdown; others should promote a feeling of reverence, *e.g.*, The Strength of the Hills, Destruction of Sennacherib; some give pictures of courageous action, as Lockaley, The Tournament; some appeal to human sympathy, as Little Boy Blue, The Mission of a Rose; the love of nature is intensified in such selections as The Lark at the Diggings, Indian Summer; the sense of humor is developed and purified by reading such lessons as The D[illegible]n's Masterpiece, and John Gilpin. The dominant feeling or thought should determine the character of the teaching and study. In the case of some selections the study may cease when the general impression has been conveyed to the mind of the reader, in other cases the getting of the central thought prepares the way for the study of details, that is, the minute study of the pictures presented in the various paragraphs or stanzas, and the examination of words as to force, elegance or clearness.

III.—The Study of Partial Pictures.

When the general thought of a selection is in the mind, or in some cases even before this, the study of the partial pictures may be carried on with profit. For example, when the general movement of the story of Horatius is perceived, a closer examination of the parts may reveal new beauties. The central thought is Roman bravery and devotion. To make this thought prominent the poet first of all gives a picture of the strength and confidence of the Tuscan army, then follows this by an account of the terror in Rome and the country round about. With this as a background, he pictures the bravery of the three Romans, first in their offer to face the enemy, and then in their act of defence. A close examination of the text will reveal the skill of the poet in creating clear and definite pictures, will explain why some details are incorporated and others omitted, why certain words are used or figures employed.

IV.—Word-Study.

In the getting of clear pictures or ideas, the study of the words employed is often very necessary. It is possible for pupils to get a rough acquaintance with a selection without knowing the meaning of many of the words, but a full appreciation of literary beauty demands close and careful study of all the terms used. In Ruskin's "Sesame and Lilies," a good illustration is given of such minute study in a poetical selection. An equally careful study may be made in prose selections, and it will result not only in clearer knowledge, but in an increased and enriched vocabulary. For example, how much better than the language usually employed by Fourth Book pupils is that found in the second paragraph on page 149. The picture presented to the mind after a hurried reading is by no means the same as that which is formed when the full meaning of such words as *shaggy*, *cupidity*, *strolled*, *church-yard*, *riot*, *remorses*, *immortal*, is clearly understood. In all grades of the school there should be study of the kind indicated, though it would be too much to expect that every lesson would be treated in this fashion.

V.—Drawing Pictures or Plans.

One great danger in reading in school is that pupils will repeat words without picturing or thinking. Suppose, for example, pupils have read paragraph 1, page 147, of the Fourth Reader. If they were asked the following questions, they should be able to give definite answers: What did you see first of all? Describe the roof. What does *thatched* mean? What does it mean by *English was written on it?* What did you see in front of the door? What native plant does the fence resemble? Where was the fence? Describe it. Describe the gate. What did you see in the enclosure between the fence and the house? etc. Now it is more than likely that many pupils would fail to answer some of these questions after a hurried reading, but if they drew a plan of the house and surroundings, they would have clear knowledge of details. It is possible that diagramming may be carried too far and reduce to definite form that which should remain indefinite, but with younger children it is very desirable that the picturing power should be developed. A few chalk marks on the blackboard is often an assistance to a pupil in getting at the thought of a selection, and a rough sketch is frequently the best evidence that he understands what he has read.

VI.—Topical Analysis.

Work of this kind may become very formal, but within proper limits it may have a great value in making clear the movement of a selection and indicating the relation of part to part. It is not to be supposed that such an analysis is the beginning and end of literary study, for literature appeals chiefly to the emotions, and a topical analysis assists only the intellect. But inasmuch as there is no healthy emotional life apart from intellectual appreciation, the importance of an analysis of subject matter is apparent. In those selections in which seeming disorder is the best order, it is manifest that nothing is to be gained by analysis.

VII.—Examination of Sentence Structure.

Very frequently the thought of a sentence is made clear by grammatical analysis, which sets forth the relation of part to part. But such analysis is only an aid to intellectual appreciation, and has therefore a limited value in revealing literary beauty. If it is looked upon as a close examination of the thought, and is resorted to only in cases of difficulty, there will be no danger that it will degenerate into a formal and useless procedure.

VIII.—Study of Synonyms.

This work may be carried on from the earliest years to the close of school life. In the junior grades the teacher will make the distinctions, but in the advanced classes pupils may consult a good dictionary. Younger pupils should be able to distinguish between the uses of adjectives and adverbs which are employed in ordinary conversation, as *nice*, *lovely*, *beautiful*, or *awfully*, *very*, *exceedingly*; as they grow older they can examine into the use of nouns, as, *companion*, *associate*, *friend*, of verbs, as *hate*, *abominate*, *detest*, of prepositions, as *in*, *into*, *within*, etc. See also IV.

IX.—Character Study.

Literature depicts life in all its phases, and the student is constantly broadening his views and extending his experiences as he comes into touch with the characters portrayed. An intimate acquaintance and living sympathy with the great people of history and the ideal people of fiction, does much to enrich and ennoble life. In studying any

character as to his motives, aspirations and deeds, the reader is unconsciously influenced in the direction of his sympathies. The examination and contrast of characters is therefore one of the most fitting exercises in connection with the study of literature. As an illustration of this consider the characters in *The Great Carbuncle*, or *The Merchant of Venice*. Each plays an important part in the working out of the plot or story, and each is admirably fitted for the part played. To understand this is to understand the play or story. The language, the thoughts, the wishes of Shylock are in perfect accord and the same may be said of the thought, expression and feeling of Antonio. The contrast of these two characters brings the student into more intimate sympathy with each, and therefore gives a clearer conception of the play. In "The Great Carbuncle" the greed and selfishness of Pigsmort as exhibited in his language and his acts is brought out more clearly as it is contrasted with the pure, unselfish generosity of the newly married couple. It is unnecessary to remark that character-study to be profitable must be carried on sympathetically. A bare enumeration of particulars is of no value.

X.—The Teacher's Attitude.

In the study of literature the pupil should make his own the thought and feelings of the selections. To be of any use, the teacher must on the one hand be completely in sympathy with the scholars, and understand their ambitions, their views of life, their varying moods. He must also be able to win their confidence and to arouse their enthusiasm. On the other hand he should thoroughly understand and appreciate that which is being studied. If these two conditions are fulfilled he will assist the pupils, otherwise he will be in the way. It follows that the teacher must in a measure be able to appreciate and express all the varying forms of emotion, so that if a selection breathes reverence, he will indicate as much in his voice and manner, if it sets forth a humorous situation, he will show it in his eyes, his words and his method of treatment. In good teaching, the teacher, the pupil and the selection will be in perfect harmony.

XI.—Oral Expression.

As any attempt to express thought tends to make the thought more definite, the value of oral reading as an aid to the study of literature, is apparent. If it is remembered that in true expression the soul is but

giving forth what it feels and thinks, it is evident that the key to good oral reading is perfect assimilation. This means that the effort of the teacher will not be so much to get right expression as to make right impression, for if he succeeds in this the expression will be satisfactory. And yet this is not wholly true, for there is a mechanical side to be considered, and pupils may here be very weak. They must be taught to articulate clearly, and this means that they must stand and breathe correctly, and use their vocal organs in a proper manner. Individual instruction is here most necessary, for no two pupils are weak at just the same point. And as a reader presupposes listeners, it is necessary that a right relation be maintained between them. On the one hand the listeners should be attentive, even to the point of looking at the reader rather than at their books, and on the other hand the reader should cultivate a pleasing address, and should speak to his audience rather than to his text. This is not, of course, to be followed in all cases, for in junior grades particularly it is well that the listeners should follow the text so as to familiarize themselves with word-forms, and get that practice in speedy interpretation which is necessary to fluency and ease. Probably the best test of a pupil's appreciation of the truth of a selection is to ask him to read it. If the reading is well done, many beauties are revealed that would otherwise escape notice. This is particularly true in the case of poetry where rhyme and rhythm are such marked features.

PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY

OF

PROPER NAMES.

[Only the more difficult proper names are here given.]

KEY TO PRONUNCIATION.

ā, ē, ī, ō, ū, ȳ, long.
ă, ĕ, ĭ, ŏ, ŭ, y̆, short.
ȧ, ė, i̇, ȯ, u̇, ẏ, obscure.
fāre, hăt, fāll, fāte.

thāir, hēr, ōir, tō, rule, nūr, būrn.	
ḥ' as in Scotch loch.	
ṅ as in French bon.	

VOCABULARY.

A.

Abednego, ȧ-bĕd' ne gō.
Aberbrothock, ăb' ẽr brō thŏck.
Abora, ăb' o ra.
Abruzzo, ȧ brŭt' sō.
Achilles, ȧ kĭl' lēs.
Acrisius, ȧ crĭs' ĭ ŭs.
Adirondack, ăd ĭr ŏn' dăk.
Admetus, ăd mē' tŭs.
Aebutius, ē-bū' shē ŭs.
Aeetes, ē-ē' tēs.
Aegean, ē gē' an.
Aegeus, ē' jūs.
Aegis, ē' jĭs.
Aershot, ĕr' shŏt.
Agassiz, ăg' ȧ sē.
Ahkosewin, ȧ ko sē' win.
Aidenn, ȧ' dĕn.
Aix, ăks *or* ăks.
Aladdin, ȧ lăd' ĭn.
Al-Borak, ăl bo răk'.
Algidus, ăl' jĭ dŭs.
Algonquin, ăl gŏn' kĭn.
Alixe, ȧ-lĭks'.
Allegra, ăl lĕg' ra.
Altorf, ăl' tŏrf.
Amalek, ăm' ȧ lĕk.
Amalthea, ăm ăl thē' ȧ.
Amhara, am hä' ra.
Amilias, ȧmĭl' ĭ ȧs.
Ammonoosuc, am-mon-ō-ō'-sŭc.
Amycus, ăm' ĭ cŭs.
Anacreon, ăn ăc' re ŏn.
Androclea, ăn' dro clē.
Androgeos, ăn-drŏ' ge ŏs.
Andromeda, ăn drŏm' ē dȧ.
Angiante, ăng gĭăn' te.
Anjou, ăn' jū.
Anse-du-Foulon, ăns du fŭ' lŏn.
Antaeus, ăn tē' us.
Aphrodite, ăf ro dī' te.
Apollyon, ăp pŏl ly ŏn.
Apuleius, ȧ pu lē' yŭs.
Apulian, ȧ pūl' ĭ an.
Archelaus, ăr ke lā' ŭs.
Ardennes, ăr dĕn'.
Argonauts, ăr' go nats.
Ariadne, ăr e ăd' ne.
Aricia, ȧ rĭsh' e ȧ.
Ariel, ā' re ĕl.
Armageddon, ăr ma gĕd' on.
Arretium, ăr rē' shē ŭm.
Aruns, ăr' unz.
Ashur, ăsh' ur.
Astur, ăs' tur.
Atahualpa, ăt ȧ hwäl' pȧ.
Atargatis, ȧ tär' ga tĭs.
Athemas, ăth' e mȧs.
Athena, ȧ thē' nȧ.
Atlantes, ăt lăn' tēs.
Atratinus, ăt ra tī' nus.
Atri, ăt' ri.
Atropos, ăt' ro pŏs.
Aulus, aw lŭs'.
Auser, aw' sẽr.
Auster, aw' stẽr.
Austerlitz, aw' stẽr lĭts.
Avoca, ȧ vō' cȧ.
Aylward, ăl' wärd.

B.

Baal, bā' ăl.
Babylonish, băb' ĭ lŏn ĭsh.
Bacchus, băc' cŭs.
Badroulbadour, bä drōōl' ba dōōr.

Balios, bā' lo ōs.
Balmung, bäl' mūng.
Bancochar, bän' o char.
Barcan, bär' can.
Barrabas, bär' ra bas.
Basil, bäz' il.
Bastanio, bäs stän' o ō.
Baum, ba' um.
Beaubassin, bō' bäs sän.
Beausejour, bō se zhūr.
Beethoven, bā' tō vn.
Bellario, bel lär' o ō.
Beltane, bel' tān.
Berthier, bär' te ā.
Berwick, bēr rick.
Beth-Peor, bēth pē' or.
Bingen, bing' en.
Blenheim, blen' hem.
Bochastle, bō' cas sl.
Bohun, bō' hūn.
Bois Guilbert, bwa gēl bär'.
Boom, bōm.
Boreas, bō' re ās.
Bosphorus, bōs' fōr-ūs.
Bothan, bōth' an.
Bougainville, bō' gān vēl.
Bourbon, bōr' bē n.
Bozzaris, bōt' sa ris or bo zär' is.
Brabant, bra bänt'.
Bradamant, brād' a mänt.
Bragi, brā je.
Breadalbane, brēd al' bin.
Brennen, brē' men.
Brignais, brēn' yā.
Briseis, bri sē' is.
Brom Dutcher, brom dūtcher.
Bruhl, brōl.
Brunello, brōn nēl' o.
Brunhild, brun' hild.
Bucephalus, bū sēf' a lus.
Buckingham, būk' ing ham.
Bunsowski, bun sō' ski.

C.

Cacephodel, kāk e fō' dēl.
Cader Idris, kād' er id' ris.
Cadi, cā' di.
Caedmon, kād' mon.
Caesar, sēz' ar.
Caeso, sēz' so.
Calabria, kāl ā' bre a.
Caldon, kal' don.
Caliban, kāl' i bān.
Caliph, kā' lif.
Campagna, kām pān' yā.
Campania, kām pā' ne a.
Cannobie, kān' no bē.
Carthage, kärth' aj.
Cassius, kā' se us.
Cassandra, kās sān' dra.
Cassiopeia, kās se ō pē' a.
Cecrops, sē' crōps.
Ceos, sē' ōs.
Cepheus, sē' fūs.
Cerberus, sēr' bēr ūs.
Ceyx, sēx.
Chaleur, shā lēr'.
Cham, kām.
Champlain, shām plān'.
Charlesbourg, shärls bōrg.
Chartres, shär' tr.
Cheesmaun, chēs man'.
Chelsea, chēl' sē.
Chemmis, kem mis.
Chersonese, kēr' so nēs.
Chiron, kī' ron.
Chloe, klō' e.
Cimfinian, sim in' e an.
Claverhouse, klā' vēr us.
Clitumnus, klī tūm' nus.
Clotho, klō' thō.
Clovelly, klūv' ly.
Clusium, klū' zhe ūm.
Coilantogle, koil' ān tō gl.
Colchis, kōl' kis.
Cologne, kō lōn'.
Comitium, kō mish' e ūm.

Copaic, ko pā' ic.
Cora, kō' ra.
Cordilleras, kôr dil' ēr as.
Cortona, kôr tōn' a.
Cosanus, kō sā' nus.
Cossus, kōs' sus.
Côte Ste. Genevieve, sōn gēn' ē vēv.
Coureurs-des-Bois, kō rēr' dā bwa'.
Cowper, kō' pēr.
Crete, krēt.
Crimea, krīm ē' a.
Crispinus, kris' pīn ūs.
Crustumerium, krūs tū mē' rē ūm.
Curiatii, kū rē ā' shē ī.
Cuneo, kus' kō.
Cyclades, sīc la dēz.
Cyclopes, sī klō' pēz.
Cyclops, sī' klōps.
Cythnus, sīth' nūs.

D.

Daedalus, dēd' a lūs.
Dalhem, dāl' hēm.
Damon, dā' mōn.
Danae, dān' a ē.
Dardans, dār' danz.
Daulac, dō lāc'.
Delos, dēl' ōs.
Delphian, dāl' fē an.
Demosthenes, dēm ōs' thē nēz.
Deptford, det' ford.
Derby, dēr' be.
Deucalion, dū kā' lē ōn.
Dictys, dīk' tēs.
Digentian, dī jen' shē ān.
Dionysius, dī o nī' shus.
Dolgelly, dōl' gel ly.
Doitaire, dōl tār'.
Doriana, dō'rē ana.
Doric, dōr' ric.
Dothan, dō' thān.
Dresden, drēz' dēn.
Dryads, drī' adz.
Duffeld, dūf'-feld.
Dumfries, dūm frēs'.
Dunfermline, dūn fērm' lin.
Duvarney, dō vārn' e.

E.

Echidna, ēk id' na.
Edgecombe, ej' cūm.
Edmonton, ēd' mun tūn.
Eldorado, el do rā' dō.
Elgin, el' gin.
Elsinore, el sin ōr'.
Emir, ē' mir or e mēr'.
Endicott, ēn' di cōt.
Enniskilleners, ēn is kil' en ērs.
Eos, ē' ōs.
Eris, ē ris.
Ethert, ēth' ert.
Etruria, e-tru ri a.
Etruscan, e-trūs kan.
Euboea, ū bē' a.
Eugene, ū jēn'.
Euripus, ū rip' ūs.
Europa, ū rō' pa.
Eurotas, ū rō' tas.
Euryale, ū rī' a lē.
Eurystheus, ū ris' thūs.
Eurytion, ū ryt' i ōn.
Ezekiel, ēz ē' ki el.

F.

Fabian, fā' bi an.
Fabius, fa' bi ūs.
Fafnir, faf' nir.
falerii, fa-lēr' i i.
Feversham, fēv' ēr shām.
Filomena, fil o mē' na.
Flaccus, flāk'-kūs.
Francois Xavier, frāns' swa zāv' ē ā.
Fraulein, froi' lin.
Front-de-Boeuf, frōnt de bēf.

G.

Gabii, gā' bi i.
Gabord, ga bōrd'.
Gael, gā' el.
Galatea, gāl a tē' a.
Gavius, gā' vi us.
Gawain, ga wān.
Geryon, gēr' i on.
Gessler, gĕs' lēr.
Gette, jĕt.
Gilead, gil' e ad.
Gilliatt, gil' e ăt.
Giovanni, jō o vän' ni.
Gislebertus, gis le bûrt' us.
Gitche Manitou, gē' chē man' i tō.
Gitche Gumee, gē' chē gu mē.
Gladsheim, glädz' him.
Glen Cross, glĕn crŏs'.
Glengarry, glĕn găr'-ri.
Goethe, gĕh'-tē.
Gonzalo, gon zä' lo.
Grand Pré, grănd prē'.
Grand Traverse, grănd trăv' erse.
Grantmesnil, grănt mā nēl'.
Gratiano, grā she ăn' o.
Gravelotte, grăv' e lŏt.
Guienne, gē ĕn'.

H.

Hades, hā' dēz.
Haimon, hī' mŏn.
Halcyone, hăl sī' o ne.
Hallooer, hăl lu' ĕr.
Hamelin, hăm' lin.
Hamoaze, hăm' o ăz.
Hapsburg, häps' bûrg.
Hardrada, här drä' da.
Harlech, här' lek.
Hasselt, has' selt.
Hawthornden, haw' thorn dĕn.
Hebe, hē' bē.
Hebrides, hĕb' ri dēz.
Hebron, hē' brŭn.
Hellas, hĕl' las.
Hellespont, hĕl' las pŏnt.
Hephaestus, hē fĕs' tus.
Hephaistos, hē fīs' tŏs.
Heracles, hĕr' a klēz.
Heracleidan, hĕr a klī' dan.
Hercules, hĕr' ku lēz.
Here, hē' rē.
Hermes, hĕr' mēz.
Herminius, hĕr min' i us.
Herschel, hĕr' shĕl.
Hesperides, hĕs pĕr' i dēz.
Hiawatha, hī a wa' tha.
Hildebrand, hil' de brănd.
Hinchinbrook, hinch' in brŏŏk.
Hindoo Koosh, hindu kush'.
Hindostan, hin du stän'.
Hochelaga, hosh e lā' ga.
Honduras, hon du' ras.
Horatii, hŏr ā' shē i.
Hospitallers, hŏs' pital er.
Hotel des Invalides, hō tĕl' dēz ăn' va lēd.
Huascar, hu ăs' car.
Hydaspes, hī dăs' pēz.
Hydra, hī' dra.
Hydrea, hī drē' a.
Hyperboreans, hī pĕr bo rē' anz.
Hyperides, hi pĕr' i dēz or hī par ī' dēz.

I.

Iberia, i bēr' i a.
Iberville, ē' bĕr vēl.
Ibrahim, ib' ra him.
Icarius, i cā' ri us.
Ichabod, ik' a bŏd.
Ilios, il' i ŏs.
Impey, imp' i.
Inca, ink' a.
Inchcape, inch' kāp.
Innthal, in' tăl.

Ino, ī' no.
Iolcos, ī ŏl' kŏs.
Iope, ī' o pē.
Isenstein, ī' sen stīn.
Iser, ē' zĕr or ī zĕr.
Ishkoodah, ish' ku dăh.
Isis, ī' sis.
Islam, is' lăm.
Ister, ĭst' ĕr.

J.

Jacques Cartier, zhăk' kär' tyā.
Janiculum, jăn ĭk' ū lŭm.
Jason, jā' son.
Jelum, jĕl' um.
Joris, jō' ris.
Jossakeeds, jŏs' a kēēds.
Jotunheim, yō' tun him.
Juno, jū' nō.
Juranoon, shū rŏn' ŏn.

K.

Kaatskill, kăts' kĭll.
Kagh, kăgh.
Kaiser, kī' zĕr.
Kalends, kăl' ends.
Karl, kärl.
Kelpie, kĕl pe.
Kenabeek, kĕn ă' bēēk.
Kepler, kĕp' lĕr.
Killiecrankie, kil'ly-crăink'y.
Killingworth, kill' ing wŭrth.
Kinross, kin rŏs'.
Kioto, kī ō' tō.
Koppelberg, kŏp'-pel-bĕrg.
Kraken, krä' ken.
Kremlin, krĕm' lin.
Kristinots, kris' tĭ nō.
Krupp, krŭp.
Kubla Khan, kūb' la kän'.
Kwasind, kwä' sind.

L.

Lacedaemon, lăs e dē' mon.
Lachesis, lăk' e sis.
Ladon, lā' dŏn.
Lajeunesse, lā zhōō nĕs'.
Languedoc, läng ge dŏk'.
La Unit, lā nwēēt'.
Larissa, lā ris' a.
Lascelles, lā sĕls'.
La Tour, lā tōr'.
Launfal, lan' fal.
Laurentian, lar ĕn' she an.
Laurentum, lar ĕn' tŭm.
Lausulus, las' u lŭs.
Lavinium, la vin' ĭ ŭm.
Leblanc, le blăn'.
Lectonia, lĕc tōn' ĭ a.
Leicester, lĕs' tĕr.
Lenore, lĕn ōr'.
Leonidas, lē ŏn' ĭ das.
Lepidus, lĕp' ĭ dŭs.
Lerna, lĕrn a.
Lethean, le thē' an.
Leven, lĕv' en.
Lochaber, lŏ' hā' ber.
Lochiel, lŏ' hēl'.
Lochinvar, lŏ' in vär'.
Lochleven, lŏ' lĕv' en.
Lockaley, lŏk' ly.
Logi, lō' ge.
Lo'kasen, lōk' ĕr en.
Loki, lō' ke.
Lombardy, lŏm' bard y.
Lomond, lō' mond.
Loos, lōs.
Lorenzo, lŏr ĕn' zō.
Louisbourg, lō' is burg.
Ludovic, lu' dō vic.
Lupercal, lu' pĕr căl.
Luxemburg, luk sŏn bŭr'.

M.

Maenad, mē' năd.
Magus Muir, mā'gus mūr'.
Malakoff, măl' a kŏf.
Malvoisin, măl voi' zin.

Mamillius, mäm il' i us.
Manlius, män' li us.
Marathon, mär' a thŏn.
Marseillaise, mär' sāl āz.
Massilia, mäs sil' i a.
Mathilde, ma tild'.
Maurice, ma' ris.
Maximilian, max i mil' yan.
Mecca, mĕk ca.
Mecheln, mĕk' ln.
Medas, mĕd' as.
Medea, mĕd ē' a.
Medusa, mĕd ū' sa.
Mendip, mĕn' dip.
Menteith, mĕn tēth'.
Mercury, mŭr' cu ri.
Meshach, mēsh' ăk.
Milan, mi lăn'.
Miltiades, mil ti' a dēz.
Mimer, mē' mĕr.
Minie, mē nē'.
Minos, mī' nŏs.
Minotaur, min' o tar.
Mjölnir, mē ŏl' nĕr.
Mirabeau, mir' a bō.
Mirza, mŭr' za.
Miserere, miz ĕr ē' rē.
Moab, mō' ăb.
Modred, mōd' red.
Mogul, mō gŭl'.
Mohammed, mō hăm' mĕd.
Monsieur le Plaisir, mo sieu' lē plā' zēr.
Montchevreuil, mō chăv' rē ē.
Montmorenci, mōnt mor ăn' si.
Moray, mŭr' i.
Mortier, mŏr' tyā.
Moselle, mō zĕl'.
Moskwa, mŏs' kwa.
Moslem, mŏs' lem.
Muhammad, mu hăm mad.
Munich, mū' nik.
Murat, mu rä'.
Mustapha, mŭs' ta fa.

N.

Naiads, nā' yĕd.
Naima, năm.
Narga, năr' ga.
Naxos, năks' ŏs.
Nazarene, năz' ar ēn.
Nebuchadnezzar, nĕb ū kăd nĕz' ar
Neerwinden, nār vīn dn.
Nephele, nĕf'-e lē.
Nequinum, nēk' win ŭm.
Nereida, nē' re ĭd.
Nervii, nŭr' i ī.
Nisam, nis ăm'.
Nokomis, nō kō' mis.
Nuracia, nur' she a.

O.

Octavius, ŏc tā' vi us.
Odin, ō' din.
Odysseus, o dis' ūs.
Genone, ē nō' nē.
Oglethorpe, ō' gl thŏrp.
Oregon, ŏr' e gŏn.
Orestes, ŏr ĕs' tēz.
Ortingo, ŏr' ting gō.
Ostia, ŏs' te a.
Otway, ŏt' wā.
Oxus, ŏks' ŭs.
Osaka, ō sä' ka.

P.

Padua, păd' u a.
Paeona, pē' ōna.
Palatinus, păl a tī' nus.
Pallas, păl' as.
Panormus, păn ŏr' mus.
Parian, pā' ri an.
Parthenon, pär' the nŏn.
Patroclus, pa trō' clus.
Pauguk, pa' guk.
Pauwating, pa' wät ing.
Pays de Vaud, pā de vō'.
Pelasgi, pel az' ji.
Peleus, pēl' ūs.

Pelias, pēl' i ăs.
Pelion, pēl' i ŏn.
Pentelicus, pĕn tĕl' i cŭs.
Perdix, pĕr' dĭx.
Pernambuco, pĕr năm bu' cō.
Perseus, pĕr' sūs.
Petrowsky, pe trow' ski.
Pharaoh, fā' rō.
Phasis, fā' sis.
Phemius, fēm' ĭus.
Philonicus, fĭl ŏn ĭ' cus.
Phineus, fĭ' nūs.
Phoebus, fē' bus.
Phoenix, fē' nix.
Phthia, thĭ' a.
Picus, pī' cus.
Pierre, pē ăr'.
Pindus, pĭn' dus.
Pisas, pī' ē.
Pizzaro, pĭz ăr' ō; *Sp.* pē thär' rō.
Plancus, plăn k'-us.
Plataea, plăt ē' a
Plato, plā' tō.
Pliny, plĭn' y.
Pollux, pŏl' lux.
Polperro, pol pĕr' ō.
Polycrates, pŏl ĭk' ra tēs.
Polydectes, pŏl ĭ dĕk' tēs.
Pompadour, pŏm' pa dōr.
Pompeii, pŏm pē' ī *or* pŏm pā' yē.
Pomptine, pŏmp' tine.
Ponemah, po nē' ma.
Populonia, pŏp u lōn' ĭ a.
Porcian, pōr' she ăn.
Porsena, pōr' se na.
Portia, pōr' she a.
Porus, pō' rus.
Poseidon, pō sī' dŏn.
Posthumian, pŏs hū' mĭ ăn.
Poutrincourt, pō' trăng cōr.
Proetus, prē' tus.
Prospero, prŏs' pĕr ō.
Proteus, prō' tūs.
Prutz, prūts.
Psylli, sĭ' lī.
Pygmies, pig' mēs.
Pyrrhic, pir' ric.
Pythagoras, pith ăg' o rās.
Pythias, pith' ĭ ăs.

Q.

Quintilis, quin' tĭl ĭs.
Quirinus, quir ĭn' ūs.

R.

Raleigh, ral' e.
Ramnian, răm' nĭ ăn.
Ranz des Vaches, ras de vāsh'.
Ravensheuch, rā vĕn shō.
Redan, re dăn'.
Redoubtable, rē dō tăb'.
Regillus, rĕj' ĭ lūs.
Rhodus, rō' dūs.
Richelieu, rē' she lō.
Roberval, rŏb' ĕr văl.
Roderick, rŏd' ĕr ĭk.
Roland, rō' lănd.
Rosabello, rōs' a bĕl.
Roslin, rōs' lin.
Rousillon, rō sēl' yŏng.
Ruvigny, rō vē' ne.

S.

Saco, sā' cō.
St. Malo, săn mā' lo.
Saint Simon, săn sē' mŏn *or* sănt sī' mon.
Saguenay, sag' nā.
Salaberry, săl' a bĕr e.
Salamis, săl' a mis.
Salisbury, sals' bĕr-re.
Samos, sā' mŏs.
Sappho, săf' fō.
Sarafield, săra field.
Saxenhausen, săx' ĕn how zn.
Scian, sī' an.
Scythia, sĭth' e a.

Seius, sē' ¦ us.
Sennacherib, sĕn năk' ĕr ĭb.
Seraphim, sĕr' a fĭm.
Serbonian, sur bō' ni an.
Sergius, sŭr' je us.
Seriphus, sĕr' ¦ fus.
Setia, sē' she a.
Sewell, sū' ĕll.
Shadrach, shăd' răk.
Shechem, shĕk' hem.
Shehallion, she hăl' yan.
Siddim, sĭd' dim.
Siegfried, sēg' fred.
Sierras, sē ĕr' as.
Sioux, sō.
Sirius, sĭr' ¦ us.
Skrymer, skrĭ' mer
Solanio, so lā' ni ō.
Solmes, sōms.
Solstein, sŏl' stīn.
Solway, sŏl' wā.
Somers, sum' ẽrs.
Sonora, son ō' ra.
Soracte, sor ăk' te.
Steinkirk, stīn' kĭrk.
Stheno, sthēn' o.
Stuyvesant, stī' ve sant.
Sull, sŭ' ll.
Suliote, sū' li ōte.
Sunium, sū' ni um.
Sutrium, sū' tri um.
Sybaris, sĭb' a rĭs.
Sycorax, sĭk' or ăx.
Syndic, sĭn' dic.

T.

Talmash, tăl' măsh.
Tantallon, tăn tăl' on.
Taquamenaw, tăk wa mĕn' a.
Tarentum, tar ĕn' tum.
Tarpeian, tăr pē' yan.
Tarquin, tăr' quin.
Tecumseh, te cŭm' sĕh.
Teian, tē' yan.
Tempe, tĕm' pe.
Terentinum, tĕr en tī' num.
Teutamias, tū tăm' ¦ as.
Thebes, thēbz.
Thermopylæ, thĕr mop' ¦ lē.
Theseus, thē' us.
Thessalian, thĕs sā' li an.
Thetis, thē' tis.
Thialfi, tē ăl' fe.
Thor, thōr.
Thrasymene, thrăs ¦ mē' nē.
Thule, thū' le.
Tiber, tī' bẽr.
Tifernum, tī fĕr' num.
Tiryns.
Titan, tī' tan.
Titus, tī' tus.
Tongres, tŏngr.
Totem, tō' tem.
Townshend, town' shĕnd.
Trafalgar, tra făl' gar.
Transylvania, trăns sĭl vā' ne a.
Triballi, trī băl' ¦.
Triton, trī' ton.
Troubadours, trū' ba dōrs.
Tubal Cain, tu' bal cān.
Tullus, tŭl' lus.
Tusculum, tŭs' kū lum.
Tyrol, tĭr' ol.

U.

Ufens, ū' fens.
Ulrica, ŭl' ri ka.
Undine, ŭn dēn'.
Urgan, ŭr' gan.
Urgo, ŭr' gō.
Urus, ū' rus.
Uttawa, ŭt' tā wa.
Utgard, ŭt' gärd.
Uttoxeter, ŭt tŏk' et ẽr.

V.

Valerius, vă lē' ĭ ŭs.
Valhal, văl' hal.
Valkyrie, văl ky' rē.
Van Buttmal, văn brŭt' mal.
Vandervdonk, văn' der dŏnk.
Van Schaick, văn skāk'.
Vaudreuil, vō drē'.
Veliant, vē' yant.
Velitrae, vel ĭ' trē.
Vennachar, vĕn' na' hăr.
Verbenna, vĕr bĕn' na.
Verres, vĕr' rēz.
Vesta, vĕs' ta.
Vesuvius, ves ū' vĭ ŭs.
Vich Alpine, vĭk ăl' pin.
Vin-de-Grave, văn de grāv'.
Vipont, vĭ' pŏnt.
Volaterrae, vŏl a tĕr' rē.
Volscian, vŏl' shĭ an.
Volsinian, vŏl sĭn' ĭ an.
Vulcan, vŭl' kan.

W.

Wabenos, wā bē' nōs.
Wahonowin, wa hon ō' win.
Waldemar, wal' de mar.
Weser, wē' zer.
Whitelock, whīt' lŏk.
Wilhelmine, wĭl' hĕl mēn.
Wiltau, wĭl' tō.
Winkelried, wĭnk' ĕl rēd.

X.

Xanadu, zăn' a dū.
Xanthos, zăn' thŏs.
Xerxes, zĕrz' ēz.

Y.

Yussouf, yŭs' suf.

Z.

Zeus, zūs.
Zouaves, zu āvz.
Zype of Zirl, zīpe ov zĭrl.